CAESAR

From a Bust in the Museum of the Louvre.
Classical Text-Book Series.

CAESAR'S

BELLUM GALLICUM,
(BOOKS II, III & IV)

WITH
INTRODUCTORY NOTICES, NOTES, COMPLETE VOCABULARY, A SERIES
OF EXERCISES FOR RE-TRANSLATION, AND GRADED
PASSAGES FOR SIGHT READING

FOR THE USE OF
STUDENTS READING FOR THE JUNIOR LEAVING AND PASS
AND HONOR MATRICULATION EXAMINATIONS.

BY
JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.,
HEAD MASTER ST. CATHARINES COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE,

AND
E. W. HAGARTY, B.A.,
CLASSICAL MASTER HARBOR'D ST. COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE, TORONTO—LATE FELLOW BY COURTESY
JOHNS HOPKINS UNIVERSITY, BALTIMORE.

TORONTO:
THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED,
9 FRONT STREET WEST.
Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand eight hundred and ninety-five, by The Copp, Clark Company, Limited, Toronto, Ontario, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.
PREFACE.

This edition has been prepared with a special view to the needs of University matriculants, Pass and Honor, and Junior Leaving candidates. The aim has been, not to produce a treatise on Latin Grammar or Prose, but to supply what material the teacher and the student will find useful in connection with the particular text prescribed. The elements of grammar and the first lessons in translation both unseen and prescribed, are supposed to have been taught at an earlier stage. In this edition it will be seen that, besides the text of Books II., III. and IV., with the necessary notes, etc., abundant provision is made for practice (1) in re-translation and (2) in sight-reading. This is accomplished by a series of running exercises, based on the several chapters read, word-lists (Latin-English and English-Latin) for memorization and drill, and some fifty short passages for sight translation, adapted from Book VII. of the Gallic War. These passages are graded, in their own character and in the help given, to suit both pass and honor students.

As abundant examples of continuous prose translation, based upon every part of Caesar, are to be found in Messrs. Fletcher and Henderson's advanced work on Latin Prose, it is not thought necessary to insert such examples here. It is hoped that this edition will be found especially helpful in view of the stress now laid upon practical acquaintance with Latin idiom and vocabulary.

J. H.

TORONTO, Oct. 5th, 1895.

E. W. H.
TABLE OF CONTENTS.

Introduction. .............................................. iv.
Life of Caesar .............................................. v.
The Works of Caesar ....................................... xii.
Summary of Caesar's Life ................................... xiii.
Caesar's Personality ....................................... xiii.
The Conquest of Gaul ...................................... xv.
The Roman Army ........................................... xviii.
The Army on the March .................................... xxii.
The Army in Camp ......................................... xxii.
Diagram of Camp .......................................... xxv.
Note on Roman History ................................... xxvi.
Introductory Note on Bellum Britannicum ............... xxviii.
Map of Britannia under the Romans—to face page .... xxviii.

Book II.
Map, Campaign of 57 B.C.
Text ....................................................... 1
Notes ....................................................... 21
Exercises in Re-translation .............................. 51

Book III.
Text ....................................................... 1
Notes ....................................................... 17
Exercises in Re-translation .............................. 49

Book IV.
Map of Britain in Campaigns of 55 and 54 B.C.
Text ....................................................... 1
Illustrations of Caesar's Bridge across the Rhine .... 10
Notes ....................................................... 23
Exercises in Re-translation .............................. 63

Proper Names ............................................ 1–19
Vocabulary ................................................ 1–65

Appendix A.
Words and Phrases for Memorizing (Latin-English) ... 1–10
Test List (English-Latin) .................................. 11

Appendix B.
Graded Passages for Sight Reading (Pass) ............... 1–8
" " " " (Honor) ........................................... 8–17
Hints and Vocabulary ..................................... 18
Caius Julius Caesar\(^1\) was born on the 12th of July, B.C. 100.\(^2\) He was thus six years younger than Cicero and Pompey. His family (*gens Julia*) was not merely one of the oldest, but was also one of the most respected of the patrician families of the capital. It traced its descent to Ilius, son of Aeneas, and thus through Venus claimed to be of divine origin. It also embraced among its members many who distinguished themselves in the service of the state.

Little is known of Caesar's father, except that he held at some time or other the office of praetor, and that he died suddenly at Pisa, B.C. 84. The education of young Caesar seems to have been directed chiefly by his mother, Aurelia, who was a woman of lofty ambition and a firm believer in the noble destiny of her son. His early training, according to the fashion of that day, consisted in acquiring a knowledge of numbers, grammar, music, and in practising physical exercises. He is also said to have devoted considerable time to verse making.\(^3\)

---

\(^1\)Each Roman citizen had usually *three names*: called the *praenomen* (marking the individual), the *nomen* (designating the *gens* or clan), and the *cognomen* (telling the family). Thus Caius is a *praenomen*, Julius is a *nomen*, and Caesar, a *cognomen*. Sometimes an *agnomen* was added for honorary distinction as *Africanus* to P. Cornelius Scipio.

\(^2\)Mommsen (Hist. of Rome, Vol. III., 15) argues that Caesar was born 102 B.C. His main reason for assigning this date is that the *lex annalis*, which prescribed the minimum age at which a citizen could hold certain offices, was observed in Caesar's case. By this law no one could hold the quaestorship before he was 31, the aedileship before 37, the praetorship before 41, the consulship before 43. By referring to the chronology of his life, the plausibility of the argument would appear. In answer to this we may say that: (1) the law was not always observed; (2) Suetonius represents Caesar as 16 years of age when his father died; (3) Plutarch, Suetonius and Appian, state that Caesar was 56 years of age when he was assassinated.

\(^3\)Laudes Herculis and Oedipus were among his youthful poems.
His aunt Julia was married to C. Marius. To this relationship may be ascribed the fact that Caesar at the early age of 14 was appointed to the office of priest of Jove (flamen dialis), by virtue of which he was a member of the sacred college and received a handsome income. We may also ascribe to his connection with Marius the bent of his political opinions. Caesar after the death of the great dictator led the popular or democratic party as opposed to the senatorial or aristocratic.

He was at first betrothed to Cossutia, a wealthy heiress, but he broke off the engagement on the death of his father. In the following year (83 B.C.), he married Cornelia, daughter of L. Cornelius Cinna, the leader of the popular party and the avowed opponent of Sylla. This union was displeasing to Sylla, who ordered Caesar to divorce Cornelia. This Caesar refused to do. Through the intercession of Aurelius Cotta, Caesar was at length pardoned.

In consequence of having thwarted the will of Sylla Caesar incurred his enmity and found it unsafe to remain at Rome. He went to the East, and served his first campaign under M. Minucius Thermus. He seems to have remained in the East for about four years, distinguishing himself for personal bravery at the siege of Mitylene and in the war against the Cilician pirates. On the report of Sylla's death, 78 B.C., he came home.

The tactics that Caesar adopted at this time to further the interests of his party showed his consummate skill as a political leader. The Roman Senate had become utterly powerless to deal with the duty of administering properly the government. The lower classes filled with turbulent crowds the cities, in consequence of the free labour of the Italian provincials being in a great measure supplanted by that of slaves. Ever since the days of the Gracchi opposed to this democratic element was the Senate, conservative in its nature, being composed of men whose interests were likely to suffer if the democratic element should get any power in the state. In the mid-
way between these two forces we have the wealthy class led by such men as Crassus, without any aristocratic antecedents, on the one hand opposed to democracy as men of affluence naturally are, and on the other opposed to the old families who prided themselves simply in tracing their descent through a long line of ancestors. In fact the history of Rome from the middle of the second century, B.C., down to the time of Augustus, presents little more than the intrigues of wily politicians who by unscrupulousness endeavoured to supplant each other in the favour of the people. Caesar attempted to show that the Senatorial government of the provincials was thoroughly corrupt. He indicted Cn. Dolabella (78 B.C.) and C. Antonius (77 B.C.) for extortion. Though Caesar lost these causes, he really gained a triumph, since he proved the utter corruption of the courts which were filled by the Senatorial faction. To improve his style in oratory, he went to the school of Molo, at Rhodes. On the voyage thither Caesar's vessel was captured by pirates at Pharmacussa (now Feronaco), one of the Sporades. He was detained for forty days, and was not released till a ransom of $50,000 had been paid. During his detention, he is said to have joined these marauders in their sports, and to have jestingly told them that he would, when liberated, have them crucified. This threat he afterwards made good. Landing at Miletus, he collected a small fleet, captured them, and brought them to Pergamus, where they were executed. He stayed at the school of Molo for two years.

When absent from Rome, Caesar was elected pontifex. This office could be held only by one residing in the capital, and thus he was compelled to return. A reaction had meanwhile set in opposed to the policy of Sylla. With the Consulship of Pompey and Crassus (70 B.C.) a reform had been introduced by restoring the rights of the tribunes and the censors, and by remodelling the Senate. Both Pompey and Caesar supported these reforms. In 68 B.C., Caesar became quaestor, and by virtue of this
office he was entitled to a seat in the Senate. He went soon after his election with Antistius Vetus into Spain, and took up his residence at Corduba (now Cordova). One of the chief duties of the quaestor was to attend the provincial assizes (conventus), and settle the disputes that arose between provincials. In this office he displayed a spirit of equity and moderation in striking contrast to the policy of his predecessors. His popularity gained for him many adherents, who, in after days, flocked to his standard at the battle of Munda. It was during this year that he lost his wife Cornelia.

Caesar married Pompey’s cousin, Pompeia, in the following year. No doubt this union was concluded for political reasons. Pompey was now in the height of his fame. This very year he was appointed by the Gabinian law (lex Gabinia) sole commander of the Roman fleet to clear the coasts of the Mediterranean of the pirates who infested it. Next year he was equally successful in defeating Mithradates, king of Pontus.

In 65 B.C., Caesar was elected curule aedile. While holding this office, he increased his popularity, as well as his debts, by the costly gladiatorial shows he gave to gratify the depraved tastes of a Roman populace. He also showed his devotion to the memory of Marius by causing the trophies of that great commander, which had been destroyed by Sylla, to be replaced. Many a veteran, reading the inscriptions recounting the victories of Campi Raudii, Aquae Sextiae, and over Jugurtha, would recall the memory of the greatest soldier of the age, the deliverer of Italy, and the sturdy supporter of popular rights. In the year 63 B.C., a year noted for the conspiracy of Catiline, Caesar became pontifex maximus. On the trial of the conspirators, Caesar advocated the penalty of perpetual banishment, while Cato advocated the death penalty. Subsequent events proved that Caesar was right.

In 62 B.C., Caesar was elected praetor, and while in this office he openly opposed the party of the Senate. On
resigning the office, he went as Propraetor to Spain, when he managed to gain money enough to pay off his enormous debts. On his return, he united with Pompey and Crassus to form the coalition called the First Triumvirate. Pompey may be said to have been the representative of the aristocratic classes, Caesar of the democratic, while Crassus was an exponent of the moneyed party. In the next year Caesar was Consul. To further cement the union, Pompey married Julia, Caesar's daughter. During his Consulship he brought up several reforms, especially a bill for the division of the lands among the people. Before laying down his Consulship he procured the passage of a bill by which he was invested for five years with proconsular power over the Gauls and Illyricum.

GALLIC CAMPAIGNS.

Nine years were spent in the subjugation of the Gauls. In the first campaign, Caesar at Bibracte (now Autun) drove back the Helvetii, who were moving westward and attempting to subdue Gaul. In the same year he defeated at Basle Ariovistus, a German King, who at the instigation of the Arverni and Sequani had been invited to take their part against the Aedui.

In the second campaign, Caesar defeated the Belgae at the river Sabis (now Sambre).

Caesar in the third campaign broke up a coalition of the tribes of the north-west of Gaul, which had united against him. During this year, he renewed the agreement with Pompey and Crassus, who covenanted that his command should be extended to five years further.

In his fourth campaign Caesar crossed the Rhine, but remained only eighteen days on the German side. Later on in the same year he crossed over to Britain.

The next campaign was chiefly against Britain, which, however, he only partially subdued, being recalled by a sudden uprising in Gaul, which he suppressed 53 B.C.

He in the next campaign crushed the general revolt, under Vercingetorix, of the subject tribes in Gaul. With
LIFE OF CAESAR.

the fall of Alesia, the power of the Gauls was crushed for ever.

B.C. 51

In his eighth campaign, he was complete master of Gaul, having reduced the tribes one after another to subjection.

B.C. 50.

The last campaign is uneventful. He remained in Cisalpine Gaul, and returned to Transalpine Gaul for a short time in the summer to review his troops.

QUARREL WITH POMPEY.

During Caesar's absence in Gaul, Crassus was slain at the battle of Carrhae, B.C. 53. This really broke up the Triumvirate. Pompey began to view Caesar's career with distrust and alarm. He entered into a league with the aristocracy and the Senate. A demand was finally passed by the Senate that Caesar should disband his legions. This Caesar refused to do, unless Pompey followed the same course. Finally a decree "that the Consuls should provide that the State should receive no hurt," was passed. This order was equivalent to a declaration of war, and was regarded as such by Caesar.

With one legion he crossed the Rubicon, the boundary between Gaul and Italy. Soon Italy came over to his side. Pompey and the party of the Senate fled to Greece. Caesar marched to Spain, defeated the party of Pompey at Ilerda, and took Massilia in Southern Gaul.

Caesar then prepared to follow Pompey. For some time both armies encamped on the Apsus in Illyricum. Finally the decisive battle was fought August 9th, B.C. 48, at Pharsalia. Though Caesar's forces were but one-half the number of those of Pompey, the superior generalship and the courage of despair won the day, and Pompey's troops were completely routed. Pompey fled to Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered by an emissary of the king. Caesar followed and became involved in difficulties in settling the succession to the throne.

Soon after he crushed the Pompeian party at the battle of Thapsus, in Africa, 46 B.C. Caesar was now the master
of the Roman world. He returned to Rome, celebrated his three triumphs, and published a general amnesty to his opponents. He reformed the calendar, and introduced many useful measures for the internal economy of the State.

In 45 B.C., the two sons of Pompey had collected a force in Spain. Thither Caesar marched, and at Munda Munda, totally defeated it. The Senate conferred on him nearly all the offices of State, and thus the whole authority was centered in one man.

A conspiracy, headed by Brutus and Cassius, was formed against him. They were actuated partly by mistaken patriotic motives, and partly by personal jealousy and hatred. Caesar fell March 15th, 44 B.C., pierced by the daggers of the assassins just as he had entered the Senate house.

Caesar was tall, and of commanding aspect; his features well marked and prominent: his complexion fair; his eyes keen, black, and expressive. In latter life he was bald, which he somewhat concealed by wearing a sort of diadem. His robust frame was inured to hardship, and exhibited remarkable powers of endurance. With regard to dress he was very fastidious. His private life was singularly free from many of the vices of the age.
II.

THE WORKS OF CAESAR.

(1) Extant:—

(a) Commentarii de Bello Gallico in seven books. This work contains an account of the conquest of Gaul from B.C. 58 to B.C. 52. In the first book we have the conquest of the Helvetii mentioned, and in the seventh book the death of Clodius is referred to as lately having taken place. As the death of Clodius happened B.C. 52, we may assume that the events recorded happened between these two dates. An eighth book was added by Aulus Hirtius to complete the events to 51 B.C.

(b) Commentarii de Bello Civili in three books. This gives an account of the civil wars down to the time of the Alexandrine war. The history of the Alexandrine, African, and Spanish campaigns were afterwards added. Hirtius probably wrote the account of the Alexandrine campaign; Oppus, that of the African; the account of the Spanish war was written probably by a centurion of Caesar’s army, according to Niebuhr, who discovers a change in style and expression from that of the other two accounts.

(2) Lost Works:—

(a) Anticato. A reply to Cicero’s panegyric on Cato Uticensis, who fell at Thapsus, B.C. 46.

(b) De Analogia, or as Cicero calls it, De Ratione Latine loquendi. Dedicated to Cicero and written when Caesar was crossing the Alps.

(c) Libri Auspiciorum or Auguralia. Published B.C. 63, when Caesar was Pontifex maximus.

(d) De Astris. Published also B.C. 63.

(e) Apothegmata or Dicta Collectanea. A collection of witticisms made at different times.

(f) Poemata; nearly all written in his youth.
these belong *Oedipus*, *Laudes Herculis* and *Iter* (describing his journey from Spain, B.C. 46.

**SUMMARY OF CAESAR’S LIFE.**

**Born 100 B.C.** Father dies 84 B.C.

Married Cornelia 83 B.C.

Retires from Rome owing to enmity of Sylla. Returns on Sylla’s death, 73 B.C.

Wins popularity by attacks upon Senatorial party.

Goes to Rhodes to study rhetoric under Molo. Captured by pirates on his way thither.

Elected *pontifex, quaestor, curule aedile, pontifex maximus, praetor*, 70-62 B.C.

**Consul B.C. 59.** First Triumvirate.

**Gallic Campaigns 58-50 B.C.**

Quarrel with Pompey and the Senate, 49 B.C.

Defeats Pompey at *Pharsalia, 48 B.C.*—Gains control of Africa at Thapsus, 46 B.C.—Spain, at Munda, 45 B.C.

**Assassinated 44 B.C.**

**CAESAR’S PERSONALITY.**

“To be a great general was the short road to political power. Caesar's keen eye saw this, and, though too much must not be made of it, certainly it was not absent from the motives which made him eager to have the command in Gaul assigned to him. There were great men in the world before Caesar, but it seemed to good judges of his own age that he was greater than them all; and there have been great men after him, but still, compared with all before and after, so far as it is possible to compare where circumstances are so different, his name seems to good judges the greatest of all names known to history. Better men have lived, greater statesmen, perhaps greater generals, but none have so combined the qualities which we praise and wonder at. The Emperors
of Rome, the German Kaisers, probably the Russian Czars, bore or still bear his name. A month was renamed in his honour, and has retained the name of "the mightiest Julius" ever since in the languages of all Europe.

His wonderful life must be studied elsewhere, his fearless youth, his early manhood devoted to the cause of liberty and reform, his marvellous success as a general, though he only turned soldier comparatively late in life, and held no command until he was forty years old. How he became the master of Rome's destinies, and by justice and clemency showed that he was worthy to control them, and was ambitious more for his country than for himself; and how, in the height of his greatness, he was murdered by men who called him tyrant, and thought that the only right form of government was the rule of the noble and wealthy few,—of the oligarchy which bore and disgraced the name of the Roman Republic,—all this forms a history full of interest and lessons for all time.

Here (Bk. V.) we have only the story of his second invasion of Britain and one scene from the midst of his great exploit of the conquest of Gaul. It will show us something of his care for his men which so endeared him to them, of his promptitude and daring, of his supreme calm and self-control, of his fairness as an historian, of his kindness as a superior officer, slow to blame, quick to praise; and it will give us a lively picture of his enemies, their strength and weakness, their mode of warfare. Above all, it will show us the matchless strength of the Roman legions when fighting behind the entrenchments which they were so skilled in making."—Colbeck.

DRAMATIC CHARACTER OF BOOKS V. AND VI.

Mr. Colbeck's words quoted above aptly set forth some of the leading dramatic features of this most interesting portion of Caesar's otherwise rather dry military narrative. In books V. and VI., we realize Caesar's object in writing, i.e., to give to his fellow-countrymen of his own
time, and to leave on record for all ages to come a pen-picture of himself and his army as they figured in these years of Roman aggrandizement in Western Europe. With how bold yet delicate a touch he paints

(1) himself, as a considerate and humane officer, "slow to blame, quick to praise," (see the episode of Cicero, Bk. V., 46-52, and Bk. VI., 42); as a cool-headed strategist, a merciful conqueror, and a just judge;

(2) his subordinate officers, Cotta, Sabinus, Labienus Cicero, their faults and their virtues;

(3) his foes, the Britons, the Germans, the Gauls; their chieftains (Cassivellaunus and Ambiorix); their modes of fighting and other national characteristics;

(4) his own legionaries, with their intrepid zeal amidst fearful odds of peril and hardship;

(5) and even Pompey, not yet an avowed enemy, conceding something to "friendship and the good of the commonwealth."

These features combine to make books V. and VI. an interesting study even from the literary stand-point.

III.

THE CONQUEST OF GAUL.

In the year 600 B.C., the Greeks of Phocaea, in Asia Minor, emigrated and settled at Massilia (now Marseilles). On the conquest of Asia Minor by Cyrus the Great, many of their countrymen joined the Phocaeans; and soon the young Greek colony rose to power. The inhabitants of Massilia became the leaders in learning and commerce, and established colonies along the neighbouring coast of the Mediterranean. As the Greek colonies encroached on the wild barbarians, wars naturally arose. In 154 B.C. the Ligurians besieged Antipolis and Nicaea, two dependencies of Massilia, when the Massiliots called in the aid
of the Romans, by whose aid the Ligurians were defeated, and part of the territory of the Ligurians given to the Massiliots. Another attack soon after (125 B.C.) was made by the Ligurians, who were reduced a second time. The army of C. Sextius Calvinus, after three campaigns, plundered their territory, and reduced the inhabitants to slavery. Near Massilia, he founded the town of *Aquae Sextiae* (now Aix), which obtained its name from the hot springs of the neighbourhood. About this time, the Aedui and Allobroges were at war. The Arverni, the most powerful of the Gallic tribes, aided the Allobroges, while the Aedui concluded a treaty with the Romans. In 121 B.C., Cn. Domitius defeated the Allobroges at Vindalium, a little above Avignon; and in the same year the Gallic confederates were defeated by the united armies of Cn. Domitius and Q. Fabius Maximus, near the junction of the Isere and the Rhone. The country of the Allobroges was reduced to a Roman province, and received the name *Provincia*. Massilia however, still retained her independence. Within the next succeeding years, the Romans enlarged the boundaries of the original Provincia, which extended at first from the Alps to the Rhone, by reducing that portion of Gaul from the Rhone to the Pyrenees, thus keeping open the road to Spain.

In 113 B.C. the whole of Italy was thrown into consternation by the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutones. After wandering about the Northern Italy, they entered Gaul and attacked the Roman Province. In 109 B.C. they defeated the Consul, M. Junius Silanus. The Romans sustained another defeat two years later when they attempted to keep back the Tugurini, one of the Helvetic cantons who were attempting to enter Gaul. In this battle fell L. Piso, the grandfather of Caesar's father-in-law. In 106 B.C., Q. Servilius Caepio sacked Toulouse, which had formed a league with the Cimbri and Teutones. This temporary gain was followed by a crushing defeat inflicted on the Romans near the banks of the Rhone by the Cimbri and Teutones.
The Cimbri separated from the Teutones and laid waste all the land between the Rhone and the Pyrenees. While the Teutones remained on the East of the Rhone, the Cimbri turned back from the Pyrenees, joined the Teutones, and then passed the Alps. Marius who had gained great glory in the Jugurthine war, was sent against the invaders. He hastened to Southern Gaul, and defeated the Teutones at Aquae Sextiae, 102 B.C.

In the following year he met the Cimbri at Vercellae and crushed them in battle.

During the civil war, Sertorius, a follower of Marius, stirred up the Aquitani to revolt. The revolt, however, was unimportant. During the Consulship of Cicero, Catiline attempted to carry out his nefarious conspiracy. He and his associates attempted to gain over the deputies of the Allobroges, who were on some mission at Rome, to join the conspiracy. These deputies betrayed the proposals to the Consul. The Allobroges not being successful in their mission, and perhaps instigated by the representations of Catiline, took up arms and defeated Manlius Lentulus. In a second battle, however, they were defeated by Pomptinus.

The Aedui, proud of their alliance with Rome, began to lord it over the other tribes. The Sequani formed an alliance with the Arverni. These two tribes invited Ariovistus, a German, to assist them against the Aedui. Soon the Aedui were reduced to submission. Their chief, Divitiacus, went to Rome, and implored the aid of the Senate. The Sequani meanwhile found out that Ariovistus from being an ally turned to be their master. He demanded a third part of the territory of the Sequani, and being refused, defeated them in the battle of Magetobriga. After this he ruled them with unbearable insolence.

In B.C. 60, a report reached Rome that the Helvetii, like the Cimbri and Teutones, were preparing for a great emigration.

The plan was under the direction of Orgetorix, a wealthy Helvetic noble. Seeing the fertile plains of
Gaul, they were dissatisfied with their own land. In the previous year a decree had been passed at Rome, that the Governor of Gaul for the time being should protect the allies of the Roman people. In the next year 59 B.C., Julius Caesar was Consul. During his Consulship, P. Vatinius proposed a law giving Caesar the government of Gaul and Illyricum for five years. Caesar's object was to complete the conquest of Gaul. He remained at Rome till after the exile of Cicero. Soon after this, B.C. 58, he hastily set out for Gaul, on the report that the Helveti were on the move westward.

In ancient times of Rome, the army was drawn in a solid mass (phalanx), a method very common among the
Macedonians, and perhaps derived from them. Camillus (circa, 390 B.C.) is said to have broken up the phalanx into smaller bodies called manipuli, capable of acting independently and also in concert. The whole legion was arranged in three lines. In the first (hastati) were the youngest men, in the second (principes) were men in the full vigor of life, and in the third (triarii) were the veterans. Each line contained ten manipuli, arranged in the following fashion:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Hastati:} & & - & - & - & - & - & - & - & - \\
\text{Triarii:} & & - & - & - & - & - & - & - & - \\
\end{align*}
\]

Each manipulus of the two first lines contained two centuriae, each commanded by a centurio. The centurion commanding the right century of the manipuli was styled centurio prior, the one commanding the left century, centurio posterior. Light armed troops (velites) were attached, twenty, to each century. Thus we have:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Hastati:} & & 10 \text{ manipuli}, & 120 \text{ men} = 20 \text{ centuries}, & 60 \text{ men} = 1,200 \\
\text{Principes:} & & 10 \quad " & 120 \quad " = 20 \quad " & 60 \quad " = 1,200 \\
\text{Triarii:} & & 10 \quad " & 60 \quad " = 20 \quad " & 30 \quad " = 600 \\
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
30 & \\
60 & \\
3,000 & \\
\end{align*}
\]

To every century, 20 velites = 1,200

4,200

This was the triplex acies referred to so often by Caesar. To each legion was attached 10 turmae, or squadrons of cavalry of 30 men each, each turma being sub-divided into three decuriae of 10 men each; each decuria was headed by an officer called decurio.

To Caesar or Marius is ascribed the custom of drawing up the legion of cohorts. Each legion, when complete, had regularly 6,000 men, divided into 10 cohorts (cohortes), each cohort divided into three maniples (manipuli), and each maniple into two centuries (centuriae). The spear (hasta) was given to the triarii, who also seem to have
been armed with the pike (\textit{pilum}). Hence the first two lines were sometimes called \textit{ante-pilani}.

The officers of the army were:

\textbf{Officers.}

\textbf{Centurions (Centuriones):} These were the leaders of the centuries, two in each maniple, six in each cohort, and sixty in each legion. There was a regular system of promotion in the Roman army. The highest centurion was the first centurion of the first maniple of the first cohort, so the lowest would be the second centurion of the third maniple of the tenth cohort. As a badge of authority the centurions carried a staff.

\textbf{Tribunes.}

\textbf{Military Tribunes (Tribuni Militum):} These were six to each legion: hence ten centurions were under each tribune.

\textbf{Legati.}

\textbf{Lieutenants (Legati):} These were next the general in command. The cavalry were under the command of the \textit{praefecti equitum} and \textit{decuriones}.

The \textit{weapons} of the Roman soldier were of two kinds:

\textbf{Arms.}

\textbf{Offensive weapons.} The ordinary soldier (\textit{miles legionarius}) was armed with (a) the \textit{javelin}. Of this there were four kinds: \textit{pilum}, \textit{iaculum}, \textit{hasta}, \textit{lancea}. The \textit{pilum} was a strong heavy pike, consisting of a square shaft of wood four feet long, to the end of which a strong, sharp iron point about two feet long was attached. The \textit{iaculum} was a lighter dart used for hurling, while the \textit{hasta} was a long spear used for stabbing. The \textit{lancea} was a light spear with a broad point. The infantry used the \textit{pilum}, while the cavalry and light armed troops, the \textit{iaculum}, \textit{hasta}, and \textit{lancea}. Some of the latter carried bows (\textit{arcus}), and arrows (\textit{sagittae}), slings (\textit{fundae}).

\textbf{The sword (gladius) was short, broad, double-edged and pointed, more used for stabbing than for slashing. It was kept in a light scabbard fastened to a belt (balteus).}
Defensive weapons. The soldiers of the legion had: (a) a brazen helmet (cassis), surmounted with a crest; (b) a cuirass (lorica), made of leather, or of strips of metal fastened on the leather, or of metallic scales, or of brazen plates; (c) greaves (ocreae), reaching as high as the knee; (d) a shield either oblong, made of boards, covered with leather and surrounded with a broad metallic rim (scutum), or made of bronze and of an oval shape (clipeus). The light armed troops had a small buckler (parma), and a helmet of leather (galea). The soldier had beneath his armour his tunic (tunicā), a thick, woollen under-garment reaching nearly to the knees. His cloak (sagum) was of heavy, woollen stuff, fastened by a broach on the shoulder, and open in front. The cloak of the general was called paludamentum.

The standards of the Roman army were: (a) Aquila, Standards, or eagle, the standard of the legion. This was of gold, silver, or bronze, with expanded wings. See Vocabulary; Aquilifer. To lose the eagle was a great disgrace. The standard of the maniples was called (b) signum, and was of various designs, sometimes a wolf, dog, horse, serpent, figure of victory, &c. (c) The vexillum was a square or oblong banner carried by the cavalry.

The musical instruments of the army were: (a) tuba, Musical instruments, trumpet, was straight and deep-toned. This was used for the signals of advance and retreat for infantry (b) cornu and buccina were crooked, and had a shriller note, and generally used to indicate a change of watch; (c) lituus, was formed like an augur's staff, and used for cavalry.
V.

THE ARMY ON THE MARCH.

The army on the march may be divided into three divisions; (a) *agmen primum*, or van; (b) *exercitus, agmen legionum*, or main body; (c) *agmen novissimum*, or rear. The van was generally composed of light armed troops of infantry or cavalry. Their chief duty was to find out the force of the enemy, or to hold the enemy at bay until the main body should arrive. The main body with the baggage train (*impedimenta*), followed. The rear generally consisted of cavalry or light armed troops.

The average march (*iter iustum*) was from six to seven hours, or from fifteen to twenty miles a day. On the forced march the soldiers often covered fifty miles a day.

On the march, the soldier carried two Roman pecks of grain (*frumentum*), cooking utensils (*vasa*), his arms, blanket, and two rampart stakes (*valli*). The private baggage of the soldier was called *sarcina*.

VI.

THE ARMY IN CAMP.

When the army was on the march, men (*metatores*) were sent forward to select a suitable place for a camp. If possible, a high ground (*locus superior*) was sought.

The camp was usually square or oblong. An embankment (*vallum*), formed from the ground thrown up from trench (*fossa*), surrounded the camp. The camp had four gates: (1) *porta praetoria*, near the praetorium, or general’s tent, faced the enemy; (2) *porta decumana* was opposite to this; (3) *porta principalis sinistra* on the left; and (4) *porta principalis dextra* on the right. Connecting these two latter gates was the *via principalis*, and parallel to the street was the *via quintana*. Connecting the *porta praetoria* and *porta decumana* was the *via praetoria*. 
The pickets were generally called *excubitores*: *vigiliae* were night watches; *custodiae* were sentinels to guard some particular post.

The average pay was about $6\frac{1}{4}$ cents per day. Caesar doubled this. A centurion received 25 cents per day. Besides the regular pay Caesar often gave them the money that accrued from the sale of booty.
EXPLANATION OF DIAGRAM.

1. Praetorium, or General's tent.
2. Ground for horses and baggage of the Tribuni militum.
3. Tents of the Tribuni militum.
4. Ground occupied by horses and baggage of praefecti sociorum.
5. Tents of praefecti sociorum.
6. Street 100 feet wide, called principia or via principalis.
7. Cross street, 50 feet wide, on both sides of which were the tents of the Roman equites or horse.
8. The equites of two Roman legions, in 10 turmae or troops each.
9. The triarii of two Roman legions, in 10 manipuli each, forming on two different streets.
10. The two streets, each 50 feet wide, between the triarii and principes of two legions.
11. The principes of two Roman legions, in 10 manipuli each.
12. The hastati of two Roman legions, in 10 manipuli each.
13. Two streets, each 50 feet wide, between the hastati of the two Roman legions and the horse (equites) of the allies.
14. The horse of the allies.
15. The infantry of the allies.
16. The quintana via, a street 50 feet wide.
17. Quaestorium, the quaestor's tent.
18. The tents of legati; in front of them and the quaestorium was the forum where things were sold.
19. The veteran horse (evocati equites).
20. The veteran foot (evocati pedites).
21. The horse of the consular life guards (ablecti equites).
22. The foot of the consular life guards (ablecti pedites).
23. A cross street, 100 feet wide.
25. Extraordinarii equites, a part of the allied horse to serve in consul's body guard.
26. Extraordinarii pedites, a part of the allied foot to serve in consul's body guard.
27. Quarters for strangers coming into camp.
28. A span of 200 feet between tents and rampart.
29. Rampart (vallum).
30. Ditch (fossa), 9 feet deep, 12 feet wide.
31. Porta principalis dextra.
32. Porta principalis sinistra.
33. Forta decumana.
34. Porta praetoria.
35. A transverse breastwork protecting the gates.
DIAGRAM OF CAMP.
NOTE ON ROMAN HISTORY.

History, or rather chronology, was cultivated in a somewhat crude form by the Romans in the earliest times. From the early days of the Republic the magistrates were required to keep certain records of their doings while in office, and these records formed for many years the sole history of the State. The following may be regarded as the chief original sources from which subsequent history was derived.

(1) Annales (i.e. annales libri, year books) were records kept by different officers recording the events of the year. Those of the pontifex maximus were styled annales pontificum, annales maximi, and recorded little beyond the eclipses, prodigies and events of a supernatural nature. Most of these records perished in the taking of the city by the Gauls in 390 B.C., but, as far as possible, were replaced and continued down to 133 B.C., when they were discontinued. The annales consulares, of which a copy may be seen at the end of Smith's Classical Dictionary, gave the names of the consuls and the wars waged.

(2) Commentarii sacerdotum seem to have been a kind of almanac for the benefit of the priests, telling for what event each day was noted. We also hear of the commentarii augurum kept by the augurs for a similar purpose. The Fasti of Ovid appears to have been constructed after the manner of these.

(3) Libri praetorum were records kept by the praetors.

(4) Libri lintei were linen rolls containing historical records. Little is known of these except that they existed in very early times, and are mentioned by Livy as containing an account of the first treaty with Carthage in 509 B.C.

(5) Tria millia tabularum contained the acts of the Senate from the foundation of the city till the burning of the Capitol in Vespasian’s reign, 79 A.D.

(6) Corpus civilis legis, collected at different times. These were the documents on which the Roman historians chiefly based their works and
which they consulted. The burning of the city by the Gauls caused the destruction of many important records. This accounts to some extent for the obscurity of the early part of the Roman history.

We may divide the **historical compositions** of the Romans into **three classes**:

1. **Annales**, 2. **Historiae**, 3. **Commentarii**. The difference between **Annales** and **Historiae** is still a matter of discussion. Cicero says that the **Annales** were written in imitation of the pontifical annals and were merely memorials of the times, men, places, events, without any ornament, and provided the meaning was intelligible, the chief excellency lay in brevity. The **Historiae** added the ornaments of the orator to the narrative, aimed at descriptions and were varied with speeches and harangues. Ausonius Gellius says the **Annales** observe the order of the years, narrating under each year the events that occurred in sequence of time, while the **Historiae** did not observe the order of occurrence. Servius gives his opinion that the **Annales** were records of events that took place in former days, while the **Historiae** treated of events that took place during the lifetime of the Author. The **Commentarii** were records, or rather notes or memorandum. Under this head come Caesar’s Commentaries. It is probable Caesar intended to work up and present his in a different form, but, as Cicero says, their merit was such in the eyes of the discerning that all judicious writers shrank from the attempt to alter them.

There are **three periods** of Roman history.

1. The **first extends from the beginning of the second Punic war to the birth of Caesar**. The compositions of this period went generally under the name of **Annales**.

2. The **second period extended from Caesar’s birth to the death of Augustus, 14 A.D.** The flourishing period of Roman history is contemporaneous with the development of oratory and poetry. The narratives of the historians are more ornate, the language more refined and the treatment of history better understood.

3. The **third period may be dated after the death of Augustus**. The only historian of note is Tacitus, who flourished under the fostering care of Trajan. The decay of history was caused by the death of political liberty. All history, as well as all poetry, that was not adulation was treason under the cruel despotism of the successors of Augustus.
Roman History.

The following is a list of the principal Roman Historians:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Names</th>
<th>Flourished</th>
<th>Works</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Q. Fabius Pictor</td>
<td>220 B.C.</td>
<td>History of Punic Wars (in Greek).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L. Cineius Alimentus</td>
<td>220 B.C.</td>
<td>History of Punic Wars (in Greek).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Aelius Gabrio.</td>
<td>220 B.C.</td>
<td>History of Punic Wars (in Greek).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. Porcius Cato</td>
<td>220 B.C.</td>
<td>Origins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L. Cassius Hennia.</td>
<td>150 B.C.</td>
<td>Annales.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q. Fabius Maximus.</td>
<td>150 B.C.</td>
<td>Annales.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Fannius.</td>
<td>150 B.C.</td>
<td>Annales.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Sempronius.</td>
<td>150 B.C.</td>
<td>Annales.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L. Caesius Antipater</td>
<td>120 B.C.</td>
<td>Annales.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Licinius Macer.</td>
<td>100 B.C.</td>
<td>Annales.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cn. Gellius.</td>
<td>100 B.C.</td>
<td>Annales.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L. Calpurnius Piso.</td>
<td>100 B.C.</td>
<td>Annales.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q. Claudius.</td>
<td>100 B.C.</td>
<td>Annales.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q. Valerius Antias.</td>
<td>160 B.C.</td>
<td>Annales.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L. Cornelius Sisenna.</td>
<td>100 B.C.</td>
<td>Historiae.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. Sempronius Asellio.</td>
<td>100 B.C.</td>
<td>Historiae.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lucius Lucretius.</td>
<td>80 B.C.</td>
<td>History of the Social and Marsic Wars.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licinius Lucullus.</td>
<td>70 B.C.</td>
<td>History of the Social Wars.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Iulius Caesar.</td>
<td>60 B.C.</td>
<td>Annales.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornelius Nepos.</td>
<td>60 B.C.</td>
<td>Commentarii de Bello Gallico; de Bello Civilii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Sallustius.</td>
<td>50 B.C.</td>
<td>Libri Exempliorum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asinius Pollio.</td>
<td>50 B.C.</td>
<td>Bellum Catilinarium ; Bellum Jugurthinum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trogus Pompeius.</td>
<td>50 B.C.</td>
<td>History of the Civil War.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T. Livius.</td>
<td>10 B.C.</td>
<td>Historiae Philippae.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Velleius Paterculus.</td>
<td>10 B.C.</td>
<td>Annales.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cn. Cornelius Tacitus.</td>
<td>70 A.D.</td>
<td>Historiae and Annales.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Suetonius Tarquillas.</td>
<td>70 A.D.</td>
<td>XII. Caesarum Vitæ.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q. Curtius Rufus.</td>
<td>100 A.D.</td>
<td>Alexandri Magni Vita.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L. Annaeus Florus.</td>
<td>100 A.D.</td>
<td>De Rebus Romanis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Plinius Secundus.</td>
<td>100 A.D.</td>
<td>De Bello Germano Historiae.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introductory Note to Bellum Britannicum.

Britain in the earliest times bore the name of Albion, and was visited long before the time of Caesar by Phoenicians, Carthaginians and Greeks for the purpose of obtaining tin.

Roman Connection with Britain (henceforth called Britannia) dates from 55 B.C., the year of Caesar's first invasion, to 410 A.D., when the Romans, hard pressed in Italy by the Goths and the Vandals, were compelled to withdraw their forces from Britain in order to defend themselves at home.

Caesar did not occupy Britain. He simply made two military landings for the purpose of completing the subjugation of Gaul by intimidating the British Celts from giving further aid to their Gallic kinsmen. Hence it is that the chapters known as "Bellum Britannicum" were written as part of
Caesar's commentaries *De Bello Gallico*. The history of these two landings in 55 B.C. and 54 B.C. comprises Chapters 20-36 of Book IV., and Chapters 8-23 of Book V., *Bellum Gallicum*. We learn from the concluding chapters that the only result of Caesar's invasion was to humble Cassivellaunus, under whom the Britons had temporarily united, and to secure hostages and an annual tribute to be paid by Britain to the Roman people. Caesar withdrew his forces and Britain was not again molested for nearly a hundred years.

**Roman Occupation** began under the Emperor Claudius in 43 A.D. Forty years later the great Roman general Agricola, after defeating the "large-limbed and red-haired" Caledonians at Mons Grampius, pushed north as far as the Moray Firth. He built a chain of forts between the Clyde and the Forth, and did more than any other Roman general to civilize the Britons.

In 120 A.D., Hadrian's Wall was built between the Solway and the Tyne, and this henceforth formed the boundary between Caledonia and the Roman province Britannia. The Roman capital was York (Eboracum). The withdrawal of the Roman military forces in 410 A.D. left the island a prey to pirates from Germany and the North. Hence the advent of the Picts and the Scots, the Angles, Saxons and Danes.

Roman occupation of Britain has left behind many lasting traces. During this period the inhabitants first learned to live in towns and engage in industries. Christianity was first introduced into the island through the medium of the Roman military. Roman roads still stretch in many directions through the island. The ruins of Roman walls and camps are still to be seen in various parts of England, and many geographical names owe their origin to Latin words, e.g., Lancaster, Chester, Lincoln from *castra* and *colonia*. Thus it may be said that Caesar's two demonstrations of Roman power in 55 and 54 B.C. paved the way to the modern civilization of Britain, as exhibited in the social condition, the religion, and the language of the people. Hence the Bellum Britannicum must for all time possess a special interest for English-speaking readers the world over.

**The Roman Expeditions to Britain.**

1st Expedition.

55 B.C.—At the close of this year *Julius Caesar* lands, but stays only a few days.

54 B.C.—Caesar again lands, defeats *Cassivellaunus*, King of the Cassi, and penetrates as far as St. Albans.
2nd Expedition.

In consequence of the civil wars from 49 B.C.–31 B.C., Britain was neglected by the Romans. The policy of Augustus (31 B.C.–14 A.D.) was non-aggressive, and Tiberius (14 A.D.–37 A.D.) adhered to the example of his predecessor. Caligula (37 A.D.–41 A.D.) intended to subdue Britain but nothing was done.

43 A.D.—Bericus, a petty king, having been expelled from the island, appealed to Claudius, who took up his cause. Aulus Plautius was sent out and defeated Caractacus and Togodumnus. Claudius also in person commanded at a victory which he gained near the Thames.

49 A.D.—Ostorius Scapula succeeded, and built a line of forts from the Avon to the Nen. He defeated the Silures and made Caractacus a prisoner.

59 A.D.—Suetonius Paulinus succeeded, and defeated the Iceni and Trinobantes under Boadicea.

3rd Expedition.

78 A.D.—Agricola succeeds, and reduces Mona (Anglesey).

89 A.D.—He advances as far as the Tay, and defeats Galgacus, at the foot of the Grampians or Mons Grampius.

After this period the Romans maintained a pacific policy towards Britain.

120 A.D.—Hadrian's wall built and the Romans retire to the south of it.

410 A.D.—The Romans withdraw.
Historical Bearing of Book II.—The first book has narrated the two pretexts for interference in Gaul, the curbing of the Helvetii and the expelling of the German interloper Ariovistus. In other words, Caesar has shown that he began military operations in Gaul outside of the Roman Province simply as a keeper of the peace in the interest of his Gallic allies, the Aeduans. The second book now describes his terrible struggle against the Belgae to maintain the footing he has gained in Gaul, his complete triumph and the final assertion of a Roman protectorate over the whole country. The succeeding books relate the subjugation of Britain and the unavailing efforts of the Gauls to throw off the Roman yoke. Book II., therefore, forms the key-stone to the conquest of Gaul.
CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE BELGAE, 57 B.C.

I.—Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia in hibernis ita uti supra demonstravimus, crebri ad eum rumores adferabantur, literisque item Labieni certior fiebat omnes Belgas, quam tertiarm esse Galliae partem dixeramus, contra Populum Romanum coniurare obsidesque inter se dare: coniurandi has esse causas: primum, quod vere- rentur ne omni pacata Gallia ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur; deinde, quod ab nonnullis Gallis sollicitarentur, partim qui, ut Germanos diutius in Gallia versari noluerant, ita Populi Romani exercitum hiemare atque inveterascere in Gallia moleste ferebant, partim qui mobili- litate et levitate animi novis imperii studebant; ab nonnullis etiam, quod in Gallia a potentioribus atque his, qui ad conducendos homines facultates habebant, vulgo regna occupabantur, qui minus facile eam rem in imperio nostro consequi poterant.

II.—His nuntiis literisque commotus Caesar duas legiones in citeriore Gallia novas inscripsit, et inita aestate in interiorem Galliam qui deduceret Quintum Pedium legatum misit. Ipse cum primum pabuli copia esse inciperet ad exercitum venit: dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti ca quae apud eos gerantur cognoscant sequae de his rebus certiorum faciant. Hi constanter omnes nuntiaverunt manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum conducere. Tum vero dubi- tandum non existimavit quin ad eos proficisceretur. Re frumentaria comparata castra movet diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit.

III.—Eo cum de improviso celeriusque omnium opinione venisset, Remi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum legatos Iccium et Andocumborium primos civitatis miserunt qui dicerent, se suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem Populi Romani permittere: neque se cum Belgis reliquis consensisse neque contra Populum Romanum omnino coniurasse, paratosque esse et obsides dare
et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare: reliquis omnes Belgas in armis esse, Germanosque qui cis Rhenum incolant sese cum his coniunxisse, tantumque esse eorum omnium furorem ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque suos, qui eodem jure et eisdem legibus utantur, unum imperium unumque magistratum cum ipsis habeant, deterriere poischerint quin cum his consentirent.

IV.—Cum ab his quaereret quae civitates quantaeque in armis essent et quid in bello possent, sic reperiebat: plerosque Belgas esse ortos ab Germanis Rhenumque antiquitus transductos propter loci fertilitatem ibi consedisse, Gallosque qui ea loca incoherent expulisse, solosque esse qui patrum nostrorum memoria omni Gallia vexata Teutonos Cimbrosque intra fines suos ingredi prohibuerint. Qua ex re fieri uti earum rerum memoria magnam sibi auctoritatem magnosque spiritus in re militari sumerent. De numero eorum omnia se habere explorata Remi dicebant, propter eam quod propinquitatibus adfinitatibusque conjuncti quantam quisque multitudinem in communi Belgarum concilio ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognoverint. Plurimum inter eos Bellovacos et virtute et auctoritate et hominum numero valere: hos posse conficere armata milia centum, pollicitos ex eo numero electa milia sexaginta, totiusque imperium sibi postulare. Suessiones suos esse finitimos; fines latissimos feracissimosque agros possidere. Apud eos fuisse regem nostra etiam memoria Divitiacum, totius Galliae potentissimum, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum, tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit: nunc esse regem Galbam: ad hunc propter iustitiam prudentiamque totius belli summam omnium voluntate deferri: oppida habere numero duodecim, polliceri millia armata quinquaginta: totidem Nervios, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habeantur longissimeque absint: quindecim millia Atrebates, Ambianos decem millia, Morinos viginti quinque millia, Menapios septem millia, Caletos decem millia, Velocasses et Veromanduos.
totidem, Aduatucos decem et novem millia; Condrusos, Eburones, Caeraesos, Paemonos, qui uno nomine Germani appellantur, arbitrari ad quadranginta millia.

**BIBRAX.**

V.—Caesar Remos cohortatus liberaliterque oratione prosequutus omnem senatum ad se convenire principumque liberos obsides ad se adduci iussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Divitiacum Aeduum magno opere cohortatus docet quanto opere reipublicae communicisque salutis intersit manus hostium distineri, ne cum tanta multitudine uno tempore confligendum sit. Id fieri posse si suas copias Aedui in fines Bellovacorum introderit et eorum agros populari coeperint. His mandatis eum ab se dimittit. Postquam omnes Belgarum copias in unum locum coactas ad se venire vidit, neque iam longe abesse ab his quos miserat exploratoribus et ab Remis cognovit, flumen Axonam, quod est in extremis Remorum finibus, exercitum transducere maturavit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae res et latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniebat et, post eum quae essent, tuta ab hostibus reddebat, et commenatus ab Remis reliquisque civitatibus ut sine periculo ad eum portari possent efficiebat. In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi praesidium ponit et in altera parte fluminis Quintum Titurium Sabinum legatum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vallo fossaque duodeviginti pedum munire iubet.

VI.—Ab his castris oppidum Remorum nomine Bibrax aberat millia passuum octo. Id ex itinere magno impetu Belgae oppugnare coeperunt. Aegre eo die sustentatum est. Gallorum eadem atque Belgarum oppugnatio est haec. Ubi, circumiecta multitudine hominum totis moenibus, undique lapides in murum iaci coepi sunt, murusque defensoribus nudatus est, testudine facta portas succedunt murumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiebat. Nam cum tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conicerent, in muro
DE BELLO GALLICO, LIB. II.

consistendi potestas erat nulli. Cum finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Iccius Remus, summa nobilitate et gratia inter suos, qui tum oppido praeerat, unus ex his qui legati de pace ad Caesarem venerant, nuntium ad eum mittit: Nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sese diutius sustinere non posse.

VII.—Eo de media nocte Caesar, iisdem ducibus usus qui nuntii ab Iccio venerate, Numidas et Cretas sagittarios et funditores Baleares subsidio oppidanis mittit; quorum adventu et Remis cum spe defensionis studium propugnandi accessit, et hostibus eadem de causa spes potiundi oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morati agrosque Remorum depopulati, omnibus vicis aedificiisque quos adire potuerant incensis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus copiis contenderunt et ab millibus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt; quae castra, ut fumo atque ignibus significabatur, amplius millibus passuum octo in latitudinem patebant.

VIII.—Caesar primo et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opinionem virtutis proelio superersedere statuit; quotidie tamen equestribus proeliiis quid hostis virtute posset et quid nostri auderent sollicitationibus periclitabatur. Ubi nostros non esse inferiores intellexit, loco pro castris ad aciem instruendam natura opportuno atque idoneo, quod is collis ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex planitie editus tantum adversus in latitudinem patebat quantum loci acies instructa occupare poterat, atque ex utraque parte lateris deiectus habebat et in fronte leniter fastigatus paulatim ad planitiem redibat, ab utroque latere eius collis transversam fossam obduxit circiter passuum quadringentorum, et ad extremas fossas castella constituit ibique tormenta collocavit, ne, cum aciem instruxisset, hostes, quod tantum multitudine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantes suos circumvenire possent. Hoc facto duabus legionibus quas proxime conscripserat in castris relictis ut, si quo opus esset, subsidio duci possent, reliquas
sex legiones pro castris in acie constituit. Hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas instruxerant.

CAMP NEAR THE AXONA ATTACKED.

IX.—Palus erat non magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent hostes exspectabant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos adgrederentur parati in armis erant. Interim proelio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, secundioerequitumproelio nostris, Caesar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contenderunt, quod esse post nostra castra demonstratum est. Ibi vadis repertis partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt, eo consilio ut, si possent, castellum cui praeerat Quintus Titurius legatus expugnarent pontemque interscinderent; si minus potuissent, agros Remorum popularentur, qui magno nobis usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeatuque nostros prohiberent.

X.—Caesar certior factus ab Titurio omnem equitatum et levis armaturae Numidas, funditores sagittariosque pontem transducit atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. Hostes impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi magnum eorum numerum occiderunt. Per eorum corpora reliquos audacissime transire conantes multitudine telorum reppulerunt; primos qui transierant equitatu circumventos interfecerunt. Hostes, ubi et de expugnando oppido et de flumine transeundo spem se fesellisse intellexerunt neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progresdi pugnandi causa viderunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria deficere coepit, concilio vocato constituerunt optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti, ut quorum in fines primum Romani exercitum introduxissent, ad eos defendendos undique convenirent, et potius in suis quam in alienis finibus decertarent et domesticis copiis rei frumentariae uterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod Divitiacum
DE BELLO GALlico, LIB. II.

atque Aeduos finibus Bellovacorum adpropinquare cog-

noverant. His persuaderi ut diutius morarentur neque

suis auxilium ferrent non poterat.

XI.—Ea re constituta, secunda vigilia magno cum stre-
pitu ac tumultu castris egressi nullo certo ordine neque
imperio, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum pteroet
et domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt ut consimilis

tugae profectio videretur. Hac re statim Caesar per
speculatores cognita insidias veritus, quod qua de causa
discenderent nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque
castris continuit. Prima luce confirmata re ab explorator-
ibus, omnem equitatum qui novissimum agmen moraretur
praemisit. His Quintum Pedium et Lucium Auruncia-
lemium Cottam legatos pi aefecit. Titum Labienum legatum
cum legionibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hi novissimos
adorti et multa millia passuum prosequuntur magnam multi-
tudinem eorum fugientium considerunt, cum ab extremo
agmine ad quos ventum erat consistere fortiterque im-
petum nostrorum militum sustinerent prioresque, quod
abesse a periculo viderentur, neque ulla necessitate neque
imperio continerentur, exaudito clamore perturbatis ordi-
nibus omnes in fuga sibi praesidium ponerent. Ita sine
ullo periculo tantam eorum multitudinem nostri interfece-
runt quantum fuit diei spatium, sub occasumque solis des-
titerunt, seque in castra, ut erat imperatum, receperunt.

NOVIODUNUM AND BRATUSPANTII.

XII.—Postridie eius diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes
ex terrore ac fuga reciperent, in fines Suessionum, qui
proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit et magno itinere
confecto ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinere
oppugnare conatus, quod vacuum ab defensoribus esse
audiavit, propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem
paucis defendentibus expugnare non potuit. Castris mu
nitis vineas agere quaeque ad oppugnandum usui erant
comparare coepit. Interim omnis ex fuga Suessionum
multitudo in oppidum proxima nocte convenit. Celeriter

\[\text{A forced march and attack on Noviodunum, which \textit{surrenders}.}\]
vineis ad oppidum actis, aggere iacto turribusque constitutis, magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti legatos ad Caesarem de deditione mittunt, et potentibus Remis, ut conservarentur impetrat.

XIII.—Caesar obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis atque ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis, in deditionem Sueessiones accepit exercitumque in Bellovacos ducit. Qui cum se suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo oppido Caesar cum exercitu circiter millia passuum quinque abesset, omnes maiores natu ex oppido egressi manus ad Caesarem tendere et voce significare coeperunt sese in eius fidem ac potestatem venire neque contra Populum Romanum armis contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi poneret, pueri et mulieresque ex muro passis manibus suo more pacem ab Romanis petierunt.

XIV.—Pro his Divitiacus, nam post discessum Belgarum dimissis Aedorum copiis ad eum reverterat, facit verba: Bellovacos omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Aeduae fuisse: impulsos a suis principibus qui dicerent Aeduos a Caesare in servitutem redactos omnes indignitates contumeliasque perferre, et ab Aeduis defecisse et Populo Romano bellum intulisse. Qui huius consilii principes fuissent, quod intelligentem quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere non solum Bellovacos sed etiam pro his Aeduos ut sua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utatur. Quod si fecerit, Aedorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas amplificaturum; quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consuerint.

THE NERVII.

XV.—Caesar honoris Divitiaci atque Aedorum causa sese eos in fidem recepturum et conservaturum dixit: quod erat civitas magna inter Belgas auctoritate atque hominum multitudine praestabat, sexcentos obsides popos-
cit. His traditis omnibusque armis ex oppido collatis, ab eo loco in fines Ambianorum pervenit, qui se suaque omnia sine mora dediderunt. Eorum fines Nervii attingebant: quorum de natura moribusque Caesar quum quae reret, sic reperiebat: Nullum aditum esse ad eos mercatoribus: nihil pati vini reliquarumque rerum ad luxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod his rebus relanguescere animos et remitti virtutem existimaret: esse homines feros magnaeque virtutis; increpitare atque incusare reliquis Belgas qui se Populo Romano dedidissent patriamque virtutem proiecissent: confirmare sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam conditionem pacis accepturos.

XVI.—Cum per eorum fines triduum iter fecisset, inveniebat ex captivis Sabim flumen ab castris suis non amplius millia passuum decem abesse: trans id flumen omnes Nervios consedisse adventumque ibi Romanorum exspectare una cum Atrebatibus et Veromanduis finitimis suis, nam his utrisque persuaserant uti eandem belli fortunam exserentur: exspectabi etiam ab his Aduatucorum copias atque esse in itinere: mulieres quique per acetatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur in eum locum coniecisse, quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

XVII.—His rebus cognitis exploratores centurioniesque praemittit qui locum idoneum castris deligant. Cumque ex dediticiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures Caesarem sequuti una iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est: eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus perspecta nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt atque iis demonstrarunt inter singulas legiones impedi- mentorum magnum numerum intercedere, neque esse quicquam negotii, cum prima legio in castra venisset, reliquaque legiones magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinis adoriri: qua pulsa impedimentisque direptis futurum ut reliqua contra consistere non auderent. Adiu- vabant etiam eorum consilium qui rem deferebant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitatu nihil possent—neque enim ad hoc tempus ei rei student, sed quicquid possunt,
pedestribus valent copiis,—quo facilius finitimorum equitatum, si praedandi causa ad eos venisset, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis crebris in latitudinem ramis et rubis sentibusque interiectis, effecerant ut instar muri hae sepes munimenta praebent, quo non modo intrari, sed ne perspici quidem posset. His rebus cum iter agminis nostri impediretur, non ommittendum sibi consilium Nervii existimaverunt.

**XVIII.—** Loci natura erat haec, quem locum nostri castris delegerant. Collis ab summo aequaliter declivis ad flumen Sabim, quod supra nominavimus, vergebat. Ab eo flumine pari acclivitate collis nascebat adversus huic et contrarius passus circiter ducentos, infimus apertus, ab superiore parte silvestris ut non facile introrsus perspici posset. Inter eas silvas hostes in occulto sese continebant: in aperto loco secundum flumen paucae stationes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitudo pedum circiter trium.

**XIX.—** Caesar equitatu praemisso subsequebatur omnibus copiis: sed ratio ordoque agminis aliter se habebat ac Belgae ad Nervios detulerant. Nam, quod ad hostes appropinquabat, consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiones expeditas ducebat: post eas totius exercitus impedimenta collocarat: inde duae legiones quae proxime conscriptae erant totum agmen claudebant praesidioque impedimentis erant. Equites nostri cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi cum hostium equitatu proelium commiserunt. Cum se illi identidem in silvas ad suos recipierent ac rursus ex Silva in nostris impetu facerent, neque nostri longius quam quem ad finem porrecta ac loca aperta pertinebant cedentes insequi auderent, interim legiones sex, quae primae venerant, opere dimenso castra munire coeperunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitus ab his qui in silvis abditi latebant visa sunt, quod tempus inter eos committendi proelii convenerat, ita, ut
DE BELLO GALLICO, LIB. II.

intra silvas aciem ordinesque constituerant atque ipsi sese confirmaverant, subito omnibus copiis provolaverunt impetumque in nostros equites fecerunt. His facile pulsis ad proturbatis incredibili celeritate ad flumen decucererunt, ut paene uno tempore et ad silvas et in flumine et iam in manibus nostris hostes viderentur. Eadem autem celeritate adverso colle ad nostra castra atque eos qui in opere occupati erant contenderunt.

XX.—Caesar omnia uno tempore erant agenda: vexillum proponendum, quod erat insigne cum ad arma concurri oportaret, signum luba dandum, ab opere revocandi milites, quia paulo longius ageris petendi causa processerant arcessendi, acies instruenda, milites cohordandi, signum dandum. Quarum rerum magnam partem temporis brevitas et successus et incursus hostium impedi-bat. His difficultatibus duae res erant subsidio, scientia atque usus militum, quod superioribus proeliis exercitati, quid fieri oportaret non minus commode ipsi sibi praescribere quam ab aliis doceri poterant, et quod ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar discedere, nisi munitis castris vetuerat. Hi propter pro-pinquitatatem et celeritatem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectabant, sed per se quae videbantur administrabant.

XXI.—Caesar necessariis rebus imperatis ad cohortandos milites quam in partem fors obtulit decucurrit et ad legionem decimam devenit. Milites non longiore oratione cohortatus quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent nee perturbarentur animo hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent, quod non longius hostes aberant quam quo telum adici posset, proelii committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causa profectus pugnabantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus, ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeas induendas scutisque tegumenta detrahenda tempus defuerit. Quam quisque in partem ab opere casu devenit
quaeque prima signa conspexit, ad haec constitit, ne in quaeerendis suis pugnandi tempus dimitteret.

XXII.—Instructo exercitu magis ut loci natura deiectus-que collis et necessitas temporis quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulabat, cum diversis locis legiones aliae alia in parte hostibus resisterent, sepibusque densissimis, ut ante demonstravimus, interiectis prospectus impediretur, neque certa subsidia collocari, neque quid in quaque parte opus esset provideri, neque ab uno omnia imperia administrari poterant. Itaque in tanta rerum iniquitate fortunae quoque eventus variis sequabantur.

XXIII.—Legionis nonae et decimae miliites, ut in sinistra parte acie constiterant, pilis emissis cursu ac lassitudine examinatos vulneribusque confectos Atrebates nam his ea pars obvenerat,—celeriter ex loco superiore in flumen compulerunt et transire conantæ insequenti gladiis magnam partem eorum impeditam interfecerunt. Ipsi transire flumen non dubitaverunt, et in locum iniquum progressi rursus regressos ac resistentes hostes redintegrato proelio in fugam dederunt. Item alia in parte diversae duæ legiones, undecima et octava, pro-filigatis Veromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco superiore in ipsis fluminis ripis proeliabantur. At tum totis fere a fronte et ab sinistra parte nudatis castris, cum in dextro cornu legio duodecima et non magno ab ea intervallo septima constisset, omnes Nervii con-fertissimo agmine duce Boduognato qui summam imperii tenebat, ad eum locum contenderunt: quorum pars aperto latere legiones circumvenire, pars summum castrorum locum petere coepit.

XXIV.—Eodem tempore equites nostri levisque arma-turae pedites, qui cum iis una fuerant, quos primo hostium impetu pulsos dixeram, cum se in castra recipere, adversis hostibus occurribant ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petebant: et calones, qui ab decumana porta ac summo jugo collis nostros victores flumen transisse conspexerant, praedandi causa egressi, cum respexissent
et hostes in nostris castris versari vidissent, praecipites fugae sese mandabant. Simul eorum qui cum impedimentis veniebant clamor fremitusque oriebatur, alique aliam in partem perterriti ferebantur. Quibus omnibus rebus permoti equites Treveri, quorum inter Gallos virtutis opinio est singularis, qui auxiliii causa ab civitate missi ad Caesarem venerant, cum multitudine hostium castra nostra compleri, legiones premi et paene circumventas teneri, calones, equites, funditores, Numidas, diversos dissipatosque, in omnes partes fugere vidissent, desperatis nostris rebus, domum contenderunt: Romanos pulsos superatosque, castris impedimentisque eorum hostes potitos civitati renuntiaverunt.

XXV.—Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu prefectus, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum collatis duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit, quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis signiseroque interfecit, signo amissro, reliquarum cohortium omnibus fere centurionibus aut vulneratis aut occisis, in his primipilo Publio Sextio Baculo, fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto ut iam se sustinere non posset; reliquos esse tardiores, et nonnullos ab novissimis desertis proelio excedere ac tela vitare, hostes neque a fronte ex inferiori loco subeuntes intermittere et ab utroque latere instare, et rem esse in angusto vidit, neque ullum esse subsidium quod submitti posset, scuto ab novissimis uni militi detracto, quod ipse eo sine scuto venerat, in primam aciem processit centurionibusque nominatim appellatis reliquis cohortatus milites signa inferre et manipulos laxare iussit, quo facilius gladiis uti possent. Cuius adventu spe illata militibus ac redintegrato animo, cum pro se quisque in conspectu imperatoris et iam in extremis suis rebus operam navare cuperet, paulum hostium im-petus tardatus est.

XXVI.—Caesar cum septimam legionem, quae iuxta constiterat item urgeri ab hoste vidisset, tribunos militum
C. IULI CAESARIS

monuit ut paulatim sese legiones coniungerent et conversa signa in hostes inferrent. Quo facto, cum alii alii subsidium ferret, neque timerent ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audacius resistere ac fortius pugnare coeperunt. Interim milites legionum duarum, quae in novissimo agmine praesidio impedimentis fuerant, proelio nuntiato, cursu incitato, in summo colle ab hostibus conspiciebantur. Et Titus Labienus castris hostium potitus et ex loco superiore quae res in nostris castris gerentur conspiciat decimam legionem subsidio nostris misit. Qui cum ex equitum et calonum fuga, quo in loco res esset, quantoque in periculo et castra et legiones et imperator versaretur, cognovissent, nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt.

XXVII.—Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio facta est ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti procul buissent, scutis innixi proelium redintegrarent, tum calones perterritos hostes conspiciati etiam inermes armatis occurrerent, equites vero, ut turpitudinem fugae virtute de rerent, omnibus in locis pugnae se legionariis militibus praeferrent. At hostes etiam in extrema spe salutis tantam virtutem praestiterunt ut, cum primi eorum cecidissent, proximi iacentibus insisterent atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent: his deiectis et coacervatis cada- veribus, qui superessent, ut ex tumulo tela in nostros conicerent et pila intercepta remitterent: ut non nequiquam tantae virtutis homines iudicari deberet ausos esse transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimis animi magnitudo redegerat.

XXVIII.—Hoc proelio facto et propé internecionem gente ac nomine Nerviorum redacto maiores natu, quos una cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuaria ac paludes collectos dixeramus, hac pugna nuntiata, cum victoribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tutum arbitrarentur, omnium qui supererant consensu legatos ad Caesarem miserunt seque ei dediderunt, et in commemoranda civitatis cala-
mitate ex sexcentis ad tres senatores, ex hominum millibus sexaginta vix ad quingentos qui arma ferre possent sese redactos esse dixerunt. Quos Caesar, ut in miseros ac supplices usus misericordia videretur, diligentissime conservavit suisque finibus atque oppidis uti iussit, et finitimis imperavit ut ab iniuria et maleficio se suosque prohiberent.

**THE ADUATUCI.**

XXIX.—Aduatuci, de quibus supra scripsimus, cum omnibus copiis auxilio Nerviis venirent, hac pugna nitianta ex itinere domum revertunt; cunctis oppidis castellisque desertis sua omnia in unum oppidum egregie natura munitum contulerunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitu partibus altissimas rupes despectusque haberet, una ex parte leniter acclivis aditus in latitudinem non amplius ducentorum pedum relinquebatur: quem locum duplici altissimo muro munierant, tum magni ponderis sâxâ et praeacutas trabes in muro collocarant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prognati, qui, cum iter in provinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, iis impedimentis, quae secum agere ac portare non poterant, citra flumen Rhenum depositis custodiam ex suis ac praesidio sex millia hominum reliquerunt. Hi post eorum obitum multos annos a finitimis exagitati, cum alias bellum inferrent, alias illatum defenderent, consensu eorum omnium pace facta hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt.

XXX.—Ac primo adventu exercitus nostri crebras ex oppido excursiones faciebant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contendebant; postea vallo pedum duodecim in circuitu quindecim millium crebrisque castellis circummuniti oppido sese continebant. Ubi vinceis actis aggere exstructo turrim procul constitui viderunt, primum irre dere ex muro atque increpitare vocibus, quod tanta machinatio ab tanto spatio institueretur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus praesertim homines tantulae staturae, nam plerumque hominibus Gallis prae magnitu-
dine corporum suorum brevitas nostra contemptui est, tanti oneris turrim in muro sesè collocare considerent?

XXXI.—Ubi vero moveri et appropinquare moenibus viderunt, nova atque inusitata specie commoti legatos ad Caesarem de pace miserunt, qui ad hunc modum loquutus: Non se existinare Romanos sine ope divina bellum gerere, qui tantae altitudinis machinationes tanta celeritate promovere et ex propinquitate pugnare possent, se suaque omnia eorum potestati permettere dixerunt. Unum petere ac deprecari: si forte pro sua clementia ac mansuetudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, statuisset Aduatucos esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret: sibi omnes fere finitos esse inimicos ac suae virtuti invidere, a quibus se defendere traditis armis non possent. Sibi praestare, si in eum casum deducerentur, quamvis fortum a Populo Romano pati quam ab his per cruciatum interfici inter quos dominari consuessent.

XXXII.—Ad haec Caesar respondit: Se magis consu- tudine sua quam merito eorum civitatem conservaturum, si prius quam murum aries attigisset se dedidissent: sed dedititione nullam esse conditionem nisi armis traditis: se id quod in Nerviis fecisset facturum finitimisque imperaturum, ne quam dediticiis Populi Romani iniuriam inferrent. Re nuntiata ad suos, quae imperarentur facere dixerunt. Armorum magna multitudine de muro in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iacta sic ut prope summam muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armorum adaequarent, et tamen circiter parte tertia, ut postea perspectum est, celata atque in oppido retenta, portis patefactis eo die pace sunt usi.

XXXIII.—Sub vesperum Caesar portas claudi militesque ex oppido exire iussit ne quam noctu oppidani ab militibus iniuriam acciperent. Illi ante inito, ut intellec- tum est, consilio, quo deditione facta nostros praesidia deducturos aut denique indigentius servatuos credide- rant, partim cum his quae retinuerant et celaverant armis, partim scutis ex cortice factis aut viminibus intextis, quae
de bellO Gallico, lib. ii.

subito, ut temporis exiguas postulabat, pellibus induxerant, tertia vigilia, qua minime arduas ad nostras munitiones ascensus videbatur, omnibus copiis repente ex oppido eruptionem fecerunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperarat, ignibus significatione facta, ex proximis castellis eo concursum est, pugnatumque ab hostibus ita acriter ut a viris fortibus in extrema spe salutis iniquo loco contra eos qui ex vallo turribusque tela iacerent pugnari debuit, cum in una virtute omnis spes salutis consistert. Occisis ad hominum millibus quatuor reliquii in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postridie eius diei refractis portis, cum iam defenderet nemo, atque intromissis militibus nostris sectionem eis oppidi universam Caesar vendidit. Ab his qui emerant capitum numerus ad eum relatus est millium quinquaginta trium.

XXXIV.—Eodem tempore a Publio Crasso, quem cum legione una miserat ad Venetos, Unellos, Osismios, Curiosolitas, Sesuvios, Aulerkos, Rhedones, quae sunt maritimae civitates Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnes eas civitates in ditionem potestatemque Populi Romani esse redactas.

XXXV.—His rebus gestis omni Gallia pacata, tanta huius belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est uti ab his nationibus quae trans Rhenum incolerent mitterentur legati ad Caesaris, qui se obsides daturas, imperata facturas pollicercuntur; quas legationes Caesar, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properabat, inita proxima aestate ad se reverti iussit. Ipse in Carnutes, Andes, Turonesque, quae civitates propinquae his locis erant ubi bellum gesserat, legionibus in hiberna deductis, in Italiam profectus est: ob easque res ex literis Caesaris dies quindecim supplicatio decreta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.
NOTES.

BOOK II.

Note.—F.L. = First Latin Book; P.L. = Primary Latin Book. In the case of the former the numbers refer to the pages and sections; of the latter, the Roman numerals refer to the part of the book, and the Arabic to the sub-section.

CHAPTER I.

essel: for subjunctive: F.L. 203, 3; P.L. II., 169. The date is 57 B.C., in the consulship of P. Cornelius Lentulus and Q. Metellus Nepos.

in hibernis: hiberna generally means the winter quarters of an army engaged in a war. Here in hibernis may mean, "at the place where he was spending the winter."

ita uti: "just as."

quam: agrees with the word in the predicate rather than with its regular antecedent: translate, however: "who, as we have said, form the third part of Gaul."

coniurare: "had formed a league." There is no necessity to take this word here in the sense of "to form a conspiracy": cp. Greek συνωμοσία, "a league."

inter se dare: "were exchanging." Explain the tense of the inf.

quod vererentur: the subjunctive shows that the reasons were given on the authority of the Belgae: F.L. 198, 2; P.L. II., 165 (b).

Gallia = Gallia Celtica: the central part of Gaul is meant.

partim qui: "some of whom": partim—partim refer to nonnullis Gallis, who are classed in two divisions. The word partim, though accusative in form, is used by Caesar and Cicero as a word of distribution without any respect to its case.

ut—ita: "as—so."
inveterascere: "should become settled": literally, "should grow old."

moleste ferebant = Χαλέπως εφερον: "they were annoyed."

partim—studebant: "(while) others of these, in consequence of their instability and fickleness of disposition, were aiming at a revolution."—imperiiis: F.L. 105, 9; P.L. II., 55.

ab nonnullis etiam, scil. quod sollicitarentur: "thirdly because they were being instigated by a few, since in Gaul power was commonly being seized by the more powerful and by those who had means to hire men (and) who were able less easily to carry out this object under our sway." Note the different clauses in opposition to causas are introduced by primum, deinè, etiam.

imperio nostro: "under our sway": abl. of time and cause.

CHAPTER II.

nuntiiis litterisque: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (a).

duas legiones: the XIII. and XIV. Caesar now had eight legions, numbering from VII. to XIV. inclusive. The regular soldiers with the auxiliaries in Gaul would now number about 60,000 men.

inita aestate: abl. absolute: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. II., 48. Join this to qui deduceret.

interiorem Galliam: "into central Gaul.

qui deduceret, scil. eas: "to lead them." For qui=ut is: F.L. 184, 1; P.L. II., 25.

cum—iniperet: the subjunctive is used because the abundance of fodder was the occasion of his coming: F.L. 198, 3; P.L. II., 167.

exercitum: probably now at Vesontio (Besançon).


finitimi Belgis: What adjectives govern the dative? F.L. 60, 2; P.L. II., 102.

gerantur: for the subjunctive: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. II., 43.


constanter: "uniformly," "unanimously."
**BOOK II.**

_**tum—proficisceretur:** “then, indeed, he thought that he ought not to delay about setting out against them”: the negative _quin _introduces the dependent clause because of the negative character of the main statement. This idiom is still preserved in French: _je ne doutais pas que vous n’eussiez raison_: F.L. 188, 6; P.L. II., 156. Note that _non dubitare _with infinitive denotes an _act_ done without hesitation: cp. Caesar _de Bell. Gall._ 23: _transire flumen non dubitaverunt_, while _non dubitare quin _with subjunctive, denotes a _resolution_ made without hesitation.

**CHAPTER III.**

_**eo=ad fines Belgarum.**_

_**de improviso:** _cf. the English colloquial phrase, “of a sudden”; “un-expectedly.”_

_**CELERIUS OMNI OPINIONE:** “more quickly than any one had expected”: literally, “than every expectation”: F.L. 55, 5; P.L. II., 123 (c).

_**Remi:** _for the boundaries of these people, see Proper Names.

_**proximi Galiae:** _for the dative: F.L. 60, 2; P.L. II., 102. What other constructions may _proximi _have?

_**ex Belgis=inter Belgas.**_

_**qui—dicent:** _ _qui_= _ut ei_, hence the subjunctive: F.L. 184, 1; P.L. II., 25. In what other ways may this be expressed?

_**se:** _ _give chief rules for oblique narration: F.L. 209; P.L. II., 212-219.

_**neque=et non.**_

_**omnino:** _ note that _omnino _after negatives=“at all.”

_**oppidis:** _the _local_ ablative.

_**iuuare, scil., eum, i.e., Caesarem.**_

_**cis Rhenum:** _Caesar is writing from the standpoint of the Roman _Provincia_: cp. _Gallia Citerior, Gallia Cisalpina._

_**his=Belgis.—eorum omnium=Belgarum et Germanorum.**_

_**ne—quidem:** _the emphatic word comes between _ne _and _quidem._ Note that _Suessiones _is the object of _deterrere._

_**iure—legibus:** _for ablative: F.L. 116; P.L. II., 65. _ius _is often used in the sense of political rights as here: cp. _ius civitatis, ius Romanum: lex _is properly an enactment made in the Roman _comitia._

potuerint: governed by ut. Note ut, expressing a consequence never takes pluperfect subjunctive: "that they had been unable."

quin—consentirent: "from uniting": would quominus be permissible here? F.L. 185, 2 and note; P.L. II., 156.

CHAPTER IV.

quum: F.L. 203, 3; P.L. II., 169.

his: scil., legatis, mentioned in the beginning of the preceding chapter.

essent—posseint: for subjunctive of indirect question: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. II., 43.

ortos a Germanis: it is probable that Caesar’s statement here applies to those Belgae only near the German frontier. The main body of the people were of Gallic or Keltic origin. This is proved from the ancient Geographical names. Why is a expressed? F. L. 156, 4.

Rhenum: governed by the preposition trans in traductos: F.L. 96, 3; P.L. II., 72.

ibi: on the west bank of the river Rhine.

memoria: ablative of time within which: "within the memory of."

omnia—vexata: abl. abs.: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. II. 49: "when all Gaul was harrassed."

Teutones Cimbrosque: the Teutones and Cimbri appeared first at Noreia, on the extreme N.E. of Italy, about 113 B.C. After devastating Northern Italy, defeating seven consular armies, both were defeated by Marius, the former at Aquae Sextiae (Aix) in Southern Gaul in 102 B.C., the latter at Campi Raudii near Vercellae in Northern Italy in 101 B.C.

ingredi prohibuerint: for subjunctive. What constructions may verbs of hindering take? F.L. 185, 2; P.L. II., 156.

eri: the subject of this verb is the following clause: uti—sumerent.

memoria: for ablative: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (b).

omnia—habere: "that they had complete information." Properly explorare is, to find out a person by calling out his name.
propinquitatibus affinitatibusque coniuncti: propinquitas, properly called cognatio, is "kinship," the relationship that springs from common parents; affinitas is that derived from intermarriage. The affines of the wife are the cognati of the husband, i.e., the husband's father, brothers, etc., while the affines of the husband are the cognati of the wife, i.e., the wife's father, brothers, etc.

quisque: "each representative."

collictus sit: subjunctive of dependent clause in oblique narrative: F.L. 209 (2); P.L. II., 214 (2).

cognoverint: F.L. 209 (2); P.L. II., 214 (2).

conscere: "to muster."—armata millia centum=millia centum armatorum hominum.

sibi: the Bellovaci: suos refers to Remi subject of dicebant.

cum—tum=non solum—sed etiam.

Nervios: the names of peoples in the chapter show how persistently modern Geography preserves even in a corrupt form the memory of former days. The Bellovaci were settled near Beauvais; Suessiones, near Soissons; Ambiani, near Amiens; Caleti, near Calais; Atrebates, near Arras; Morini, near Boulogne; Velocasses had a capital Ratomagus, now Rouen; Veromandui were settled at Vermandois on the Upper Oise; the Menapii on the lower Scheldt; the Aduatuci, on the upper Mense; Condrusi, near Codroz; Eburones and Caeroesi in the Ardennes region; the Paemani, in Marche la Famine.

Germani: the word is said to mean in Keltic, "hill-men," "high-laniders": for other derivations see Proper Names.

CHAPTER V.

liberaliterque—prosecutus: "having dismissed them with friendly words."

prosequi verbis is a technical term, "to bid good-bye" to a person going into exile.

senatum: Caesar applies a Roman term to the council of the Belgae. So also Caesar: de Bell. Gall. II., 28, he uses the word senatores.

diligenter ad diem: "punctually to a day."

quanto—sit: "how important it is to the interests of the state and their
common safety that the forces of the enemy be kept apart that they may not be compelled to fight at one time with so great a number." reipublicae: F.L. 166, 3; P.L. II., 63.—intersit: for subjunctive:—confligendum sit: F.L. 183, 2; P.L. II. 25.

introduxerint: for mood and tense: F.L. 206, 4; P.L. 214 (3).

neque iam = et iam non.

flumen exercitum: F.L. 96, 3; P.L. II., 72.

eextremis: reckoning from the Marne where Caesar entered the territory of the Remi.

quae res: "this position."

ripis: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (a).

et reddebat: construe et reddebat (ca loca) quae essent post eum (esse) tuta ab hostibus. For mood of essent: F.L. 188, 4; P.L. II., 34.

efficiebat ut: "made it possible that."

pedum: F.L. 130, 8; P.L. II., 115.

CHAPTER VI.

nomine: abl. of specification.

ex itinere magno: "while on a forced march"; cp. ex itinere: B.I., Chapter xxv. The expression shows there was no interruption of the march when the attack was made.

eo die: the ablative is sometimes used for periods of duration so short as to be equivalent to a point of time.

eadem atque: "just the same as."

ubi—sub ruunt: "when they have placed a continuous line of men all along the fortifications and begun to shower stones from every side upon the wall and (when once) the wall has been cleared of its defenders, then they form a testudo, push on to the wall and proceed to pull it down."—circumiecta multitudine: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. II., 49.—totis moenibus: abl. of place.—coepti sunt: why passive?—murus: distinguish in meaning moenia, murus, paries, maceria.—testudine: Caesar gives the tactics of the Belgae a Roman name. In forming a testudo, the Roman soldiers held their shields over their heads close to one another so as to form an unbroken defence against the missiles from above. It obtained its name from the
appearance the shield had to a *tortoise shell* (*testudo*). Note that -que sometimes as here connects actions described as happening at some distance of time from each other.

*multitudo—conicerent*: the plural verb expresses numerous separate and individual actions. Had the singular been used there would have been the idea of unity.

*nulli*: decline. Note emphatic position.

*fecisset*: F. L. 203, 3; P. L. II., 169.

*summa nobilitate*: ablative of description: F. L. 131, 9; P. L. II., 124 (3).

*oppido*: for dative: F. L. 120, 2; P. L. II., 104.

*sibi sese*: Icicius.

*submittatur*: what is the force of *sub* in composition here?

**CHAPTER VII.**

*eo*: i.e., to Bibrax.

*de media nocte*: “soon after midnight”: so *de tertia vigilia* is, “after the third watch was set”: what would *tertia vigilia* mean?

*iiisdem—venerant*: “using as guides the same persons who had come as messengers.” For pronouns in opposition to nouns, compare note on *his ducibus qui iter cognoverant.*

*Numidas, Cretas, Baleares*: those three nations supplied the light skirmishers to the Roman armies. For an account of them see Proper Names.

*subsidiō—oppidanis*: for the two datives: F. L. 134, 1; P. L. II., 75. Join *oppidanis* with *subsidiō*, not with *mittit*.

*quorum—discessit*: “and at the arrival of these the Remi were inspired with eagerness to ward off the attack, as well as with the hope of a successful defence, while, for the same reason, the enemy gave up all hope of becoming masters of the town.”—*adventus*: abl. of time and cause.—*et Remis—accessit*: literally, “there was both added to the Remi”: F. L. 120, 2; P. L. II., 56.—*hostibus*. Note that many verbs compounded with *ab, di, ex*, as *adimo, discedo, eripio*, may take a dat. of person and acc. of thing in the active, or if they are intr., as here, a dat. of person.

*potiundi oppidi*: the genitive implies that *potior* may govern the accusative as it does in old Latin: Ter Adelph. 5, 4, 22: *miseriam omnem ego capio, hic potitur gaudia.*
morati, scil. hostes.

quos: account for the gender of the relative.

copii: abl. of accompaniment.

ab—posuerunt: this construction is best explained by hyperbaton (inversion in order of words), the regular construction being: posuerunt castra minus duobus passuum ab (castris Caesaris). The abl. millibus is ablative of difference: F. L. 58, 6; P. L. ii., 124 (d).—minus, plus, amplius have no influence on the construction: cp. ἐνασσον, πλειον in Gk.: ἀπέχει πλειον σταδίους δέκα.—millibus ablative of measure: F. L. 131, 9; P. L. ii., 124 (3).

CHAPTER VIII.

propter—virtutis: "on account of their fine reputation for valour."

proelio supersedere: "to delay the battle."—supersedeo means primarily, "to sit upon" in the sense of a presiding judge: Cato R. R. 5, B. I.: vilicus litibus familiae supersedeat: then "to refrain from" a thing in the sense of passing it over; hence, "to delay."—proelio: ablative.

equestribus proeliis—periclitabatur: literally "he kept trying to find out by cavalry skirmishes what the enemy could do by their valour and what daring our men had in skirmishing."—proeliis: ablative of means.—posset—auderent: dependent question: F. L. 176, 2; P. L. ii., 45.—periclitabatur =periculum faciebat. The original meaning of periculum is "a trial," "a test."

loco—idoneo: "the ground in front of the camp being naturally well adapted and suitable for drawing up his troops." The present participle of the verb esse being wanting we often find an adjective agreeing in predicate relation with a noun in abl. absolute:—ad—instruendam: for gerundive: F. L. 170, 3; P. L. ii., 140.

quod—redibat: "because that hill on which the camp was pitched, rising a little from the plain, extended in width towards the enemy far enough to form an army in line, and on both sides it had steep banks and in front gently sloping upward it gradually resumed a level."—ubi= in quo.—tantum: acc. sing. neut. of adjective: acc. of extent of space.—adversus: predicate adjective after patebat—locri: F. L. 69, 10; P. L. ii., 114.—lateris deiectus: literally, "slopes of the side."

transversam fossam: "an intrenchment at right angles," to the direction of the hill.
ad—fossas: “at the end of the intrenchments.”

tormenta: (from root TURC, “to whirl”) was the generic term under which were included balistae, onagri, scorpiones, catapulta.

quod—poterant: “because they were so strong in numbers.”

multitudine: abl. of cause.

 legionibus: the XIIIth and XIVth, which he had raised the previous summer in Gallia Cisalpina.

si quo opus esset: “if anywhere there was need.” Explain the tense of the subjunctive.

subsidio: dat. of purpose: “as a reserve force.”

 suas—instruxerant=suas copias ex castris eduxerant et instruxerant: note that the Latins often express by a participle and a verb two co-ordinate clauses.

CHAPTER IX.

palus: distinguish in meaning PULIS, PULIS.

hanc—erant: “the enemy were waiting to see whether our soldiers would cross this (marsh); our men, on the other hand, were under arms waiting to attack them (the enemy) when stuck fast (in the marsh), if they (the enemy) should first begin to cross it.”—hanc, scil. paludem.—

transirent: F.L. 96, 2; P.L. II., 95.—si—fiéret: literally, “if a beginning of crossing (the marsh) should be made by them” : for the subjunctive: F.L. 209, I (2); P.L. II., 220.

proelio—contendebatur: “a cavalry battle was fought between the two lines.” For the passive contendebatur: F.L. 164, 2; P.L. II., 57.

secundio—nostris: “the cavalry battle being more fortunate than usual to our men.” For abl. abs.; F.L. 100, 5; P.L. II., 52 (a).

eo consilio: “with the object.”

castellum: a redoubt which Titurius occupied with six cohorts on the south bank of the Axona (Aisne).

expugnarent: distinguish in meaning oppugno, expugno.

si—potuissent: the construction is: partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt eo consilio ut, si minus potuissent pontem expugnare et inter-scindere. The tense in potuissent implies the condition after the attempt had been made.
nobilis usui: F.L. 134, 1; P.L. II., 75.

commenatu: abl. of separation: F.L. 158, 2; P.L. II., 73.

CHAPTER X.

equilatum—pontem: for the two accusatives: F.L. 96, 3; P.L. II., 73.

levis armaturae: for genitive of description: F.L. 130, 7, 8; P.L. II., 115.

eo loco: the battle is said to have taken place between the mouth of the little stream Miette, which flows through the marsh mentioned in Chapter IX. into the Axona (Aisne), and the modern village of Pontavert.

impeditos: "hampered in their movements."

circumventus interfecerunt = circumvenierunt et interfecerunt: see last note on Chapter VIII.

hostes: the main body of the Belgae who remained drawn up in battle array, differing from the hostes impeditos mentioned before who were simply a detachment.

oppido: Bibrax.

spem se sefellisse: literally, "that their hope had deceived them."

neque = et non.

iniquiorem: "less favourable" for them than the original position where the legions were drawn up.

constituerunt—esse—(ut) convenirent: constiuo takes either—(1) the infinitive or (2) ut or ne with subjunctive, generally when the subjects of the main verb and dependent verb differ. Rarely do we find the construction varied in the same clause as here.

domum: what words are construed like the names of towns? F.L. 85, 1; P.L. II., 93 (a)

introduxissent: F.L. 209, 1, (2); P.L. II., 214 (2).

convenirent: in direct discourse this would be conveniamus, convenite.

copias: "supplies" here: what are the usual meanings of copia in singular and plural? F.L. 278, 3; P.L. III., 54 (e).

finibus: for the dative: F.L. 120, 2; P.L. II., 56.
his—poterat: "these could not be persuaded to delay any longer or to refrain from bringing aid to their countrymen."—his: F.L. 164, 1: P.L. II. 57.

CHAPTER XI.

ea—constituta: express this by other constructions.

secunda vigilia: from 9-12 P.M.

castris egressi=ex castris egressi: for abl.: F.L. 158, 2 (I); P.L. II., 123 (a).

nullo imperio: "without any definite marching order," or "command." The abl. absolute is explained by cum—tumultu and by cum—properaret.

primum—locum: "the first place in the line of march," i.e., to get at the head of the retreating column.

fecerunt—videretur: "they so managed matters that their setting out had all the appearance of a rout." For subjunctive: F.L. 187, 2; P.L. II., 33.

per exploratores. Distinguish this from ab exploratoribus in meaning.

nondum perspexerat: "he had as yet no intelligence."

exercitum=peditatum: as the foot soldiers made up the bulk of the Roman army, milites is often used for pedites; exercitus for peditatus.

castris=in castris.

qui moraretur=ut is moraretur: "to stop": F.L. 184, 1; P.L. II., 25.

his=equitibus implied in equitatum.

novissimos, scil. hostes: "the rear of the enemy.

magnam—conciderunt: "slew a great number of them as they were fleeing." Distinguish concido, concido in derivation and meaning.

cum—consisterent: "since those on the rear of their column, to whom the Romans had come, were making a stand."—ventum est: F.L. 164, 2; P.L. II., 57.

priores—ponerent: "(while) those in advance (of the rear guard), because they thought they were out of danger, and were not kept together by any necessity or command of their officers, when the shout reached their ears, all broke up their ranks in confusion and rested their hope in flight."—priores, scil. hostes: those at the head of the retreating column.—videretur
—continerentur: subjunctive by attraction.—perturbatis ordiniibns is more closely connected with verb ponerent than the first abl. abs.: exaudito clamore.—ponerent: F.L. 198, 2; P.L. II., 165 (a).

quantum—spatium: "as long as the length of the day permitted," i.e., as long as it was daylight.

CHAPTER XII.

postridie eius diei: posteri die, cotidie are locatives merged in a dative; cp. in old Latin die quinti, die crastini. Others take posteri die as ablative and compare antea, postea—eius die is a pleonasm. For the genitive cp. τη ἱστεραια τῆς μάχης.

prinsquam se—recipere: "before the enemy could recover themselves": F.L. 201, 5; P.L. II., 175.

magno itinere confecto: "by making a forced march." What was the length of a regular day's march? What, of a forced march? See Introduction, p. xxII., v.

Noviodunum: the ending -dun is Keltic for "town"; cp. Lugdunum: Melodunum: so that Noviodunum means Newtown. The modern Soissons (a corruption of Suessiones) is on its site, nearly 30 miles west of Berry-au-Bac.

ex itinere: "on his march."

latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem: note the chiasmus.

paucis defendentibus = quamvis pauci (id) defenderent: "though those who defended it were few": the abl. absol. is concessive here.

usui: F.L. 134, 1; P.L. II., 75.

vineas agere: "to get ready the vineae." The vineae were wooden frames, eight feet high, seven wide and sixteen long, protected with raw or wet hides. Under this protection the men advanced to the wall of the enemy, undermined the wall or filled up the ditch.

aggere iacto: "a platform being constructed." The aggeres were platforms for the artillery or for movable towers.

magnitudine—celeritate: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (a).

operum: "siege works."

Galli: appositive: "they, as Gauls."
et—impetrantr: "and at the request of the Remi, they (Suessiones) obtained their wish that their lives should be spared."

CHAPTER XIII.

primis = principibus.

Bratuspantium: an old town Bratuspante which once stood near Breteuil in Picardie, at the head of the Somme Valley.

contulissent—abesset: bring out in translation the differences in tense: so also in accessisset—poneret.

sese—venire: "that they placed themselves under his protection and power."—eius may be both objective and subjective genitive and hence implies a mutual pledge being given.

neque=et non.

pueri: "children": not necessarily "boys" merely.

passis manibus: "with outstretched hands," expressing humiliation.

more: abl. of manner: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (b).

CHAPTER XIV.

pro his = pro Bellovacis: "in defence of these."—eum = Caesarem.

reverterat: conjugate this verb. What verbs are semi-deponent?

facit verba: "intercedes."

Bellovacos: what are the chief rules for oblique narration: F.L. 209, I, 2; P.L. II., 213-220. In verba facit is implied dixit on which the indirect narrative depends.

omni tempore: note that the acc. omne tempus is not ordinarily used to express duration of time.

qui dicerent: "who kept saying": F.L. 209, 1 (2); P.L. II., 214 (2).

omnes—perferre: "endured every kind of ill-treatment and insult." Explain the use of the plural of abstract nouns.

qui: the antecedent of this is eos understood, the subject of profugisse.

principes = auctores: "advisers."

in Britanniam profugisse: Britain has often been a refuge for French agitators as in the recent case of Boulanger.
ut—utatur: "that he would exercise his well-known clemency and moderation towards them." What verbs govern the ablative? F.L. 116; P.L. II., 65.

fecerit: explain the fut. perf.

quorum—consuerint: "by whose aid and help, whatever wars happened they (Aedui) were wont to hold out."—auxiliis—opibus: abl. means. Change from Bellovacos to the end of the chapter into direct narrative.

CHAPTER XV.

honoris—causa: "out of regard for Divitiacus and the Aedui."—Divitiaci: objective genitive.

auctoritate: F.L. 131, 9; P.L. II., 124 (b) 3.—multitudine: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (a).

eo loco: Bratuspantium.

Nervii: these were looked upon as the most savage people of the Belgae.

natura: "character."

nullum—mercatoribus: "traders have no access to these." These traders were mainly from Massilia (Marseilles) and were probably Greeks and Italians who followed the Roman camp.

nihil—pati=(eos) non pati quicquam vini: "they do not at all permit the use of wine": for the partitive genitive: F.L. 69, 10; P.L. II., 113.—reliquarum rerum governed by quicquam implied in nihil. For a similar statement regarding the Belgae generally see Chapter I., B. 1.

iis rebus: "by these enjoyments."

quod—existimarent: what two reasons for the subjunctive?—Eorum: would suos be permitted here?

increpitare atque incusare: "they rebuked and even blamed." Distinguish et, atque and -que as connectives. Supply eos as subject of increpitare, incusare.—qui=quippe qui: "inasmuch as they": F.L. 198, 4; P.L. II., 196.

CHAPTER XVI.

eorum=Nerviorum.

triduum: scil., spatium, acc. of duration of time=tres dies.
millia: note that *plus, minus, amplius* have no influence on constructions of extent of time or space.

_in itinere:* "(already) on the march."

*mulieres—coniecisse:* the construction is: *inveniebat (eos) coniecisse
mulieres (hominis) que qui, etc.*

**CHAPTER XVII.**

_qui—deligant:* "to pick out."—*_qui=ut ei_: F. L. 184, 1; P. L. III., 25.

_ex—Gallis_: join this with *complures.*

dedititiis: the Ambiani, Suessiones, and Bellovaci.

eorum—perspecta: "the usual marching order on the part of our army
during these days being observed."

eorum dierum: depends on *itineris.*

_inter—intercedere:* "that between every two legions a great number of
beasts of burden were placed." Distinguish *impedimentum, impedimenta,*
and *sarcina* in meaning. The *impedimenta* seem here to refer to the horses,
waggons or any beast of burden used in transporting the heavy material
of the army.

_neque—adoriri:* "and that there was no trouble, when the first legion
reached the camp, and (when) the other legions were a long way off, in
attacking this (legion) still encumbered with baggage."—*_negotii:_ partitive
genitive after *quidquam.*—_spatium_: F. L. 69, 9; P. L. II., 92.

_futurum esse:_ depending on *demonstraverunt,* and having the clause *ut—
auderent* for subject: "the result would be that the other legions would not
be bold enough to withstand the attack": F. L. 187, 1; P. L. II., 33.

_reliquae, scil., legiones.*

_adiuvabat—posset:_ "the following fact added weight to the advice of
those who brought this intelligence, that the Nervii, long ago, since they
could do nothing with cavalry (for up to this time they do not pay any
heed to this branch of the service, but whatever power they have rests in
their infantry), that the more easily they might obstruct the operations of
the cavalry of their neighbours, if they came against them (Nervii) for the
purpose of plunder, had caused, by lopping the trees when young and by
intertwining the branches which grew out thick in a lateral direction and by
interposing brambles and briars, these hedges like a wall to form a defence,
which far from being able to enter they could not even see through." Such is the literal translation. Break up the sentence into several separate sentences for a good English version.

antiquitus: explain the ending of the adverb.—quo: F. L. 183, 5; P. L. ii., 26.—venissent: F. L. 209, 1 (2); P. L. ii., 214 (2).—effecerant ut: F. L. 181, 3; P. L. ii., 208.—instar muri: instar is an indeclinable substantive.—non modo = non modo non: cp. the Greek use of où μόνον for ôv μόνον οὐ.

non—consilium: "this plan should not be neglected by them": for dative sibi: F. L. 173, 4; P. L. ii., 105.

CHAPTER XVIII.

loci—quem locum: the repetition of the antecedent with the relative is frequent in Caesar, especially when exactness is required. This place is said to be on the River Sabis (now Sambre) in France, near the Belgian frontier, about two miles S. W. of Maubeuge.

declivis: a hill sloping from the top to the bottom was called declivis: from the bottom to the top, acclivis.

huic—contrarius: "facing and opposite to this." There is little difference between adversus and contrarius: the former seems to mean that the two hills corresponded in form and extent.

passus—ducentos: some say that the hill began to rise about 200 paces from the margin of the river, others that it was 200 paces from the bottom to the top.—passus: acc. of extent: F. L. 69, 9; P. L. ii., 92.

infimus apertus = infima parte apertus opposed to ab superiore parte silvestris: "thickly wooded on the top, so that it was not easy to see into it."

secundum: here a preposition: "down the river": we have also secundo flumine, adverso flumine for "down the river," "up the river": secundo and adverso being adj. in abl. absolute, agreeing with flumine.


CHAPTER XIX.

copiis: ablative of accompaniment: F. L. 12, 3; P. L. ii., 124 (1).

ratio—detulerent: "the system and arrangement of the army was differ-
ent from what the Belgae had reported to the Nervii.”—habebat: sing. from the unity of idea contained in ordo ratioque.—ac.: with words signifying difference, = “than.”

sūa consuetudine: “according to his usual custom”; abl. of manner.
expeditas: “without baggage.”
duae legiones: the xiiiith and xivth legions.
totum—claudebant: “brought up the whole rear.”
praesidio impedimentis: for the two datives: F.L. 134, 1; P.L. ii., 75.
identidem: “repeatedly.”
neque—auderent: ““and when our soldiers did not dare to follow those in retreat further than the level and open ground extended in front.”
neque=et non.—quem ad finem—ad eum finem ad quem=usque eo quo.—
porrecta: literally, “stretching in front.”

quae—venerant: “which had been the first to come up.”
opere dimenso: “the work allotted to each being measured out.” After picking out a place for the camp (Chapter xviii., locum idoneum castris deligere), the six legions which first came up began to fortify the camp (castra munire) after the ground had been marked out for each by the surveyors (castrorum metatores, or mensores). Note that dimenso is passive. The participles of deponent verbs are used often passively: Madvig., § 153.

ubi—fecerunt: “when the first part of the baggage train of our army was seen by those who were concealed in ambush in the forest, which had been agreed upon among them as the proper time for beginning the battle, on a sudden they darted forth with all their forces, and made an onset on our cavalry in the same order as they had drawn up their line of battle and ranks within the woods, and as they had encouraged each other to do.”


proturbatis: “driven forward in confusion.” Another reading is perturbatis.
paene—tempore: “almost in one and the same moment.”
ad silvis: “at the edge of the woods.”

* in manibus: may mean what a person has under his hand; hence what
38

NOTES.

is in his power, or as here what is close at hand; cp. Sall. Bell. Jug. I, 57: *cuperere proelium in manibus facere.*

*adverso colle*: "up the hill": cp. *secundum* in Chapter xviii. They made straight for the Roman camp with the hill before them.

CHAPTER XX.


*vexillum—dandum*: notice the *asyndeton* in this sentence. Why does Caesar here use it?—*vexillum* (diminutive of *velum*, "a sail") was a crimson flag hung out from the *praetorium* as the signal of battle. Plutarch calls it *φοινικοῖς χιτωνι*, "a crimson cloak."

*quum—opleret*: "when they had to rush to arms." Explain the subjunctive here: F. L. 203, 3; P. L. II., 169.

*signum*: "the signal of battle." The various instruments in Caesar's army were: (1) *tuba*: a trumpet, straight, with a funnel-shaped operating and used for giving signals to form in line, advance, and retreat; (2) *cornu*: horn, originally made of buffalo horn, gave the signal to the army to assemble and hear the address of the commander, or the sentence of death pronounced; (3) *bucina*: clarion was sounded to mark a change of watch. In Caesar's time the *lutas* was also used, though not mentioned by him. It was used for cavalry and had a harsh and high note.

*qui—aresensendi*: "those who had gone a little too far to seek materials or the mound had to be summoned." The antecedent of *qui* is *ei milites* understood, subject of *aresensendi sunt*.

*milites cohortandi*: referring to the usual harangue (*militum cohortatio*) of the general before the action began.

*signum dandum*: it is better to take this = *signum committendi proelii dandum est*: "the first order to charge." Others say it refers to the *tessera* or watch-word given to the men, so that by calling it they might avoid mistake or confusion in distinguishing friends and foes. It was usually some auspicious term or name. The watch-word of Caesar was usually *Venus Genetrix*; of Brutus, *Libertas*. With *tessera*: cp. Greek *σύνθημα*.

*successus*: "approach" of the Nervii from below.

*his—militum*: "two things, namely, the skill and experience of the soldiers were of assistance to him to meet these difficulties."—*difficultatibus*;
dative, depending on _subsidio_: _usus_: a more important word than _scientia_ in Caesar’s eyes. Note _ac_, or _atque_ join words of which the latter is the more important.

_non—poterant_: “they were able to give the command to themselves with no less advantage than to receive the command from others.” This shows the high degree of discipline to which Caesar had brought his legions.

_ab—vetuerat_: “Caesar had forbidden the different lieutenants to leave the fortifications and their respective legions, except after the camp was fortified.” For distributive numeral: F.L. 69, 8; P.L. III., 58 (c).

_nisi—castris_: the full construction: _nisi decreessissent munitis castris_: for abl. absol.: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. II., 49.

_nihil (=_ne hilum: “not a mark,” or _=ne filum, “not a thread,”) is here used for an emphatic non._

_videbantur, scil. administranda esse_: “but they did of their own accord what they thought ought to be done.”

CHAPTER XXI.

_necessarii—is imperatis_: “having given (only) the necessary orders”: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. II., 49.

_quam in partem—obtulit_: the full construction is: _in eam partem quam partem fors obtulit_: “in the direction which fortune first presented.”—_fors_: (from _fero,_) whatever fortune brings.

_retinenter—posset_: for the imperfect subjunctives. Note the force of the imperfect denoting continuous action.

_neu—et ne_: cp. Caes. _de Bell. Gall., 4, 17_: _ut—his defensoribus earum verum vis minuaretur neu ponti nocerent._

_animo—in animo._

_quod—posset_: this gives the reason for _signum dedit._

_quam quo—quam ut eo_: “than the throw of a dart”: F.L. 198, 4; P.L. II., 196.

_pugnantibus occurrit_: “he finds them already engaged in fighting.”

_insignia_: these seem to be the _crista_, feathers black and red, and other ornaments worn by the Roman soldiers to distinguish the legions and cohorts. These were movable and were not worn on the march.
scutis: abl. of separation: F.L. 158, 2 (1); P.L. II., 123 (a). The scutum was protected on the march with a leathern cover to shield it from the effects of the weather.

quam—conspexit: the full expression would be: *hac in parte et ad haec signa quisque constitit, quam primam in partem devenit, et quae prima signa conspexit.* On ordinary occasions it was a serious offence for a soldier to be absent from his regular post.

in—suis = in quaerendo sua (signa): “in seeking out his own standard.”

CHAPTER XXII.

magis—postulabat: “more in accordance with the position of the ground, the slope of the hill, and the urgency of the occasion than with the principles and arrangement approved of by military science”—*magis ut—postulabat*: distinguish the use of the indic. and the subjunctive with *ut* following the comparative.

cum—resisterent: “since, as the different legions were scattered, different places held out against the enemy.”—*dversis—legionibus*: abl. absolute.


sepibusque—interiectis: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. II., 49.

provideri, scil., poterat: the subject of which is the clause *quid—esset.*

fortunae: genitive depending on *eventus*: “the varying success of fortune also followed”: that is, some divisions were victorious and some defeated.

CHAPTER XXIII.

acie: genitive = aciei. Compare Aulus Gellius: *Caius Caesar in libro de Analogia secundo, huius die et huius specie dicendum putat.*

ear pars: the sinistra pars occupied by the soldiers of the 11th and 10th legions.—*his = Atrebatis.*

ex loco superiore: the prepositional abl. absolute: “since they occupied the higher ground.”

conantes, scil., eos (Atrebates): “as they (the Atrebates) were trying.”

ipsi = legionum nonae et decimae milites.

transire: for infinitive after *non dubitaverunt* see note under Chapter II., B. II.
**Book II.**

*diversae*: "separately."

*erant congressi*: scil. *milites*, from *legiones*.

*ex loco—proeliabantur*: "had gone down from the high ground and were fighting on the banks of the river." Explain the force of the imperfect.

*nudatis*: "being stripped" of defenders.

*intervallo*: abl. of difference: F.L. 58, 6; P.L. 2., 124 (d).

*latere aperto*: their flank being left uncovered": abl. abs. In this case *latus* = *latus sinistrum*.

*summum—locum*: "the height occupied by the camp."

**Chapter XXIV.**

*levis armaturae*: see note on *levis armaturae*: Chapter X., B. II.

*adversis*: "face to face."

*decumana porta*: the Roman camp had four gates: *porta praetoria*, in front, facing the enemy, and called from being near the *praetorium* or headquarters of the general; opposite to this was the *porta decumana* in the rear of the camp, and so called because the 10th cohorts of the legion (*decima cohors*) were stationed there; *porta principalis dextra*, in the centre on the right hand side of the camp, and *porta principalis sinistra*, on the left hand side.

*respexissent—vidissent*: F.L. 203, 3; P.L. 2., 169.

*quorum—singularis*: "whose reputation for valour is very high among the Gauls."—*opinio* sometimes means, as here, the impression conveyed to others.

*auxilia—civitate=auxiliorum loco ab civibus*: "as auxiliaries by their countrymen." This accounts for *ab*. So also at the end of this chapter *civitate=civibus*.

*castris*: for ablative: F. L. 116; P. L. 2., 65. *Potior* governs the genitive when it means *to be master of*.

**Chapter XXV.**

*Cæsar—scuto—detracto—processit*: to this main sentence there is a long *prothesis* or introduction which may conveniently be divided into two parts, the first extending to *esse impedimento vidit*, and the second, to *submitti posset*. 
ab—cohortatione = ab decima legione quam cohortatus erat.

signis—collatis : causative to esse impedimento : "since the standards (of the maniples) were crowded together." Distinguish aquila, signum, vexillum in meaning.

centurionibus occisis : this and the four succeeding ablatives absolute are causal to religios esse tardiores : "all the centurions of the fourth cohort were slain, etc., therefore, all the rest of the men were getting cowed."

—primipilo : primus pilus was the first centurion of the first manipulus of the triarii and was the first in rank of the sixty centurions of the legion. He was entrusted with the eagle of the legion, ranked among the equites as regards pay, and had a place in the council of war along with the consul and tribunes.

et—excedere = et nonnullos ab novissimis locum deserere ac proelio excedere : "while some in the rear were quitting their posts and withdrawing from the battle." Others have desertos : "abandoned by those in the rear." It is better to supply loco with deserto. For proelio : F.L. 158, 2; P.L., 123 (a).

hostes—instare : "and that the enemy both in front did not cease coming up, and on both sides were pressing (our men) hard." With instare supply nostris militiaibus.

et rem—vidit : "as he also saw that the danger was great." With angusto, scil. loco. We still in American parlance speak of a man being in a "tight place." The length of the sentence and the number of the dependent clauses led Caesar to repeat vidit.

subsidiun : "reserves" : the X11th and X1Vth legions were too far off to be of any assistance.

scuto—detracto : "snatching a shield from a soldier in the rear." In uni militi we have a dative of reference after detracto. Many verbs compounded with, ab, de, ex, like adimo, detraho, take in the active an acc. of the thing and dat. of the person, the latter instead of an abl. of separation. With this meaning of uni : cp. the English a, an : A.S. án, Fr. un, all really same.

signa—laxare : "to advance and to open out their ranks." Distinguish signa inferre, referre, convertere, efferre : ad signa convenire, a signis discedere, collatis signis conflagere, signis infestis ire ant incidere. The original meaning of manipulus was a handful (manus, pleo) of grass at the top of a pole referred to by Ovid. Fasti. III., 115. The pole was changed into a spear and the wisp of grass was replaced by gilded, silver, or bronze animals, of which the eagle was retained as the emblem of the legion.
Afterwards the animals were replaced by a round ball of metal.—laxare: to give full play to the sword and to lessen the deadly effect of the enemies' missiles.

militibus: dative: F.L. 120, 1; P.L. I., 69.

pro se quisque: "each man to the best of his ability."

etiam—cuperet: "even in the most critical moment desired to do his best."—navare=gnavare: "to do actively": cp. gnarus.

CHAPTER XXVI.

iuxta, scil., duodecimam legionem: "next to the twelfth legion."

ut—inferrent: "that the (two) legions should gradually draw together, face about and charge the enemy." The seventh legion took up its position in rear of the twelfth, so that it faced in the opposite direction and thus the two would present a double front to the enemy. The expression conversa would thus refer to the seventh only, the two forming thus one continuous line. For conversa signa—inferrent=converterent signa et—inferrent. Note this use of the participle gives a compactness to the Latin sentence.


aversi: "in the rear."

legionum—duarum: Xllth and XIVth.

castris: the IXth and Xth legions under Labienus had driven the Atrebates across the river and gained possession of the enemy's camp.

gererentur—esset—versaretur: for subjunctives: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. II., 43.

qui: referring to milites implied in legiones.

versaretur: agreeing with the nearest nominative as the most important subject.

nihil—fecerunt: "they came up as fast as they could": literally, "they left nothing undone with respect to speed." For the partitive genitive reliqui: F.L. 69, 10; P.L. II., 113.

CHAPTER XXVII.

etiam qui—procubuisserent: "even such as had lain down badly wounded":
literally, "spent with wounds." For subjunctive: F.L. 188, 5 (a); P.L. II., 34.

scutis innixi: "supporting themselves on their shields." Note that nitor and its compounds govern the ablative: F.L. 116; P.L. II., 65.

equites vero—praeferrrent: the construction is tanta rerum commutatio est facta ut equites vero—praeferrrent: "such a change in the battle took place that indeed the cavalry, to wipe out by their valour their disgraceful flight, put themselves in front of the common soldiers in every part of the field." For mililitibus: F.L. 120, 1; P.L. II., 69.

at: often used to introduce a new subject, or a transition from one part of a description to another.

in—salutis: "even in the utter despair of safety."

his dejectis: "when these in turn were struck down."

qui superessent: scil. ei hostes qui superessent: for subjunctive of indefinite antecedent: F.L. 188, 5 (a); P.L. II., 34.

ut ex tumulo: "as from a hillock."

ut—locum: "so that it ought to be concluded, that men of so great valour had not without sufficient reason dared to cross a very broad river, ascend very high banks, (and) enter upon a very disadvantageous position." nequidquam, here = frustra. What is the usual distinction between frustra and nequidquam?

quae—redegerat: "all of which things, though in themselves most difficult, their great courage had rendered easy of accomplishment." — redegerat = reddiderat.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

prope—redacto: "when the nation and name of the Nervii had been almost exterminated." There seems to be some exaggeration in this statement, as the Nervii aided the Gauls in their uprising against the Romans B.C. 52: see Caesar, de Bell. Gall. 7, 75.

pueris: "children."

quam—arbitrarentur: "since they saw that nothing would stop the conquerors nor defend the vanquished." On causal cum: F.L. 203, 1; P.L. II., 167.

omnium: depending on consensu.
millibus—sexaginta: in Chapter IV. the Nervii had promised 50,000.

vix ad quingentos: hyperbaton for ad vix quingentos: for a similar inversion of order, see Caesar de Bell. Gall. B. I., Chapter VI., vix qua singuli. Probably the exaggeration of the losses was for the purpose of exciting pity in Caesar.

possent: F. L. 209, 1 (2); P. L. II., 214 (2).

finitimis imperavit: translate, milites civitati imperavit: milibus imperavit.

CHAPTER XXIX.

supra: Chapter XVI., B. II.

omnibus copiis: ablative of accompaniment: F. L. 12, 3; P. L. II., 124 (1).

auxilio Nerviis: for two datives: F. L. 134, 1; P. L. II., 75.

venirent = in itinere essent: “were on the march.”

oppidum: some say that this town, Aduatucum, was on the plateau at the junction of the Meuse and the Sambre, now Namur, not far from the field of Waterloo. Others say it was situated on the hill Falhize, on the north bank of the Meuse, opposite the town of Huy, some miles below Namur.

quod cum: “and though this (town)” : quod = et id, scil., oppidum.

despectus: “wide prospect”: owing to the height of the hill on which it was built.

in—pedum: join ducentorum pedum with aditus. For case of pedum: F. L. 130, 7; P. L. II., 115.

magni ponderis: F. L. 130, 7; P. L. II., 115.

ex—pugnati: according to some the name Aduatuci is purely Keltic, from aduat, “runners.”

citra flumen: on the west side of the Rhine.

custodiam—ac praesidio: we have also custodiam—ac praesidium; custodiae—ac praesidio. Some also omit una.

eorum: the Cimbri and Teutones who fell at Aquae Sextiae 102 B.C., and at Campi Raudii 101 B.C.

quum—defenderent: “when at one time they carried on an aggressive war (against their enemies), at another time warded it off when made upon
themselves.” With bellum inferre, scil. hostibus: with illatum scil. sibi.
Observe that inferre bellum, not invadere, is the technical term “to
invade.”

CHAPTER XXX.

primo adventu: “as soon as they arrived”: cp. prima luce: “as soon
as day dawned.”

parvulis prœeliis: “in skirmishes.”

pedum duodecim, scil. in altitudinem: for the genitive of description:
F.L. 130, 7; P. L. II., 115.—oppido, scil. in.

vineis—constituit: the vineae were brought forward to cover the men who
raised the platform (agger) on which the tower (turris) was to be placed and
brought up to the wall. The men in the tower then drove the besieged
from the wall: cp. Sallust. Bell. Jug. c. 76.—turrim: what nouns have (1)
the accusative singular in -im: (2) in -im or -em?

irridere—increpitare: historical infinitives.

quod—instrueretur: the quod introduces the reason of the Gauls, not of
Caesar: F. L. 198, 2; P. L. II., 165 (a).—ab properly governs muro under-
stood.—tanto spatio: ablative of degree of difference: F. L. 58, 6; P. L.
II., 124 (d).

tantulae staturae: “of such trifling stature”: F. L. 130, 7; P. L. II.,
115.

brevitas nostra = brevitas nostrorum militarum.

confiderent: what would the form be in direct discourse? F. L. 209, 1
(5); P. L. II., 214 (a) 1.

CHAPTER XXXI.

moveri, scil. turrin.

specie: “sight.”

non: join this with sine ope divina.

qui—possent = quippe qui—possent: “inasmuch as they—were able”: F.L. 198, 4; P. L. II., 196.

quam—audirent: “of which they had constantly heard from others.”
Audio, as ἀκοῖν in Greek, has often a perfect meaning in the present. For
the mood of despoliaret: F. L. 181. 3; P. L. II., 27, 208.

traditis armis = si arma tradita essent.
sibi—consuessent: "that it would be better for them, if they should be brought to such a condition, to endure any lot whatever at the hands of the Roman people than to be tortured to death by those over whom they had been accustomed to hold absolute sway." The subject of praestare is the part quamvis—consuessent.

CHAPTER XXXII.

consuetudine sua: "in accordance with his habit": of treating mercifully a defeated foe: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (b).

aries: generally the Romans spared the inhabitants, if the city surrendered before the battering ram was applied.

in Nerviis: "in the case of the Nervii."

ne quam: is quam here from quis or qui?

re—suos: "when the answer was reported to their people they said they were ready to do whatever was ordered (by Caesar)."—ad suos: explain ad. Why may not suis be read for ad suos? F.L. 6, 3; P.L. II., 93 (a).—facere, scil. eos, i.e., Aduatucos.

muri, i.e., of the town: agger, of the Romans.


CHAPTER XXXIII.

sub vespere: "at the approach of evening": cp. ἵπτω ἐκείνα. There is also a reading sub vespere, which has not quite the same meaning. In Caesar, de Bell. Gall. 5, 13, sub bruma means "in the depth of winter." Sometimes sub with acc. means also "a little after:" Livy 21, 18: sub hanc vocem—succulamatum est.

illi: afterwards distributed by partim—partim so as to form a divided subject of fecerunt.

ante inito consilio: "having previously formed a plot."


deditione facta: express this in other ways.—praesidia deducturos, scil., esse: "would either withdraw their outposts," from the line of circumvallation where the Roman sentries kept watch. Supply aut with deducturos (esse).—denique: "at least," here = saltem.
NOTES.

scutis—intentis: “having made shields of bark or of osiers intertwined.” The ex governs viminalibus as well as cortice. Others take viminalibus intertextis as abl. absolute.

tertia vigilia: with the Romans the civil day began at midnight and ended at midnight as with us; the natural day began at twilight and ended at dark. The day and the night were divided into twelve hours each, the length of each hour depending on the season. The night was also divided into four watches (vigiliae) of three hours each: from 6–9 P.M.: 9–12: 1–3: 3–6.

ascensus: because the Roman works were on a height above the level of the plain.

omnibus copiis: abl. of accompaniment: F.L. 12, 3; P.L. II., 124 (1).

repentino: adverb for the more usual form repente which some have.

ignibus: “by fire signals.”—proximis: nearest that part of the town from which the sally was made.

concursum est: cp. itur, ventum est: F.L. 164, 2; P.L. III., 72 (h).

ut—debit: “as brave men were bound to fight, when their case was nearly desperate, on disadvantageous terms against men hurling their missiles from a rampart and towers.”—in extrema—salutis: the prepositional ablative absolute: F.L. 188, 5 (a); P.L. II., 34.

sectio: “booty,” in this case the inhabitants as well as their goods. Properly speaking sectio was property sold on the public account whether it was property taken in war, or property forfeited to the populus, or property sold for the payment of a penalty. Sector was a purchaser of such property. Some say the word is derived (1) from sequi, “to follow,” on account of the merchants (mercatores) following the army for the purpose of speculating in such property, or, (2) from secare, “to retail,” because the purchaser (sector) retailed to the merchant what he bought in a lump.

millium quinquaginta trium: predicate genitive of characteristic: F.L. 130, 7; P.L. II., 115.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

Venetos: The names of the tribes here mentioned still survive in corrupted forms: Veneti, in the modern Vannes; Redones, in Rennes; Aulerci Eburgovices, in Evreux; Sesuvios, in Séez. So in Chapter XXXV., Carnutes, Andes, Turones, may be seen in the modern Chartres, Angers, and Tours.
CHAPTER XXXV.

*quae incoherent*: for subjunctive of attraction: F. L. 188, 5; P. L. II., 220.

*se*: referring to *nationibus*.

*qui—pollicerentur = ut et pollicerentur*: F. L. 198, 4; P. L. II., 196.

*legationes = legatos*: abstract for concrete.

*Italiam*: Caesar means Gallia Cisalpina, or Citerior, which, though within the natural boundaries of Italy, formed no part of Italy in a political sense at this time. Gallia Cisalpina was a *provincia*.

*ex—Caesaris*: "in accordance with the letters of Caesar."

*dies—supplicatio*: we have also mention of *supplicationes* in Caesar, de Bell. Gall., 4, 38; 7, 90. In these cases the genitive *dierum* is used. Of course *dies* is acc. of duration of time. A *supplicatio* was a religious thanksgiving and festival for a successful victory, proclaimed by a resolution of the senate and celebrated with or without a triumph.

*accidit nulli*: the longest celebration before this time was the *supplicatio*, lasting for ten days, in honour of Pompey's victory over Mithradates. Note emphatic position of *nulli*. See Chapter VI., B. II.
SHORT EXERCISES

BASED ON CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, B. II.

For Oral Translation into Latin.

I.

1. We have mentioned above that Caesar was in winter-quarters in Hither Gaul and that frequent reports were brought to him that the Gauls had formed a league against him. 2. The Gauls were afraid that Caesar would lead his army against them. 3. They were instigated by some tribes who did not wish the Roman army to remain in these places. 4. The people were constantly aiming at a revolution because they were annoyed (molestare) that the Romans had conquered them. 5. They hired men who were able very easily to carry out their plans.

II.

1. Caesar was greatly disturbed by the letters and news which he received from his lieutenant. 2. At the beginning of the summer he enlisted two legions and sent his soldiers into the territory of the Belgae to carry on war. 3. He directs his lieutenant to find out what the Gauls were doing. 4. The lieutenant informed him that the enemy had collected large bands and had brought together a large army within ten days into one spot. 5. He thought that he should provide corn and that he should move his camp into the territory of the Belgae.

III.

1. Sooner than any one expected, Caesar came into the territory of the Remi, who dwelt next the river Rhine. 2. The ambassadors of the Remi, the leading men of the state, were sent to say that they would give up all their (possessions) to the Romans. 3. "We have not," said one of the ambassadors, "formed a league with the rest of the Belgae, nor have we entered into a conspiracy at all." 4. We are ready to aid you with (supplies of) corn and arms. 5. The Germans who dwelt across the Rhine were unable to deter them from forming a league with the Gauls.
IV.

(a)

1. He asked what states were in arms against the republic.  2. Most of the Belgae are descended from the Germans, and in ancient times crossed the Rhine.  3. They drove out all the Gauls from that district and prevented the Cimbrii and Teutoni from entering their territory.  4. We found out how many men each tribe had promised for the war.  5. The Helvetii are the most powerful tribe of all Gaul on account of their valour, influence and number of population.

(b)

1. They promised to supply ten thousand picked men.  2. Among them lived a King, the most powerful of all Gaul, who held sway not merely over the greater part of that district, but also over Britain.  3. We entrusted to Galba the supreme command of the whole war.  4. On account of his valour, this man held sway (regnum obtinere) for many years among the Nervii.  5. All these tribes are called by the general ( unus ) name of Gauls.

V.

(a)

1. When Caesar had cheered the Remi by his speech, the whole senate came to him.  2. He orders the enemy to bring hostages to him.  3. He informed the Aedui how important it was for him that all things should be done punctually ( ad diem ).  4. "We must not fight," said he, "so many enemies at one time."  5. We began to lead our men into the territories of the Belgae.  6. Our men began to be led into the territories of the Belgae.

(b)

1. All the forces assembled on that day at one spot.  2. He hears from spies that the river Axona is about ten miles off.  3. He led his army across the river and pitched his camp on the farther bank.  4. The ditch and rampart rendered the rear of the camp safe.  5. He was able to convey corn to the camp without any danger.

VI.

1. The camp of Caesar was distant from the town about ten miles.  2. This town began to be besieged by the Belgae ( with all their forces.  3. When a large number of the enemy surrounded all the walls, they began to hurl stones from every side.  4. They formed a testudo, after they had
hurled stones and darts against the enemy. 5. Night put an end to the siege. 6. "Unless they send aid to me," said he, "I am not able to hold out long."

VII.

1. The archers and slingers were ordered to aid the citizens. 2. At the arrival of Caesar hope came to the Remi. 3. He delayed a few days in the neighbourhood of the town and devastated the territory of the enemy. 4. He burned all the villages which he could approach and pitched his camp (at a distance) less than three miles off. 5. It was plain by the camp-fires how great this camp was.

VIII.

1. He daily tested the valour of the enemy and the daring of our soldiers. 2. When it was noticed that our men were not inferior to the enemy, he drew up his line in front of the camp on a hill. 3. The hill in front gradually slopes to a plain. 4. The enemy were not able to surround our men because Caesar had planned a redoubt (castellum) on each flank. 5. The two legions which he had left in the camp he was able to hold as reserves.

IX.

1. The enemy crossed a small marsh while our men were waiting. 2. The general was ready to attack the enemy if they began to cross the river. 3. When both lines had been engaged in battle, the enemy were led back to their camp. 4. We have mentioned above that the river Axona to which the enemy set out, was in the rear of our army. 5. They led some of their forces across the river with the intention of destroying the bridge. 6. They devastated the lands of the Remi and kept our men from (obtaining) supplies.

X.

(a)

1. Titurius, who was of great service to Caesar, informed him that the archers had been led across the river. 2. In the plain a fierce battle is fought with the cavalry of the enemy. 3. Our men having slain a large number of the enemy attempted to cross the stream. 4. He said that he had been disappointed in crossing the river. 5. On that day corn began to fail the army.
EXERCISES.

1. He thought it was best for all the soldiers to return home. 2. After summoning a council, they led the soldiers into the territories of the Remi. 3. The Remi assembled on all sides to defend their homes. 4. They preferred (ma'o) to fight in their own territories rather than in those of another. 5. He could not persuade them to attack the Romans in battle or to bring aid to their allies.

XI.

(a) \textit{a} \textit{b} \textit{c} \textit{d}

1. They set out from home with great din at the fourth watch and hastened to reach the camp at daybreak. 2. Their departure seemed very like a rout. 3. This fact was learned by the spies, who, fearing an ambuscade, told Caesar why the enemy left. 4. Caesar sent forward all his cavalry to keep the enemy within the camp. 5. He appoints two lieutenants over the legions and orders them to follow closely with all the cavalry.

(b)

1. These lieutenants attacked the van and followed the enemy for three miles. 2. After many of the fugitives were slain, the rear of the enemy halted. 3. They boldly withstood the attack of our men since they saw they were out of danger. 4. Just before sunset they give up the pursuit and withdrew to the camp. 5. The general had given this order to his soldiers.

XII.

1. Before the enemy recovered from the panic the general set out for Rome. 2. The army was led by the commander into the territory of the Belgae who are next to the Germans. 3. He heard that he was not able to take this town by storm. 4. The camp began to be fortified with a ditch and rampart. 5. The Romans threw up a mound and built towers on the next night. 6. Ambassadors were sent to Caesar to treat for surrender and begged that the Romans spare them, their wives and children.

XIII.

1. Caesar received as hostages the leading men of the state and the two sons of King Galba. 2. After the Suessiones had been received in surrender, they gave up their arms. 3. All collected their property at the city of Rome, which was about five miles distant from that place. 4. All...
the aged began to leave the town since they were not able to fight in battle against the Roman people. 5. According to their custom, when the Romans came to that place, after pitching their camp, they fortified it with a rampart and ditch.

XIV.
1. "The Bellovaci," said he, "are in allegiance to our state." 2. We have been instigated by our chiefs to say that we have suffered all kinds of insults. 3. Those revolted from the Aedui and carried on war against our state. 4. They fled into Britain because they knew what loss the enemy had inflicted on their lands. 5. They begged the Romans that they would show their mercy to them.

XV.
1. "I," said Caesar, "shall receive you into allegiance and will protect you." 2. Our state excelled the rest of Gaul in the number of the population. 3. They gave up their arms and surrendered themselves to the Romans without delay. 4. Nothing is imported into the territory of the Aedui which is supposed to tend to luxury. 5. He declared that he had not sent ambassadors nor had he accepted any conditions of peace.

XVI.
1. Through our territories he made a march of three days. 2. "The river Sambre is not," said he, "more than four miles distant from our camp." 3. The Nervii took up their position across this river and awaited there the arrival of the soldiers. 4. When he had persuaded the allies to await the arrival of our men, he found out that the enemy had crossed the river. 5. He collected all the women into a place to which there was no access, since they were useless for war.

XVII.
1. He learned all these things from the scouts who were sent forward to pick out a place suitable for a camp. 2. He afterwards learned from the captives that our route was watched by the enemy. 3. "It is no trouble," said he, "to defeat the Romans hampered-with-baggage (sub sarcinis), since they will not dare to make a stand if we repulse them in battle." 4. Of old the Nervii were very powerful in infantry although they had no cavalry force. 5. No one was able to enter the brambles and briars which formed a protection to their territories. 6. Our journey was hindered by the hedges which the Nervii had made.
XVIII.

1. Our men chose as a place for the camp a hill which sloped to the river Sambre. 2. You could not easily see into it because it was covered with woods from the bottom to the top. 3. Amid these woods for many days the enemy conceal themselves. 4. Down the river were many outposts, which were seen by our men. 5. The river was about five feet deep.

XIX.

(a)

1. Caesar sent forward his cavalry to pursue the enemy. 2. The Belgae reported to the Nervii the place and arrangement of our line. 3. When the enemy approached our camp, Caesar, according to custom, led out the tenth legion against them. 4. The two legions which he had lately enrolled in Gaul were protecting the baggage. 5. He crossed the river with the slingers and bowmen to engage in battle with the enemies' cavalry.

(b)

1. After making an attack on our men they withdrew to the woods. 2. The legions which were the first to begin the battle pursued the retreating (enemy). 3. They agreed among themselves that this was the time for beginning the battle. 4. When they had drawn up their line and ranks among the woods they suddenly rushed forward from every side. 5. Almost at one and the same time the enemy rush down against our camp with incredible speed.

XX.

1. Caesar saw that he must do all things at one and the same time. 2. The soldiers had to rush to arms, had to form in line and advance against the enemy. 3. The onset of the enemy prevented a great many of those things from being done. 4. Amidst these difficulties the experience of the soldiers was of great service. 5. The soldiers were so trained by their former battles that they knew what they ought to do. 6. They did not wait for any order from the general, but carried out on their own responsibility what plans they thought fit.

XXI.

1. Caesar, after cheering the cavalry, hastened down with the soldiers of the seventh legion. 2. "Remember," said he, "your former valour; be not disturbed in spirit, but boldly withstand the attack of the enemy." 3. The
general made a speech shorter than he was accustomed (soleo) to do. 4. So eager for the fight were the Gauls that the Romans had not time to draw their swords before they rushed upon them. 5. The Roman soldiers take up their positions at their standards which they saw in the van.

XXII.

1. He drew up his army after he had learned these things from his lieutenants. 2. One legion opposed the enemy in one place, another in another. 3. We have mentioned before that the view was obstructed by the intervening trees. 4. They could not collect all their supplies, nor could they find out what (supplies) it was necessary to provide. 5. Amid such unevenness of ground the general could not carry out all the orders which he gave to the lieutenants.

XXIII.

1. The soldiers of the tenth legion take up their stand on the right wing and drive the enemy into the river. 2. After a great number of them had been slain they pursued the rest across the river. 3. When they had put to flight the enemy they did not hesitate to return to the camp. 4. For five hours a battle was fought (pugnatum est) on the very summit of the hill. 5. The Nervii had a king named Boduognatus, who attempted to reach that place.

XXIV.

1. All the light-armed soldiers were driven back at the first onset of our troops. 2. After they met the enemy (who were) opposing (them) they drove them headlong in flight to the banks of the river. 3. The enemy who had gone out of the camp for the purpose of foraging, saw that our men had crossed the river. 4. The Romans saw that the Treveri, terrified by the noise of those who were pursuing hard, fled in all directions. 5. "We," said they, "have defeated the Romans, and we have gained possession of your camp."

XXV.

(a)

1. Having set out to the right wing we saw that our men were hard pressed by the enemy. 2. "I see," said Caesar, "that our baggage is a great hindrance to the soldiers on the march." 3. The standard-bearer and all the centurions of the fifth cohort were slain in that battle. 4. The
man was so severely wounded that he was not able to carry his arms.
5. Some in the rear left the battle and thus (ita) avoided the darts.

(b)

1. The battle was in a critical condition because we had no reserves who could be sent to aid our soldiers. 2. Caesar, drawing a shield from one soldier, armed himself and advanced against the foe. 3. He orders the cohorts to extend their line so that they might use their spears the more easily. 4. By the approach of the general hope was inspired in the soldiers. 5. Each one of the Roman soldiers desired to exert himself since he was fighting in sight of the general.

XXVI.

1. Caesar saw that our men were hard pressed by the enemy. 2. He advises the tribune to advance against the enemy. 3. One brought aid to one, another to another, and they were not afraid that the enemy would surround them. 4. The soldiers who were in the rear were a great protection to the baggage. 5. Titus Labienus sent his soldiers to aid our troops. 6. They watched from the height what deeds the general did in war.

XXVII.

1. Many of our men were so severely wounded by the javelins of the enemy that they were unable to renew the battle. 2. A great change took place in the battle, because the camp followers terrified the enemy who rushed against our men. 3. The cavalry blotted out the disgrace because they placed themselves in front of the common soldiers. 4. The soldiers fought very bravely since the front rank displayed such valour. 5. The enemy threw their javelins from the mound and hurled back against our men the intercepted darts. 6. Their valour rendered it an easy matter to cross the stream.

XXVIII.

1. The nation of the Nervii by this battle were almost exterminated. 2. All the women, children and elders were collected in the estuaries and fens. 3. All who survived, with one consent, surrendered to Caesar. 4. “We,” said they, “have been reduced to a few who are able to bear arms.” 5. He restrained all the neighbours from wrong-doing and ordered his soldiers to protect the Nervii.
XXIX.

1. The Aduatuci with many thousand men came to aid the Nervii. 2. All their towns and redoubts were deserted when the approach of our army was known. 3. On every side, all round, this town had such high rocks that it could easily be defended. 4. The wall was defended by rocks of great weight and beams were placed on it. 5. All the baggage which they did not take with them, they placed across the river Rhine. 6. Six thousand men were left to guard the redoubts. 7. After these had picked out a place for an abode, peace was made with the unanimous (unus) consent of all.

XXX.

1. Frequent sallies were made from the town by our army. 2. Caesar moved forward the vineae, raised a mound and built a tower near the town. 3. When so great a tower was being built so far off, the Nervii began to jeer. 4. The Gauls compared to the Romans were of great size. 5. “Do you think,” said they, “to place so high a tower on our walls.”

XXXI.

1. When the tower was nearing the walls, ambassadors were sent to Caesar to treat for peace. 2. “We do not think,” said one of the ambassadors, “that the Romans have carried on this war without the aid of the gods.” 4. “You,” said he, “have moved forward engines of war of such height that we do not think that you could do this alone.” 4. We ask one thing, that you will save our citizens and not take our arms from us. 5. We are willing to suffer any punishment whatever at the hands of the Romans rather than be slain by our enemies.

XXXII.

“I,” said Caesar, “according to my custom, will save you if you will surrender yourselves before the battering-ram touches the wall.” 2. You must surrender your arms and do no harm to the allies of the Roman people. 3. “We,” says he, “will do whatever you order.” 4. So great was the heap of arms that it almost reached the top of the mound of the camp. 5. They opened their gates on that day, but concealed their arms in the town.

XXXIII.

1. Just before evening the gates were shut and the soldiers were ordered to leave the town. 2. The enemy previously entered into a plan because
they believed that our men would protect the camp somewhat carelessly.
3. At the second watch a sally was made suddenly against that part where
the fewest soldiers were stationed. 4. Where the camp fires were fewest
the enemy made an onset, and fought most valiantly against our men in a
very disadvantageous place. 5. On the next day the gates were burst open
and all the booty of that town was sold by Caesar.

XXXIV.—XXXV.

1. On that day they informed Caesar that the enemy had sent an em-
bassy. 2. All these States were reduced under the sway of the Romans
in that year. 3. All the nations who dwelt across the Rhine sent ambas-
sadors to Caesar to promise that they would give hostages. 4. In the
beginning of the next summer he carried on war with these states, and
afterwards set out by forced marches to Italy. 5. The Senate decreed a
thanksgiving of ten days, a thing which never happened to anyone before,
since the days of Marius.
BOOK III.
C. IULI CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO.
LIBER TERTIUS.

Contents of Book III.—Campaign of 56, B.C. Gaul has nominally submitted to a Roman protectorate, but some of the tribes are rebellious.—Galba in the Alps, chs. 1-6.—Naval war against the Veneti, chs. 7-16.—Crassus subdues Aquitania, chs. 17-27.—Caesar goes in pursuit of the Morini, chs. 28-29.


II.—Cum dies hibernorum coi.plures transissent, frumentumque eo comportari iussisset, subito per exploratores certior factus est ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concessaret, omnes noctu discessisse, montesque, qui impenderent, a maxima multitudine Sedunorum et Veragrorum teneri. Id aliquot de causis acciderat, ut subito Galli belli renovandi legionisque opprimendae consilium cape-
rent: primum, quod legionem, neque eam plenissimam, detractis cohortibus duabus, et compluribus singillatim, qui commeatus petendi causa missi erant, absentibus, propter paucitatem despiciebant: tum etiam, quod, propter iniquitatem loci, cum ipsi ex montibus in vallem decurrerent, et tela conicerent, ne primum quidem posse imperium sustinere existimabant. Accedebat, quod suos ab se liberos abstractos obsidum nomine dolebant: et Romanos non solum itinerum causa, sed etiam perpetuae possessio, culmina Alpium occupare conari, et ea loca finitimae provinciae adiungere, sibi persuasum habebant.

III.—His nuntiis acceptis, Galba, cum neque opus hibernorum munitionesque plene essent perfectae, neque de frumento reliquoque commeatu satis esset provisum, quod, deditioe facta, obsidibusque acceptis, nihil de bello timendum existimaverat, consilio celeriter convocato, sententias exquirere coepit. Quo in consilio, cum tantum repentini periculi praeter opinionem accidisset, ac iam omnia fere superiora loca multitudine armatorum completa conspicerentur, neque subsidio veniri, neque commeatus supportari interclusis itineribus possent, prope iam desperata salute, nonnullae huiusmodi sententiae dicebantur, ut, impedimentis relictis, eruptione facta, iisdem itineribus, quibus eo pervenissent, ad salutem contendere. Maiori tamen parti placuit, hoc reservato ad extremum consilio, interim rei eventum experiri, et castra defendere.

IV.—Brevi spatio interiecto, vix ut his rebus, quas constituisse, collocandis atque administrandis tempus daretur, hostes ex omnibus partibus, signo dato, decurrere, lapides gaesaque in vallum conicere: nostri primo integris viribus fortiter repugnare, neque ullum frustra telum ex loco superiore mittere: ut quaeque pars castrorum nudata defensoribus premi videbatur, eo occurrere, et auxilium ferre: sed hoc superari, quod diuturnitate pugnae hostes defessi proelio excedebant, alií integris viribus succedebant: quarum rerum a nostris propter paucitatem fieri

who are in serious danger,

and almost overwhelmed.
nihil poterat; ac non modo defesso ex pugna excessendi, sed ne saucio quidem eius loci, ubi constiterat, relinquendi, ac sui recipiendi, facultas dabatur.

V.—Cum iam amplius horis sex continenter pugnaretur, ac non solum vires, sed etiam tela, nostris deficerent, atque hostes acerius instarent, languidioribusque nostris vallum scindere, et fossas complere coepissent, resque esset iam ad extremum perducta casum, Publius Sextius Baculus, primi pili centurio, quem Nervico proelio compluribus confectum vulneribus diximus, et item Caius Volusenus, tribunus militum, vir et consilii magni et virtutis, ad Galbam accurrunt, atque unam esse spem salutis docent, si eruptione facta extremum auxilium experirentur. Itaque, convocatis centurionibus, celeriter milites certiores facit, paulisper interimitterent proelium, ac tantummodo tela missa exciperent, sed ex labore reficerent; post, dato signo, ex castris erumperent, atque omnem spem salutis in virtute ponerent.

VI.—Quod iussi sunt, faciunt; ac, subito omnibus portis eruptione facta, neque cognoscendi, quid fieret, neque sui colligendi, hostibus facultatem relinquunt. Ita, commutata fortuna, eos, qui in spem potiundorum castrorum venerant, undique circumventos interficiunt; et, ex hominum millibus amplius triginta, quem numerum barbarorum ad castra venisse constabat, plus tertia parte interfecta, reliquos perterritos in fugam coniciunt, ac ne in locis quidem superioribus consistere patientur. Sic, omnibus hostium copiis fusis, armisque exutis, se in castra munitonesque suas recipiunt. Quo proelio facto, quod saepius fortunam tentare Galba nollet, atque alio sese in hiberna consilio venisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rebus viderat, maxime frumenti commeatusque inopia permutus, postero die omnibus eius vici aedificiis incensis, in Provinciam reverti contendit; ac, nullo hoste prohibente aut iter demorante, incolorem legionem in Nantuates, inde in Allobrogas perduxit, ibique hiemavit.
totidem, Aduatucos decem et novem millia; Condrusos, Eburones, Caeraesos, Paemonos, qui uno nomine Germani appellantur, arbitrari ad quadraginta millia.

VI.—Caesar Remos cohortatus liberaliterque oratione prosequutus omnem senatum ad se convenire principumque liberos obsides ad se adduci iussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Divitiacum Aeduum magno opere cohortatus docet quanto opere rei publicae communisque salutis intersit manus hostium distineri, ne cum tanta multitudine uno tempore confligendum sit. Id fieri posse si suas copias Aedui in fines Bellovacorum introduserint et eorum agros populari coeperint. His mandatis eum ab se dimittit. Postquam omnes Belgarum copias in unum locum coactas ad se venire vidit, neque iam longe abesse ab his quos miserat exploratoribus et ab Remis cognovit, flumen Axonam, quod est in extremis Remorum finibus, exercitum transducere maturavit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae res et latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniebat et, post eum quae essent, tuta ab hostibus recludebat, et commeatus ab Remis reliquisque civitatibus uf sine periculo ad eum portari possent efficiebat. In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi praesidium ponit et in altera parte fluminis Quintum Titurium Sabinum legatum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vallo fossaque duodeviginti pedum munire iubet.

Caesar marches to the Axona: the Belgae attack Bibra.

How the Belgae storm a town.
consistendi potestas erat nulli. Cum finem oppugnandi nox tecisset, Iccius Remus, summa nobilitate et gratia inter suos, qui tum oppido praerat, unus ex his qui legati de pace ad Caesarem venerant, nuntium ad eum mittit: Nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sese diutius sustinere non posse.

VII.—Eo de media nocte Caesar, iisdem ducibus usus qui nuntii ab Iccio venerant, Numidas et Cretas sagittarios et funditores Baleares subsidio oppidanis mittit; quorum adventu et Remis cum spe defensionis studium propagandi accessit, et hostibus eadem de causa spes potiundi oppidi discisset. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morati agrosque Remorum depopulati, omnibus vicis aedificiisque quos adire potuerant incensis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus copiis contenderunt et ab millibus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt; quae castra, ut fumo atque ignibus significabatur, amplius millibus passuum octo in latitudinem patebant.

VIII.—Caesar primo et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opinionem virtutis proelio supersedere statuit; quotidie tamen equestribus proelis quid hostis virtute posset et quid nostri auderent sollicitationibus periclitabatur. Ubi nostros non esse inferiores intellexit, loco pro castris ad aciem instruendam natura opportunu atque idoneo, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex planitiie editus tantum adversus in latitudinem patebat quantum loci acies instructa occupare poterat, atque ex utraque parte lateris deiecutus habebat et in fronte leniter fastigatus paulatim ad planitie redibat, ab utroque latere eius collis transversam fossam obduxit circiter passuum quadringentorum, et ad extremas fossas castella constituit ibique tormenta collocavit, ne, cum aciem instruxisset, hostes, quod tantum multitudine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantes suos circumvenire possent. Hoc facto duabus legionibus quas proxime conscripserat in castris relictis ut, si quo opus esset, subsidio duci possent, reliquas
sex legiones pro castris in acie constituit. Hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas instruxerant.

CAMP NEAR THE AXONA ATTACKED.

IX.—Palus erat non magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent hostes exspectabant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos adgrederentur parati in armis erant. Interim proelio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, secundiore equitum proelio nostris, Caesar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contenderunt, quod esse post nostra castra demonstratum est. Ibi vadis repertis partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt, eo consilio ut, si possent, castellum cui praerat Quintus Titurius legatus expugnarent pontemque interscinderent; si minus possent, agros Remorum popularentur, qui magno nobis usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeatuque nostros prohiberent.

X.—Caesar certior factus ab Titurio omnem equitatum et levis armaturae Numidas, funditores sagittariosque pontem transducit atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. Hostes impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi magnum eorum numerum occiderunt. Per eorum corpora reliquos audacissime transire conantes multitudine telorum repulerunt; primos qui transierant equitatu circumventos interfecerunt. Hostes, ubi et de expugnando oppido et de flumine transeundo spem se fefellisse intellexerunt neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progredi pugnandi causa viderunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria deficere coepit, concilio convocato constituerunt optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti, ut quorum in fines primum Romani exercitum introduxissent, ad eos defendendos undique convenirent, et potius in suis quam in alienis finibus decertarent et domesticis copiis rei frumentariae uterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod Divitiacum
DE BELLO GALlico, LIB. II.

atque Aednos finibus Bellovacorum adpropinquare cognoverant. His persuaderi ut diutius morarentur neque suis auxilium ferrent non poterat.

XI.—Ea re constituèta, secunda vigilia magno cum strepitu ac tumultu castris egressi nullo certo ordine neque imperio, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt ut consimilis fugae proiectio videretur. Hac re statim Caesar per speculatores cognita insidias veritus, quod qua de causa discederent nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuèt. Prima luce confirmata re ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum qui novissimum agmen moraretur praemisit. His Quintum Pedium et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praefecit. Titum Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsecuì uissit. Hi novissimos adorti et multa millia passuum prosequuntur magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt, cum ab extremo agmine ad quos ventum erat consistere fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinerent prioresque, quod abesse a periculo viderentur, neque ulla necessitate neque imperio continerentur, exaudito clamore perturbatis ordines omnes in fuga sibi praesidium ponerent. Ita sineullo periculo tantam eorum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt quantum fuit diei spatium, sub occasumque solis dextiterunt, seque in castra, ut erat imperatum, receperunt.

NOVIODUNUM AND BRATUSPANTIUM.

XII.—Postridie eius diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex terrore ac fuga recipérent, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit et magno itinere confecto ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnare conatus, quod vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiebat, propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem paucis defendentibus expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis vineas agere quaèque ad oppugnandum usui erant comparare coepit. Interim omnis ex fuga Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proxima nocte convenit. Celeriter

A forced attack on Noviodunum, which surrenders.
vineis ad oppidum actis, aggere iacto turribusque constitu-
tis, magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli
neque audierant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti legatos
ad Caesarem de deditione mittunt, et petentibus Remis, ut
conservarentur impetrant.

XIII.—Caesar obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis atque
ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex
oppido traditis, in deditionem Suessiones acceptit exerci-
tumque in Bellovacos ducit. Qui cum se suaque omnia
in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo
oppido Caesar cum exercitu circiter millia passuum quin-
que abesset, omnes maiores natu ex oppido egressi manus
ad Caesarem tendere et voce significare coeperunt sese in
eius fidem ac potestatem venire neque contra Populum
Romanum armis contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum ac-
cessisset castraque ibi poneret, pueri mulieresque ex muro
passis manibus suo more pacem ab Romanis petierunt.

XIV.—Pro his Divitiacus, nam post discessum Belgarum
dimissis Aedorum copiis ad eum reverat, facit verba :
Bellovacos omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis
Aeduæ fuisset: impulsos a suis principibus qui dicerent
Aeduos a Caesare in servitutem redactos omnes indigni-
tates contumeliaque perferre, et ab Aeduis defecisse et
Populo Romano bellum intulisse. Qui huius consilii
principes fuissent, quod intelligerent quantam calamitatem
civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere non
solum Bellovacos sed etiam pro his Aeduos ut sua clemen-
tia ac mansuetudine in eos utatur. Quod si fecerit,
Aeduorum auctoritate apud omnes Belgas amplificatu-
rum; quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella incide-
runt, sustentare consuerint.

THE NERVII.

XV.—Caesar honoris Divitiaci atque Aeduarum causa
sese eos in fidem recepturum et conservaturum dixit:
quod erat civitas magna inter Belgas auctoritate atque
hominum multitudine praestabat, sexcentos obsides popos-
cit. His traditis omnibusque armis ex oppido collatis, ab eo loco in fines Ambianorum pervenit, qui se suaque omnia sine mora dediderunt. Eorum fines Nervii attingebant: quorum de natura moribusque Caesar quum quæreret, sic reperiebat: Nullum aditum esse ad eos mercatoribus: nihil pati vini reliquaruinque rerum ad luxuriam pertinuuent inferri, quod his rebus relanguescere animos et remitti virtutem existimarent: esse homines feros magnaeque virtutis; increpitare atque incusare reliquos Belgas qui se Populo Romano dedissent patriamque virtuatem proiecissent: confirmare sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam conditionem pacis accepturos.

XVI.—Cum per eorum fines triduum iter fecisset, inventiebat ex captivis Sabim flumen ab castris suis non amplius millia passuum decem abesse: trans id flumen omnes Nervios consedisse adventumque ibi Romanorum exspectare una cum Atrebatibus et Veromanduis finitimis suis, nam his utrisque persuaserant uti eandem belli futurum exsperirentur: exspectari etiam ab his Aduatucorum copias atque esse in itinere: mulieres quique per actatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur in eum locum coniecisse, quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

XVII.—His rebus cognitis exploratores centurionesque praemittit qui locum idoneum castris deligant. Cumque ex dediticiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures Caesar em sequuti una iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est, eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus perspecta, nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt atque ii demonstrarunt inter singulas legiones impedimentorum magnum numerum intercedere, neque esse quicquam negotii, cum prima legio in castra venisset, reliquaque legiones magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinis adoriri: qua pulsa impedimentisque direptis futurum ut reliquae contra consistere non auderent. Adiuabar etiam eorum consilium qui rem deferebant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitatu nihil possent—neque enim ad hoc tempus ei rei student, sed quicquid possunt,
pedestribus valent copiis,—quo facilius finitimorum equitatum, si praedandi causa ad eos venisset, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis crebris in latitudinem ramis et rubis sentibusque interiectis, effecerant ut instar muri hae seples munimenta praebenter, quo non modo intrari, sed ne perspici quidem posset. His rebus cum iter agminis nostri impediretur, non ommittendum sibi consilium Nervii existimaverunt.

**Battle with the Nervii.**

XVIII.—Locis natura erat haec, quem locum nostri castris delegerant. Collis ab summo aequaliter declivis ad flumen Sabim, quod supra nominavimus, vergebat. Ab eo flumine pari acclivitate collis nascebatur adversus huic et contrarius passus circiter ducentos, infimus apertus, ab superiore parte silvestris ut non facile introrsus perspici posset. Inter eas silvas hostes in occulto sese continebant: in aperto loco secundum flumen paucae stationes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitude pedum circiter trium.

XIX.—Caesar equitatu praemisso subsequebatur omnibus copiis: sed ratio ordoque agminis aliter se habebat ac Belgae ad Nervios detulerant. Nam, quod ad hostes appropinquabat, consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiones expeditas ducet: post eas totius exercitus impedimenta collocarat: inde duae legiones quae proxime conscriptae erant totum agmen claudebat praesidioque impedimentis erant. Equites nostri cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi cum hostium equitatu proelium commiserunt. Cum se illi identidem in silvas ad suos recipuerent ac rursus ex silva in nostros impetum facerent, neque nostri longius quam quem ad finem porrecta ac loca aperta pertinebant cedentes inequi auderent, interim legiones sex, quae primae venerant, opere dimenso castra munire coeperunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitus ab his qui in silvis abditi latebant visa sunt, quod tempus inter eos committendi proelii convenerat, ita, ut
DE BELLO GALLICO, LIB. II.

Intra silvas aciem ordinesque constituerant atque ipsi sese confirmaverant, subito omnibus copiis provolaverunt impetumque in nostros equites fecerunt. His facile pulsis ac proturbatis incredibili celeritate ad flumen decucurrerunt, ut paene uno tempore et ad silvas et in flumine et iam in manibus nostri hostes viderentur. Eadem autem celeritate adverso colle ad nostra castra atque eos qui in opere occupati erant contenderunt.

XX.—Caesar omnia uno tempore erant agenda: vexillum proponendum, quod erat insigne cum ad arma concurri oporteret, signum tuba dandum, ab opere revocandi milites, qui paulo longius aggeris petendi causa processerant acessendi, acies instruenda, milites cohorsandi, signum dandum. Quarum rerum magnam partem temporis brevitas et successus et incursus hostium impediebat. His difficultatibus duae res erant subsidio, scientia atque usus militum, quod superioribus proeliiis exercitati, quid fieri oporteret non minus commode ipsi sibi praescribere quam ab aliis doceri poterant, et quod ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar discerede, nisi munitis castris vetuerat. Hi propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectabant, sed per se quae videbantur administrabant.

XXI.—Caesar necessariis rebus imperatis ad cohortandos milites quam in partem fors obtulit decucurrit et ad legionem decimam devenit. Milites non longiore oratione cohortatus quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent nee perturbarentur animo hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent, quod non longius hostes aberant quam quo telum adici posset, proelii committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causa prefectus pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus, ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeas induentes scutisque tegumenta detrahenda tempus defuerit. Quam quisque in partem ab opere casu devenit
quaerendis suis pugnandi tempus dimitteret.

XXII.—Instructo exercitu magis ut loci natura deiectus-que collis et necessitas temporis quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulabat, cum diversis locis legiones aliae alia in parte hostibus resisterent, sepibusque densissimis, ut ante demonstravimus, interiectis prospectus impediretur, neque certa subsidia lococari, neque quid in quaque parte opus esset provideri, neque ab uno omnia imperia administrari poterant. Itaque in tanta rerum iniuitate fortunae quoque eventus varii sequabantur.

XXIII.—Legionis nonae et decimae milites, ut in sinistra parte acie constiterant, pilis emissis cursu ac lassitudine exanimatos vulneribusque copfectos Atrebates nam his ea pars obvenerat,—celeriter ex loco superiore in flumen compulerunt et transire conantes insequuti gladiis magnam partem eorum impeditam interfecerunt. Ipsi transire flumen non dubitauerunt, et in locum iniquum progressi rursus regressos ac resistentes hostes redintegrato proelio in fugam dederunt. Item alia in parte diversae duae legiones, undecima et octava, profligatis Veromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco superiore in ipsis fluminis ripis proeliabantur. At tum totis fere ab ea parte nudatis castris, cum in dextro cornu legio duodecima et non magno ab ea intervallo septima constitisset, omnes Nervii confertissimo agmine duce Boduognato qui summam imperii tenebat, ad eum locum contenderunt: quorum pars aperto latere legiones circumvenire, pars summum castrorum locum petere coepit.

XXIV.—Eodem tempore equites nostri levisque armaturae pedites, qui cum iis una fuerant, quos primo hostium impetu pulsos dixeram, cum se in castra reciperent, adversus hostibus occurrebant ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petebant: et calones, qui ab decumana porta ac summo jugo collis nostros victores flumen transisse conspexerant, praedandi causa egressi, cum respexissent
et hostes in nostris castris versari vidissent, praecipites fugae sese mandabant. Simul eorum qui cum impedimentis veniebant clamor fremitusque oriebatur, aliique aliam in partem perterriti ferebantur. Quibus omnibus rebus permoti equites Treveri, quorum inter Gallos virtutis opinio est singularis, qui auxillii causa ab civitate missi ad Caesarem venerant, cum multitudine hostium castra nostra complebi, legiones premi et paene circumventas teneri, calones, equites, funditores, Numidas, diversos dissipatosque, in omnes partes fugere vidissent, desperatis nostris rebus, domum contenderunt: Romanos pulsos superatosque, castris impedimentisque eorum hostes potitos civitati renuntiaverunt.

XXV.—Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum collatis duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vitit, quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis signeroque interfecto, signo amisso, reliquarum cohortium omnibus fere centurionibus aut vulneratis aut occisis, in his primipilo Publio Sextio Baculo, fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto ut iam se sustinere non posset; reliquis esse tardiores, et nonnullos ab novissimis deserto proelio excedere ac tela vitare, hostes neque a fronte ex inferiori loco subeuientes intermittere et ab utroque latere instare, et rem esse in angusto vidit, neque ullum esse subsidium quod submitti posset, scuto ab novissimis uni militi detracto, quod ipse eo sine scuto venerat, in primam aciem processit centurionibusque nominatim appellatis reliquis cohortatus milites signa inferre et manipulos laxare iussit, quo facilius gladiis uti possent. Cuius adventu spe illata militibus ac redintegrato animo, cum pro se quisque in conspectu imperatoris et iam in extremis suis rebus operam navare cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardatus est.

XXVI.—Caesar cum septimam legionem, quae iuxta constiterat item urgeri ab hoste vidisset, tribunos militum
C. IULI CAESARIS

monuit ut paulatim sese legiones coniungérerent et conversa signa in hostes inferrent. Quo facto, cum alius alii subsidium ferret, neque timerent ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audacius resistere ac fortius pugnáre coeperunt. Interim milites légionum duarum, quae in novissimo agmine praesidio impedimentis fuerant, proelio nuntiato, cursu incitato, in summo colle ab hostibus conspiciebantur. Et Títus Labienus castris hostium potitus et ex loco superiore quae res in nostris castris gerentur conspicatus decimam légionem subsidio nostris misit. Qui cum ex equitum et calonum fuga, quo in loco res esset, quantoque in periculo et castra et légiones et imperator versaretur, cognovissent, nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt.

XXVII.—Hórum adventu tanta rerum commutatio facta est ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti procul buissent, scutis innixi proelium redintegrarent, tum calones perterritos hostes conspictati etiam inermes arma-tis occurrerent, equites vero, ut turpitudinem fugae virtute delerent, omnibus in locis pugnae se legioniaris militibus praeferrent. At hostes etiam in extrema spe salutis tanto virtutem praestiterunt ut, cum primi eorum cecidissent, proximi iacentibus insisterent atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent: his deiectis et coacervátis cadaveribus, qui superessent, ut ex tumulo tela in nostros concicerent et pila intercepta remitterent: ut non nequiquam tantae virtutis homines iudicari deberet aúsos esse transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimis animi magnitudo redegerat.

XXVIII.—Hoc proelio facto et prope internecionem gente ac nomine Nerviorum redacto maiore natu, quos una cum puéris mulieribusque in aestuaria ac paludes collectos dixeramus, hac pugna nuntiata, cum victoribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tutum arbitrarentur, omnium qui supererant consensu legatos ad Caesarem miserunt sequè ei dediderunt, et in commemoranda civitatis cala-
mitate ex sexcentis ad tres senatores, ex hominum millibus sexaginta vix ad quingentos qui arma ferre posse possent sese redactos esse dixerunt. Quos Caesar, ut in miseris ac supplices usus misericordia videretur, diligentissime conservavit suisque finibus et oppidis uti iussit, et finitimis imperavit ut ab iniuria et maleficio se suosque prohiberent.

THE ADUATUCI.

XXIX.—Aduatuci, de quibus supra scripsumus, cum omnibus copiis auxilio Nerviis venirent, hac pugna numtiata ex itinere domum reverterunt; cunctis oppidis castellisque desertis sua omnia in unum oppidum egregie natura munitum contulerunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitu partibus altissimas rupes despectusque haberet, una ex parte leniter acclivis aditus in latitudinem non amplius ducentorum pedum relinquebatur: quem locum duplici altissimo muro munieran, tum magni ponderis saxa et praeacutas trabes in muro collocarant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prognati, qui, cum iter in provinciam nostram atque Italianam facerent, iis impedimentis, quae secum agere ac portare non poterant, citra flumen Rhenum depositis custodiam ex suis ac praevidio sex millia hominum reliquerunt. Hi post eorum obitum multos annos a finitimis exagitati, cum alias bellum inferrent, alias illatum defenderent, consensu eorum omnium pace facta hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt.

XXX.—Ac primo adventu exercitus nostri crebras ex oppido excursions faciebant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contendebant; postea vallo pedum duodecim in circuitu quindecim millium crebrisque castellis circumvenerant sese continebant. Ubi vincis actis aggere exstructo turrim procul constitut indemunt, primum irritdere ex muro atque increpitare vocibus, quod tanta machinatio ab tanto spatio institueretur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus praesertim homines tantulae staturae, nam plerumque hominibus Gallis praefatus.
dine corporum suorum brevitas nostra contemptui est, tanti oneris turrim in muro sese collocare confiderent?

XXXI.—Ubi vero moveri et appropinquare moenibus viderunt, nova atque inusitata specie commoti legatos ad Caesarem de pace miserunt, qui ad hunc modum loquuti: Non se existimare Romanos sine ope divina bellum gerere, qui tantae altitudinis machinationes tanta celeritate promovere et ex propinquitate pugnare possent, se suaque omnia eorum potestati permittere dixerunt. Unum petere ac deprecari: si forte pro sua clementia ac mansuetudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, statuisset Aduatucos esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret: sibi omnes fere finitimos esse inimicos ac suae virtuti invidere, a quibus se defendere traditis armis non possent. Sibi praestare, si in eum casum deducerentur, quamvis fortunam a Populo Romano pati quam ab his per cruciatum interfici inter quos dominari consuessent.

XXXII.—Ad haec Caesar respondit: Se magis consutudine sua quam merito eorum civitatem conservaturum, si prius quam murum aries attigisset se dedidissent: sed dedititionis nullam esse conditionem nisi armis traditis: se id quod in Nerviis fecisset facturum finitimisque imperaturum, ne quam dediticiis Populi Romani iniuriam inferrent. Re nuntiata ad suos, quae imperarentur facere dixerunt. Armorum magna multitudine de muro in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iacta sic ut prope summam muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armorum adaequarent, et tamen circiter parte tertia, ut postea perspectum est, celata atque in oppido retenta, portis patefactis eo die pace sunt usi.

XXXIII.—Sub vesperum Caesar portas claudi militesque ex oppido exire iussit ne quam noctu oppidani ab militibus iniuriam acciperent. Illi ante inito, ut intellecutum est, consilio, quod deditione facta nostros praesidia deducturos aut denique diligentius servatuos crediderant, partim cum his quae retinuerant et celaverant armis, partim scutis ex cortice factis aut viminibus intestis, quae
DE BELLO GALlico, LIB. II.

subito, ut temporis exiguitas postulabat, pellibus induxerant, tertia vigilia, qua minime arduus ad nostras munitiones ascensus videbatur, omnibus copiis repente in oppido eruptionem fecerunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperarat, ignibus significacione facta, ex proximis castellis eo concursum est, pugnatumque ab hostibus ita acriter ut a viris fortibus in extrema spe salutis iniquo loco contra eos qui ex vallo turribusque tela iacerent pugnari debuit, cum in una virtute omnis spes salutis consistet. Occisis ad hominum millibus quatuor reliqui in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postridie eius diei refractis portis, cum iam defenderet nemo, atque intromissis militibus nostris sectionem eis oppidi universam Caesar vendidit. Ab his qui emergent caput numerus ad eum relatus est millium quinquaginta trium.

XXXIV.—Eodem tempore a Publio Crasso, quem cum legione una miserat ad Venetos, Unellos, Osismios, Curiosolitas, Sesuvios, Aulercos, Rhedones, quae sunt maritimae civitates Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnes eas civitates in ditionem potestatemque Populi Romani esse redactas.

XXXV.—His rebus gestis omni Gallia pacata, tanta huius belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est uti ab his nationibus quae trans Rhenum incolentur mitterentur legati ad Caesarem, qui se obsides daturas, imperata facturas pollicerentur; quas legationes Caesar, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properabat, inita proxima aestate ad se reverti iussit. Ipse in Carnutes, Andes, Turonesque, quae civitates propinquae his locis erant ubi bellum gesserat, legionibus in hiberna deductis, in Italiam prefectus est: ob easque res ex literis Caesaris dies quindecim supplicatio decreta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.
NOTES.

BOOK II.

Note.—F.L. = First Latin Book; P.L. = Primary Latin Book. In the case of the former the numbers refer to the pages and sections; of the latter, the Roman numerals refer to the part of the book, and the Arabic to the sub-section.

CHAPTER I.

esse: for subjunctive: F.L. 203, 3; P.L. ii., 169. The date is 57 B.C., in the consulship of P. Cornelius Lentulus and Q. Metellus Nepos.

in hibernis: hiberna generally means the winter quarters of an army engaged in a war. Here in hibernis may mean, "at the place where he was spending the winter."

ita uti: "just as."

quam: agrees with the word in the predicate rather than with its regular antecedent: translate, however: "who, as we have said, form the third part of Gaul."

coniurare: "had formed a league." There is no necessity to take this word here in the sense of "to form a conspiracy": cp. Greek συνομοσία, "a league."

utur se dare: "were exchanging." Explain the tense of the inf.

quod vererentur: the subjunctive shows that the reasons were given on the authority of the Belgae: F.L. 198, 2; P.L. ii., 165 (b).

Gallia = Gallia Celtica: the central part of Gaul is meant.

partim qui: "some of whom": partim—partim refer to nonnullis Gallis, who are classed in two divisions. The word partim, though accusative in form, is used by Caesar and Cicero as a word of distribution without any respect to its case.

ut—ita: "as—so."
inveterascere: "should become settled": literally, "should grow old."
molestè ferebant = χαλκηδωρεφον: "they were annoyed."

partim—studebant: "(while) others of these, in consequence of their instability and fickleness of disposition, were aiming at a revolution." — imperiiis: F.L. 105, 9; P.L. n., 55.

ab nonnullis etiam, scil. quod sollicitarentur: "thirdly because they were being instigated by a few, since in Gaul power was commonly being seized by the more powerful and by those who had means to hire men (and) who were able less easily to carry out this object under our sway." Note the different clauses in opposition to causas are introduced by primum, deinde, etiam.

imperio nostro: "under our sway": abl. of time and cause.

CHAPTER II.

nuntiiis literisque: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. n., 124 (a).

duas legiones: the XIII. and XIV. Caesar now had eight legions, numbering from VII. to XIV. inclusive. The regular soldiers with the auxiliaries in Gaul would now number about 60,000 men.

initia aestate: abl. absolute: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. n., 48. Join this to qui deduceret.

interiorem Galliam: "into central Gaul.

qui deduceret, scil. eas: "to lead them." For qui=ut is: F.L. 184, 1; P.L. n., 25.

cum—inciperet: the subjunctive is used because the abundance of fodder was the occasion of his coming: F.L. 198, 3; P.L. n., 167.

exercitum: probably now at Vesontio (Besançon).


gerantur: for the subjunctive: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. n., 43.

se certiorem: why not eum certiorem? F.L. 105, 7; P.L. iii., 91.

constanter: "uniformly," "unanimously."
tum—proficisceretur: "then, indeed, he thought that he ought not to delay about setting out against them": the negative quin introduces the dependent clause because of the negative character of the main statement. This idiom is still preserved in French: je ne doutais pas que vous n'eussies raison: F.L. 188, 6; P.L. ii., 156. Note that non dubitare with infinitive denotes an act done without hesitation: cp. Caesar de Bell. Gall. 23: transire flumen non dubitaverunt, while non dubitare quin with subjunctive, denotes a resolution made without hesitation.

CHAPTER III.

eo = ad fines Belgarum.

de improviso: cf. the English colloquial phrase, "of a sudden"; "unexpectedly."

celerius omni opinione: "more quickly than any one had expected": literally, "than every expectation": F.L. 55, 5; P.L. ii., 123 (c).

Remi: for the boundaries of these people, see Proper Names.

proximi Galiae: for the dative: F.L. 60, 2; P.L. ii., 102. What other constructions may proximi have?

ex Belgis = inter Belgas.

qui—dicerent: qui = ut ei, hence the subjunctive: F.L. 184, 1; P.L. ii., 25. In what other ways may this be expressed?


neque = et non.

omnino: note that omnino after negatives = "at all."

oppiis: the local ablative.

iure, scil., eum, i.e., Caesarem.

cis Rhenum: Caesar is writing from the standpoint of the Roman Provincia: cp. Gallia Citerior, Gallia Cisalpina.

his = Belgis.—eorum omnium = Belgarum et Germanorum.

ne—quidem: the emphatic word comes between ne and quidem. Note that Suessiones is the object of dextrae.

iure—inibus: for ablative: F.L. 116; P.L. ii., 65. ius is often used in the sense of political rights as here: cp. ius civitatis, ius Romanum: lex is properly an enactment made in the Roman comitia.

potierint: governed by ut. Note ut, expressing a consequence never takes pluperfect subjunctive: “that they had been unable.”

quin—consentirent: “from uniting”: would quominus be permissible here? F.L. 185, 2 and note; P.L. II., 156.

CHAPTER IV.

quum: F.L. 203, 3; P.L. II., 169.

his: scil., legatis, mentioned in the beginning of the preceding chapter.

essent—possent: for subjunctive of indirect question: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. II., 43.

ortos a Germanis: it is probable that Caesar’s statement here applies to those Belgae only near the German frontier. The main body of the people were of Gallic or Keltic origin. This is proved from the ancient Geographical names. Why is a expressed? F. L. 156, 4.

Rhenum: governed by the preposition trans in traductos: F.L. 96, 3; P.L. II., 72.

ibi: on the west bank of the river Rhine.

memoria: ablative of time within which: “within the memory of.”

omnia—vexata: abl. abs.: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. II. 49: “when all Gaul was harrassed.”

Teutones Cimbrosque: the Teutones and Cimbri appeared first at Noreia, on the extreme N.E. of Italy, about 113 B.C. After devastating Northern Italy, defeating seven consular armies, both were defeated by Marius, the former at Aquae Sextiae (Aix) in Southern Gaul in 102 B.C., the latter at Campi Raudii near Vercellae in Northern Italy in 101 B.C.

ingredi prohibuerint: for subjunctive. What constructions may verbs of hindering take? F.L. 185, 2; P.L. II., 156.

ieri: the subject of this verb is the following clause: uti—sumerent.

memoria: for ablative: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (b).

omnia—habere: “that they had complete information.” Properly explorare is, to find out a person by calling out his name.
propinquitatibus affinitatibusque coniuncti: propinquitas, properly called cognatio, is "kinship," the relationship that springs from common parents: affinitas is that derived from intermarriage. The affines of the wife are the cognati of the husband, i.e., the husband's father, brothers, etc., while the affines of the husband are the cognati of the wife, i.e., the wife's father, brothers, etc.

quisque: "each representative."

pollicitus sit: subjunctive of dependent clause in oblique narrative: F.L. 209 (2); P.L. II., 214 (2).

cognoverint: F.L. 209 (2); P.L. II., 214 (2).

conficere: "to muster."—armata millia centum = millia centum armatorum hominum.

sibi: the Bellovaci: suos refers to Remi subject of dicebant.

cum—tum = non solum—sed etiam.

Nervios: the names of peoples in the chapter show how persistently modern Geography preserves even in a corrupt form the memory of former days. The Bellovaci were settled near Beauvais; Suessiones, near Soissons; Ambiani, near Amiens; Caleti, near Calais; Atrebates, near Arras; Morini, near Boulogne; Velocasses had a capital Ratomagus, now Rouen; Veromandui were settled at Vermandois on the Upper Oise; the Menapii on the lower Scheldt; the Aduatuci, on the upper Meuse; Condrusi, near Codroz; Eburones and Caeroesi in the Ardennes region; the Paemani, in Marche la Famine.

Germani: the word is said to mean in Keltic, "hill-men," "highlanders": for other derivations see Proper Names.

CHAPTER V.

liberaliterque—prosecutus: "having dismissed them with friendly words."

prosequi verbis is a technical term, "to bid good-bye" to a person going into exile.

senatum: Caesar applies a Roman term to the council of the Belgae. So also Caesar: de Bell. Gall. II., 28, he uses the word senatores.

diligenter ad diem: "punctually to a day."

quanto—sit: "how important it is to the interests of the state and their
common safety that the forces of the enemy be kept apart that they may
not be compelled to fight at one time with so great a number.” reipublicae:
F.L. 166, 3; P.L. II., 63.—intersit : for subjunctive :—contigendum sit:
F.L. 183, 2; P.L. II. 25.

introduxerint: for mood and tense: F.L. 206, 4; P.L. 214 (3).

neque iam = et iam non.

flumen exercitum: F.L. 96, 3; P.L. II., 72.

extremis: reckoning from the Marne where Caesar entered the territory
of the Remi.

quae res: “this position.”

ripis: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (a).

et reddebat: construe et reddebat (ca loca) quae essent post eum (esse)
tuta ab hostibus. For mood of essent: F.L. 188, 4; P.L. II., 34.

efficiebat ut: “made it possible that.”

pedum: F.L. 130, 8; P.L. II., 115.

CHAPTER VI.

nomine: abl. of specification.

ex itinere magno: “while on a forced march”; cp. ex itinere:
B.I., Chapter XXV. The expression shows there was no interruption of
the march when the attack was made.

eo die: the ablative is sometimes used for periods of duration so short as
to be equivalent to a point of time.

eadem atque: “just the same as.”

ubi—subruunt: “when they have placed a continuous line of men all
along the fortifications and begun to shower stones from every side upon the
wall and (when once) the wall has been cleared of its defenders, then they
form a testudo, push on to the wall and proceed to pull it down.”—circum-
jecta multitudo: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. II., 49.—totis moenibus: abl. of
place.—coepti sunt: why passive?—murus: distinguish in meaning moenia,
murus, paries, maceria.—testudine: Caesar gives the tactics of the Belgae
a Roman name. In forming a testudo, the Roman soldiers held their
shields over their heads close to one another so as to form an unbroken
defence against the missiles from above. It obtained its name from the
appearance the shield had to a tortoise shell (testudo). Note that -que sometimes as here connects actions described as happening at some distance of time from each other.

multitudo—conicerent: the plural verb expresses numerous separate and individual actions. Had the singular been used there would have been the idea of unity.
nulli: decline. Note emphatic position.

fecisset: F.L. 203, 3; P.L. ii., 169.


oppido: for dative: F.L. 120, 2; P.L. ii., 104.

subi—sese: Iccius.

submittatur: what is the force of sub in composition here?

CHAPTER VII.

cô; i.e., to Bibrax.

de media nocte: "soon after midnight": so de tertia vigilia is, "after the third watch was set": what would tertia vigilia mean?
iisdem—venerant: "using as guides the same persons who had come as messengers." For pronouns in opposition to nouns, compare note on his ducibus qui iter cognoverant.

Numidas, Cretas, Balaeres: those three nations supplied the light skirmishers to the Roman armies. For an account of them see Proper Names.

subsidio—oppidanis: for the two datives: F.L. 134, 1; P.L. ii., 75. Join oppidanis with subsidio, not with mitti.

quorum—discessit: "and at the arrival of these the Remi were inspired with eagerness to ward off the attack, as well as with the hope of a successful defence, while, for the same reason, the enemy gave up all hope of becoming masters of the town."—advenu: abl. of time and cause.—et Remis—accessit: literally, "there was both added to the Remi": F.L. 120, 2; P.L. ii., 56.—hostibus. Note that many verbs compounded with ab, di, ex, as adimo, discedo, eripio, may take a dat. of person and acc. of thing in the active, or if they are intr., as here, a dat. of person.

potiundi oppidi: the genitive implies that potior may govern the accusative as it does in old Latin: Ter Adelph. 5, 4, 22: miseriam omnem ego capio, hic potitur gaudia.
NOTES.

morati, scil. hostes.

quos: account for the gender of the relative.

copiis: abl. of accompaniment.

ab—posuerunt: this construction is best explained by hyperbaton (inversion in order of words), the regular construction being: posuerunt castra minus duobus passuum ab (castris Caesaris). The abl. millibus is ablative of difference: F. L. 58, 6; P. L. II., 124 (d).—minus, plus, amplius have no influence on the construction: cp. ἐλασσὸν, πλεῖον in Gk.: ἀπέχει πλεῖον σταδίων δέκα.—millibus ablative of measure: F. L. 131, 9; P. L. II., 124 (3).

CHAPTER VIII.

propter—virtutis: "on account of their fine reputation for valour."

proelio supersedere: "to delay the battle."—supersedeo means primarily, "to sit upon" in the sense of a presiding judge: Cato R. R. 5, B. 1.: vilicus litibus familiae supersedeat: then "to refrain from" a thing in the sense of passing it over; hence, "to delay."—proelio: ablative.

equestribus proelis—periclitabatur: literally "he kept trying to find out by cavalry skirmishes what the enemy could do by their valour and what daring our men had in skirmishing."—proelis: ablative of means.—posset—auderent: dependent question: F. L. 176, 2; P. L. II., 45.—periclitabatur = periculum faciebat. The original meaning of periculum is "a trial," "a test."

loco—idoneo: "the ground in front of the camp being naturally well adapted and suitable for drawing up his troops." The present participle of the verb esse being wanting we often find an adjective agreeing in predicate relation with a noun in abl. absolute:—ad—instruendam: for gerundive: F. L. 170, 3; P. L. II., 140.

quod—redibat: "because that hill on which the camp was pitched, rising a little from the plain, extended in width towards the enemy far enough to form an army in line, and on both sides it had steep banks and in front gently sloping upward it gradually resumed a level."—ubi = in quo.—tantum: acc. sing. neut. of adjective: acc. of extent of space.—adversus: predicate adjective after patebat—loca: F. L. 69, 10; P. L. II., 114.—lateris déiectus: literally, "slopes of the side."

transversam fossam: "an intrenchment at right angles," to the direction of the hill.
ad—fossas: “at the end of the intrenchments.”

tormenta: (from root TORC, “to whirl”) was the generic term under which were included balistae, onagri, scorpiones, catapulta.

quod—poterant: “because they were so strong in numbers.”

multitudine: abl. of cause.

legionibus: the XIIIth and XIVth, which he had raised the previous summer in Gallia Cisalpina.

si quo opus esset: “if anywhere there was need.” Explain the tense of the subjunctive.

subsidiio: dat. of purpose: “as a reserve force.”

suas—instruxerant = suas copias ex castris eduxerant et instruxerant: note that the Latins often express by a participle and a verb two co-ordinate clauses.

CHAPTER IX.

palus: distinguish in meaning pālus, pālus.

hanc—erant: “the enemy were waiting to see whether our soldiers would cross this (marsh); our men, on the other hand, were under arms waiting to attack them (the enemy) when stuck fast (in the marsh), if they (the enemy) should first begin to cross it.”—hanc, scil. paludem.—

transirent: F.L. 96, 2; P.L. II., 95.—si—feret: literally, “if a beginning of crossing (the marsh) should be made by them”: for the subjunctive: F.L. 209, 1 (2); P.L. II., 220.

proelio—contendebatur: “a cavalry battle was fought between the two lines.” For the passive contendebatur: F.L. 164, 2; P.L. II., 57.

secundiore—nostris: “the cavalry battle being more fortunate than usual to our men.” For abl. abs.; F.L. 100, 5; P.L. II., 52 (a).

eo consilio: “with the object.”

castellum: a redoubt which Titurius occupied with six cohorts on the south bank of the Axon (Aisne).

texpugnarent: distinguish in meaning oppugno, expugno.

si—potuissent: the construction is: partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt eo consilio ut, si minus potuissent pontem expugnare et inter-scindere. The tense in potuissent implies the condition after the attempt had been made.
**NOTES.**

*nobis usui*: F.L. 134, 1; P.L. II., 75.

*commeatu*: abl. of separation: F.L. 158, 2; P.L. II., 73.

**CHAPTER X.**

*equitatum—pontem*: for the two accusatives: F.L. 96, 3; P.L. II., 73.

*levis armaturae*: for genitive of description: F.L. 130, 7, 8; P.L. II., 115.

*eo loco*: the battle is said to have taken place between the mouth of the little stream *Miette*, which flows through the marsh mentioned in Chapter IX. into the Axona (*Aisne*), and the modern village of *Pontavert*.

*impeditos*: “hampered in their movements.”

*circumventos interfecerunt=circumvenerunt et interfecerunt*: see last note on Chapter VIII.

*hostes*: the main body of the Belgae who remained drawn up in battle array, differing from the *hostes impeditos* mentioned before who were simply a detachment.

*oppido*: Bibrax.

*spem se fefellisse*: literally, “that their hope had deceived them.”

*neque=et non.*

*iniquiorem*: “less favourable” for them than the original position where the legions were drawn up.

*constitueiunt—esse—(ui) convenirent*: *constituo* takes either—(1) the infinitive or (2) *ut* or *ne* with subjunctive, generally when the subjects of the main verb and dependent verb differ. Rarely do we find the construction varied in the same clause as here.

*domum*: what words are construed like the names of towns? F.L. 85, 1; P.L. II., 93 (a)

*introduxissent*: F.L. 209, 1, (2); P.L. II., 214 (2).

*convenirent*: in direct discourse this would be *conveniamus, convenite*.

*copiis*: “supplies” here: what are the usual meanings of *copia* in singular and plural? F.L. 278, 3; P.L. III., 54 (e).

*finibus*: for the dative: F.L. 130, 2; P.L. II., 56.
his—poterat: "these could not be persuaded to delay any longer or to refrain from bringing aid to their countrymen."—his: F.L. 164, 1: P.L. II. 57.

CHAPTER XI.

ea—constituta: express this by other constructions.

secunda vigilia: from 9–12 P.M.

castris egressi—ex castris egressi: for abl.: F.L. 158, 2 (1); P.L. II., 123 (a).

nullo imperio: "without any definite marching order," or "command." The abl. absolute is explained by cum—tumultu and by cum—prœperaret.

primum—locum: "the first place in the line of march," i.e., to get at the head of the retreating column.

fecerunt—videretur: "they so managed matters that their setting out had all the appearance of a rout." For subjunctive: F.L. 187, 2; P.L. II., 33.

per exploratores. Distinguish this from ab exploratoribus in meaning.

nondum perspexerat: "he had as yet no intelligence."

exercitum—peditatum: as the foot soldiers made up the bulk of the Roman army, milites is often used for pedites; exercitus for peditatus.

ciastris—in castris.

qui moraretur=ut is moraretur: "to stop": F.L. 184, 1; P.L. II., 25.

his—equitibus implied in equitatum.

novissimos, scil. hostes: "the rear of the enemy.

magnam—conciderunt: "slew a great number of them as they were fleeing." Distinguish concido, concido in derivation and meaning.

cum—consisterent: "since those on the rear of their column, to whom the Romans had come, were making a stand."—ventum est: F.L. 164, 2; P.L. II., 57.

priores—ponerent: "(while) those in advance (of the rear guard), because they thought they were out of danger, and were not kept together by any necessity or command of their officers, when the shout reached their ears, all broke up their ranks in confusion and rested their hope in flight."—priores, scil. hostes: those at the head of the retreating column.—videretur
NOTES.

—continerentur: subjunctive by attraction.—perturbatis ordinibus is more closely connected with verb ponerent than the first abl. abs.: exundit clamore.—ponerent: F.L. 198, 2; P.L. ii., 165 (a).

quantum—spatium: "as long as the length of the day permitted," i.e., as long as it was daylight.

CHAPTER XII.

postridie eius die: posteri die, cotidie are locatives merged in a dative; cp. in old Latin die quinti, die crastini. Others take posteri die as ablative and compare antea, postea—eius die is a pleonasm. For the genitive cp. την ἵστεραν τῆς μάχης.

priusquam se—recipierent: "before the enemy could recover themselves": F.L. 201, 5; P.L. ii., 175.

magnio itinere confecto: "by making a forced march." What was the length of a regular day's march? What, of a forced march? See Introduction, p. XXII., V.

Noviodunum: the ending -dun is Keltic for "town"; cp. Lugdunum: Melodunum: so that Noviodunum means Newtown. The modern Soissons (a corruption of Suessiones) is on its site, nearly 30 miles west of Berry-au-Bac.

ex itinere: "on his march."

latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem: note the chiasmus.

paucis defendentibus = quamvis pauci (id) defenderent: "though those who defended it were few": the abl. absol. is concessive here.

usui: F.L. 134, 1; P.L. ii., 75.

vineas agere: "to get ready the vineae." The vineae were wooden frames, eight feet high, seven wide and sixteen long, protected with raw or wet hides. Under this protection the men advanced to the wall of the enemy, undermined the wall or filled up the ditch.

aggere iacto: "a platform being constructed." The aggeres were platforms for the artillery or for movable towers.


operum: "siege works."

Galli: appositive: "they, as Gauls."
et—impetrant: “and at the request of the Remi, they (Suessiones) obtained their wish that their lives should be spared.”

CHAPTER XIII.

primis = principibus.

Bratuspantium: an old town Bratuspante which once stood near Breteuil in Picardie, at the head of the Somme Valley.

contulissent—abesset: bring out in translation the differences in tense: so also in accessisset—poneret.

esse—venire: “that they placed themselves under his protection and power.”—eius may be both objective and subjective genitive and hence implies a mutual pledge being given.

neque = et non.

pueri: “children”: not necessarily “boys” merely.

passis manibus: “with outstretched hands,” expressing humiliation.

more: abl. of manner: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (b).

CHAPTER XIV.

pro his = pro Bellovcis: “in defence of these”—eum = Caesarem.

reverterat: conjugate this verb. What verbs are semi-deponent?

facit verba: “intercedes.”

Bellovacos: what are the chief rules for oblique narration: F.L. 209, 1, 2; P.L. II., 213-220. In verba facit is implied dixit on which the indirect narrative depends.

Omne tempore: note that the acc. omne tempus is not ordinarily used to express duration of time.

qui dicerent: “who kept saying”: F.L. 209, 1 (2); P.L. II., 214 (2).

omnes—perferre: “endured every kind of ill-treatment and insult.” Explain the use of the plural of abstract nouns.

qui: the antecedent of this is eos understood, the subject of profugisse.

principes = auctores: “advisers.”

in Britanniam profugisse: Britain has often been a refuge for French agitators as in the recent case of Boulanger.
"ut-nutatur: "that he would exercise his well-known clemency and moderation towards them." What verbs govern the ablative? F.L. 116; P.L. II., 65.

fecerit: explain the fut. perf.

quorum—consuerint: "by whose aid and help, whatever wars happened they (Aedui) were wont to hold out."—auxiliis—opibus: abl. means. Change from Bellovacos to the end of the chapter into direct narrative.

CHAPTER XV.

honoris—causa: "out of regard for Divitiacus and the Aedui."—Divitiaci: objective genitive.

auctoritate: F.L. 131, 9; P.L. II., 124 (b) 3.—multitudine: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (a).

e o loco: Bratuspantium.

Nervii: these were looked upon as the most savage people of the Belgae.

natura: "character."

mulium—mercatoribus: "traders have no access to these." These traders were mainly from Massilia (Marseilles) and were probably Greeks and Italians who followed the Roman camp.

nihil—pati=(eos) non pati quicquam vini: "they do not at all permit the use of wine"; for the partitive genitive: F.L. 69, 10; P.L. II., 113.—reliquarum rerum governed by quicquam implied in nihil. For a similar statement regarding the Belgae generally see Chapter I., B. 1.

iis rebus: "by these enjoyments."

quod—existimarent: what two reasons for the subjunctive?—Eorum: would suos be permitted here?

increpitare atque incusare: "they rebuked and even blamed." Distinguish et, atque and -que as connectives. Supply eos as subject of increpitare, incusare.—qui=quippe qui: "inasmuch as they": F.L. 198, 4; P.L. II., 196.

CHAPTER XVI.

eorum=Nerviorum.

triduum: scil., spatium, acc. of duration of time=tres dies.
millia: note that plus, minus, amplius have no influence on constructions of extent of time or space.

in itinere: “(already) on the march.”

mulieres—coniecisse: the construction is: inveniebat (eos) coniecisse mulieres (hombres) que qui, etc.

CHAPTER XVII.

qui—deligant: “to pick out.”—qui = ut ei: F. L. 184, 1; P.L. III., 25.
ex—Gallis: join this with complures.
dedititiis: the Ambiani, Suessiones, and Bellovaci.
eorum—perspecta: “the usual marching order on the part of our army during these days being observed.”
eorum dierum: depends on itinoris.

inter—intercedere: “that between every two legions a great number of beasts of burden were placed.” Distinguish impedimentum, impedimenta, and sarcina in meaning. The impedimenta seem here to refer to the horses, wagons or any beast of burden used in transporting the heavy material of the army.

neque—adoriri: “and that there was no trouble, when the first legion reached the camp, and (when) the other legions were a long way off, in attacking this (legion) still encumbered with baggage.”—negotii: partitive genitive after quidquam.—spatium: F. L. 69, 9; P. L. II., 92.

futurum esse: depending on demonstrarunt, and having the clause ut—auderent for subject: “the result would be that the other legions would not be bold enough to withstand the attack”: F. L. 187, 1; P. L. II., 33.—reliquae, scil., legiones.

adiuvabat—posset: “the following fact added weight to the advice of those who brought this intelligence, that the Nervii, long ago, since they could do nothing with cavalry (for up to this time they do not pay any heed to this branch of the service, but whatever power they have rests in their infantry), that the more easily they might obstruct the operations of the cavalry of their neighbours, if they came against them (Nervii) for the purpose of plunder, had caused, by lopping the trees when young and by intertwining the branches which grew out thick in a lateral direction and by interposing brambles and briars, these hedges like a wall to form a defence,
which far from being able to enter they could not even see through.” Such is the literal translation. Break up the sentence into several separate sentences for a good English version.

antiquitus: explain the ending of the adverb.—quo: F. L. 183, 5; P. L. ii., 26.—venissent: F. L. 209, 1 (2); P. L. ii., 214 (2).—effecerant ut: F. L. 181, 3; P. L. ii., 208.—instar muri: instar is an indeclinable substantive.—non modo = non modo non: cp. the Greek use of oie mounov for ou mouon ou.

non—consilium: “this plan should not be neglected by them”: for dative sibi: F. L. 173, 4; P. L. ii., 105.

CHAPTER XVIII.

loci—quem locum: the repetition of the antecedent with the relative is frequent in Caesar, especially when exactness is required. This place is said to be on the River Sabis (now Sambre) in France, near the Belgian frontier, about two miles S. W. of Maubeuge.

declivis: a hill sloping from the top to the bottom was called declivis: from the bottom to the top, acclivis.

huic—contrarius: “facing and opposite to this.” There is little difference between adversus and contrarius: the former seems to mean that the two hills corresponded in form and extent.

passus—ducentos: some say that the hill began to rise about 200 paces from the margin of the river, others that it was 200 paces from the bottom to the top.—passus: acc. of extent: F. L. 69, 9; P. L. ii., 92.

infimus apertus = infima parte apertus opposed to ab superiore parte silvestris: “thickly wooded on the top, so that it was not easy to see into it.”

secundum: here a preposition: “down the river”: we have also secundo flumine, adverso flumine for “down the river,” “up the river”: secundo and adverso being adjs. in abl. absolute, agreeing with flumine.


CHAPTER XIX.

copiis: ablative of accompaniment: F. L. 12, 3; P. L. ii., 124 (1).

ratio—detulerent: “the system and arrangement of the army was differ-
ent from what the Belgae had reported to the Nervii.”—haebat: sing. from the unity of idea contained in ordo ratioque.—ac.: with words signifying difference, = “than.”

sūd consuetudine: “according to his usual custom”: abl. of manner.
expeditas: “without baggage.”
duae legiones: the XIIIth and XIVth legions.
totum—claudebant: “brought up the whole rear.”
praesidio impediimentis: for the two datives: F.L. 134, i; P.L. II., 75.
identidem: “repeatedly.”
neque—auderent: “and when our soldiers did not dare to follow those in retreat further than the level and open ground extended in front.”
neque=et non.—quem ad finem=ad eum finem ad quem=usque eo quo.—
porrecta: literally, “stretching in front.”
quae—venerant: “which had been the first to come up.”
opere dimenso: “the work allotted to each being measured out.” After picking out a place for the camp (Chapter xviii., locum idoneum castris deligere), the six legions which first came up began to fortify the camp (castra munire) after the ground had been marked out for each by the surveyors (castrorum metatores, or mensores). Note that dimenso is passive. The participles of deponent verbs are used often passively: Madvig., § 153.

ubi—fecerunt: “when the first part of the baggage train of our army was seen by those who were concealed in ambush in the forest, which had been agreed upon among them as the proper time for beginning the battle, on a sudden they darted forth with all their forces, and made an onset on our cavalry in the same order as they had drawn up their line of battle and ranks within the woods, and as they had encouraged each other to do.”

quod—convenerat: in apposition to the clause ubi—visa sunt.—tempus: predicate after convenerat.—omnibus copiis: abl. of accompaniment: F.L. 12, 3; P.L. II., 124 (1).
proturbatis: “driven forward in confusion.” Another reading is perturbatis.
paecē—tempore: “almost in one and the same moment.”
ad silvas: “at the edge of the woods.”
in manibus: may mean what a person has under his hand; hence what
is in his power, or as here what is close at hand; cp. Sall. Bell. Jug. 1, 57: *cupere proelium in manibus facere.*

*adverso colli*: "up the hill"; cp. *secundum* in Chapter XVIII. They made straight for the Roman camp with the hill before them.

**CHAPTER XX.**


*vexillum—dandum*: notice the asyndeton in this sentence. Why does Caesar here use it? *vexillum* (diminutive of *velum*, "a sail") was a crimson flag hung out from the *praetorium* as the signal of battle. Plutarch calls it Φοίνικος χιτών, "a crimson cloak."

*quum—oporeret*: "when they had to rush to arms." Explain the subjunctive here: F. L. 203, 3; P. L. II., 169.

*signum*: "the signal of battle." The various instruments in Caesar's army were: (1) *tuba*: a trumpet, straight, with a funnel-shaped opening and used for giving signals to form in line, advance, and retreat; (2) *cornu*: horn, originally made of buffalo horn, gave the signal to the army to assemble and hear the address of the commander, or the sentence of death pronounced; (3) *bucina*: clarion was sounded to mark a change of watch. In Caesar's time the *litus* was also used, though not mentioned by him. It was used for cavalry and had a harsh and high note.

*qui—arcessendi*: "those who had gone a little too far to seek materials or the mound had to be summoned." The antecedent of *qui* is *ei milites* understood, subject of *arcessendi sunt.*

*milites cohortandi*: referring to the usual harangue (*militum cohortatio*) of the general before the action began.

*signum dandum*: it is better to take this as *signum committendi proelii aandum est*: "the first order to charge." Others say it refers to the *tessera* or watch-word given to the men, so that by calling it they might avoid mistake or confusion in distinguishing friends and foes. It was usually some auspicious term or name. The watch-word of Caesar was usually *Venus Genetrix*; of Brutus, *Libertas*. With *tessera*: cp. Greek σήμα.

*successus*: "approach" of the Nervii from below.

*his—militum*: "two things, namely, the skill and experience of the soldiers were of assistance to him to meet these difficulties."—*difficillatibus*;
dative, depending on _subsidio_: _usus_: a more important word than _scientia_ in Caesar's eyes. Note _ac_, or _atque_ join words of which the latter is the more important.

_non—poterant_: "they were able to give the command to themselves with no less advantage than to receive the command from others." This shows the high degree of discipline to which Caesar had brought his legions.

_ab—vetuerat_: "Caesar had forbidden the different lieutenants to leave the fortifications and their respective legions, except after the camp was fortified." For distributive numeral: F L. 69, 8; P. L. III., 58 (c).

_nisi—castris_: the full construction: _nisi recessissent munitionem castris_: for abl. absol.: F. L. 10c, 5; P. L. II., 49.

_nihil_ (=_ne hilum_: "not a mark," or _=ne filum_, "not a thread,") is here used for an emphatic _non_.

_videbantur_, scil. _administranda esse_: "but they did of their own accord what they thought ought to be done."

**CHAPTER XXI.**

_necessariis—imperatis_: "having given (only) the necessary orders": F. L. 100, 5; P. L. II. 49.

_quam in partem—obtulit_: the full construction is: _in eam partem quam partem fors obtulit_: "in the direction which fortune first presented."—_fors_: (from _fero_,) whatever fortune brings.

_retinierent—posset_: for the imperfect subjunctives. Note the force of the imperfect denoting continuous action.

_neu—et ne_: cp. Caes. _de Bell. Gall._, 4, 17: _ut—his defensoribus earum rerum vis minueretur neu ponti nocerent._

_animo—in animo._

_quod—posset_: this gives the reason for _signum dedit._

_quam quo—quam ut eo_: "than the throw of a dart": F. L. 198, 4; P. L. II., 196.

_pugnantibus occurrit_: "he finds them already engaged in fighting."

_insignia_: these seem to be the _cristae_, feathers black and red, and other ornaments worn by the Roman soldiers to distinguish the legions and cohorts. These were movable and were not worn on the march.
scutis: abl. of separation: F.L. 158, 2 (1); P.L. II., 123 (a). The scutum was protected on the march with a leathern cover to shield it from the effects of the weather.

quam—conspectit: the full expression would be: hac in parte et ad haec signa quisque constitit, quam primam in partem devenit, et quae prima signa conspectit. On ordinary occasions it was a serious offence for a soldier to be absent from his regular post.

in—suis = in quaeerendo sua (signa): “in seeking out his own standard.”

CHAPTER XXII.

magis—postulabat: “more in accordance with the position of the ground, the slope of the hill, and the urgency of the occasion than with the principles and arrangement approved of by military science.”—magis ut—postulabat: distinguish the use of the indic. and the subjunctive with ut following the comparative.

cum—resisterent: “since, as the different legions were scattered, different places held out against the enemy.”—diversis—legionibus: abl. absolute.


sepibusque—interiectis: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. II., 49.

provideri, scil., poterat: the subject of which is the clause quid—esset.

fortunae: genitive depending on eventus: “the varying success of fortune also followed”: that is, some divisions were victorious and some defeated.

CHAPTER XXIII.

acie: genitive = aciei. Compare Aulus Gellius: Caius Caesar in libro de Analogia secundo, huius die et huius specie dicendum putat.

ea pars: the sinistra pars occupied by the soldiers of the IXth and Xth legions.—his = Atrebatibus.

ex loco superiore: the prepositional abl. absolute: “since they occupied the higher ground.”

conantes, scil., eos (Atrebates): “as they (the Atrebates) were trying.”

ipsi = legionum nonae et decimae milites.

transire: for infinitive after non dubitaverunt see note under Chapter II., B. II.
diversae: "separately."

erant congressi: scil. milites, from legiones.

ex loco—proeliabantur: “had gone down from the high ground and were fighting on the banks of the river.” Explain the force of the imperfect.

nudatis: “being stripped” of defenders.

intervallo: abl. of difference: F.L. 58, 6; P.L. II., 124 (d).

latere aperto: their flank being left uncovered” : abl. abs. In this case latus = latus sinistrum.

summum—locum: “the height occupied by the camp.”

CHAPTER XXIV.

levis armaturae: see note on levis armaturae: Chapter X., B. II.

adversis: “face to face.”

decumana porta: the Roman camp had four gates: porta praetoria, in front, facing the enemy, and called from being near the praetorium or headquarters of the general; opposite to this was the porta decumana in the rear of the camp, and so called because the 10th cohorts of the legion (decima cohors) were stationed there; porta principalis dextra, in the centre on the right hand side of the camp, and porta principalis sinistra, on the left hand side.

respexissent—vidissent: F.L. 203, 3; P.L. II., 169.

quorum—singularis: “whose reputation for valour is very high among the Gauls.”—opinio sometimes means, as here, the impression conveyed to others.

auxilia—civitate = auxiliarum loco ab civibus: “as auxiliaries by their countrymen.” This accounts for ab. So also at the end of this chapter civitate = civibus.

castris: for ablative: F. L. 116; P. L. II., 65. Potior governs the genitive when it means to be master of.

CHAPTER XXV.

Caesar—scuto—detracto—processit: to this main sentence there is a long prothesis or introduction which may conveniently be divided into two parts, the first extending to esse impedimento vidit, and the second, to submitti posset.
ab—cohortatione = ab decima legione quam cohortatus erat.

signis—collatis: causative to esse impedimento: "since the standards (of the maniples) were crowded together." Distinguish aquila, signum, vexillum in meaning.

centurionibus occisis: this and the four succeeding ablatives absolute are causal to reliquis esse tardiores: "all the centurions of the fourth cohort were slain, etc., therefore, all the rest of the men were getting cowed."

—primipilo: primus pilus was the first centurion of the first manipulus of the triarii and was the first in rank of the sixty centurions of the legion. He was entrusted with the eagle of the legion, ranked among the equites as regards pay, and had a place in the council of war along with the consul and tribunes.

et—excedere = et nonnullos ab novissimis locum deserere ac proelio excedere: "while some in the rear were quitting their posts and withdrawing from the battle." Others have desertos: "abandoned by those in the rear." It is better to supply loco with deserto. For proelio: F.L. 158, 2; P.L., 123 (a).

hostes—instande: "and that the enemy both in front did not cease coming up, and on both sides were pressing (our men) hard." With instare supply nostris militibus.

et rem—vidit: "as he also saw that the danger was great." With angusto, scil. loco. We still in American parlance speak of a man being in a "tight place." The length of the sentence and the number of the dependent clauses led Caesar to repeat vidit.

subsidium: "reserves": the xiii and xivth legions were too far off to be of any assistance.

scuto—detracto: "snatching a shield from a soldier in the rear." In uni militi we have a dative of reference after detracto. Many verbs compounded with, ab, de, ex, like adimo, detraho, take in the active an acc. of the thing and dat. of the person, the latter instead of an abl. of separation. With this meaning of uni: cp. the English a, an: A.S. án, Fr. un, all really same.

signa—laxare: "to advance and to open out their ranks." Distinguish signa inferre, referre, convenire, efferre: ad signa convenire, a signis discedere, collatis signis consilgere, signis infestis ire aut incedere. The original meaning of manipulus was a handful (manus, pleo) of grass at the top of a pole referred to by Ovid. Fasti. III., 115. The pole was changed into a spear and the wisp of grass was replaced by gilded, silver, or bronze animals, of which the eagle was retained as the emblem of the legion.
Afterwards the animals were replaced by a round ball of metal.—*laxare*; to give full play to the sword and to lessen the deadly effect of the enemies' missiles.

*militibus*: dative: F.L. 120, 1; P.L. ii., 69.

*pro se quisque*: "each man to the best of his ability."

*etiam—experet*: "even in the most critical moment desired to do his best."—*navare=guavare*: "to do actively": cp. *gnarus*.

**CHAPTER XXVI.**

*iuxta*, scil., *duodecimam legionem*: "next to the twelfth legion."

*ut—inferrent*: "that the (two) legions should gradually draw together, face about and charge the enemy." The seventh legion took up its position in rear of the twelfth, so that it faced in the opposite direction and thus the two would present a double front to the enemy. The expression *conversa* would thus refer to the seventh only, the two forming thus one continuous line. For *conversa signa*—*inferrent=* *converterent signa et—inferrent. Note this use of the participle gives a compactness to the Latin sentence.


*aversi*: "in the rear."

*legionum—duarum*: *XIIIth* and *XIVth*.

*castris*: the *IXth* and *Xth* legions under Labienus had driven the Atrebates across the river and gained possession of the enemy's camp.

*gererentur—esset—versaretur*: for subjunctives: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. ii., 43.

*qui*: referring to *milites* implied in *legiones*.

*versaretur*: agreeing with the nearest nominative as the most important subject.

*nihil—fecerunt*: "they came up as fast as they could": literally, "they left nothing undone with respect to speed." For the partitive genitive *reliqui*: F.L. 69, 10; P.L. ii., 113.

**CHAPTER XXVII.**

*etiam qui—procubuissent*: "even such as had lain down badly wounded":
literally, "spent with wounds." For subjunctive: F.L. 188, 5 (a); P.L. II., 34.

sculis innixi: "supporting themselves on their shields." Note that nitor and its compounds govern the ablative: F.L. 116; P.L. II., 65.
equites vero—praefrent: the construction is tanta rerum commutatio est facta ut equites vero—praefrent: "such a change in the battle took place that indeed the cavalry, to wipe out by their valour their disgraceful flight, put themselves in front of the common soldiers in every part of the field." For militibus: F. L. 120, 1; P. L. II., 69.
at: often used to introduce a new subject, or a transition from one part of a description to another.
in—salutis: "even in the utter despair of safety."
his deiectis: "when these in turn were struck down."
qui superessent: scil. ei hostes qui superessent: for subjunctive of indefinite antecedent: F. L. 188, 5 (a); P. L. II., 34.
ut ex tumulo: "as from a hillock."
ut—locum: "so that it ought to be concluded, that men of so great valour had not without sufficient reason dared to cross a very broad river, ascend very high banks, (and) enter upon a very disadvantageous position."
nequidquam, here = frustra. What is the usual distinction between frustra and nequidquam?
quae—redegerat: "all of which things, though in themselves most difficult, their great courage had rendered easy of accomplishment."—redegerat = reddiderat.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

prope—redacto: "when the nation and name of the Nervii had been almost exterminated." There seems to be some exaggeration in this statement, as the Nervii aided the Gauls in their uprising against the Romans B. C. 52: see Caesar, de Bell. Gall. 7, 75.
pueris: "children."
quum—arbitrarentur: "since they saw that nothing would stop the conquerors nor defend the vanquished." On causal cum: F. L. 203, 1; P. L. II., 167.
omnium: depending on consensu.
millibus—sexaginta: in Chapter IV. the Nervii had promised 50,000.

vix ad quingentos: hyperbaton for ad vix quingentos: for a similar inversion of order, see Caesar de Bell. Gall. B. i., Chapter VI., vix qua singuli. Probably the exaggeration of the losses was for the purpose of exciting pity in Caesar.

possent: F. L. 209, 1 (2); P. L. II., 214 (2).

finitimis imperavit: translate, milites civitati imperavit: militibus imperavit.

CHAPTER XXIX.

supra: Chapter XVI., B. II.

omnibus copiis: ablative of accompaniment: F. L. 12, 3; P. L. II., 124 (1).

auxilio Nerviis: for two datives: F. L. 134, 1; P. L. II., 75.

venirent = in itinere essent: "were on the march."

oppidum: some say that this town, Aduatucum, was on the plateau at the junction of the Meuse and the Sambre, now Namur, not far from the field of Waterloo. Others say it was situated on the hill Falhize, on the north bank of the Meuse, opposite the town of Huy, some miles below Namur.

quod cum: "and though this (town)" : quod = et id, scil., oppidum.

despectus: "wide prospect:" owing to the height of the hill on which it was built.

in—pedum: join ducentorum pedum with aditus. For case of pedum: F. L. 130, 7; P. L. II., 115.

magni ponderis: F. L. 130, 7; P. L. II., 115.

ex—pugnati: according to some the name Aduatuci is purely Keltic, from aduat, "runners."

citra flumen: on the west side of the Rhine.

custodiam—ac praesidio: we have also custodiam—ac praesidium; custodiae—ac praesidio. Some also omit una.

eorum: the Cimbri and Teutones who fell at Aquae Sextiae 102 B. C., and at Campi Raudii 101 B. C.

quum—defenderent: "when at one time they carried on an aggressive war (against their enemies), at another time warded it off when made upon
themselves." With *bellum inferrent*, scil. *hostibus*: with *illatum* scil. *sibi*. Observe that *inferre bellum*, not *invadere*, is the technical term "to invade."

CHAPTER XXX.

primo adventu: "as soon as they arrived": cp. *prima luce*: "as soon as day dawned."

*parvulis proelii*: "in skirmishes."

*pedum duodecim*, scil. in *altitudinem*: for the genitive of description: F.L. 130, 7; P. L. II., 115.—*oppido*, scil. in.

*vinces—constituit*: the *vineae* were brought forward to cover the men who raised the platform (*agger*) on which the tower (*turris*) was to be placed and brought up to the wall. The men in the tower then drove the besieged from the wall: cp. Sallust. Bell. Jug. c. 76.—*turrim*: what nouns have (1) the accusative singular in -*im*: (2) in -*im* or -*em*?

*irridere—increpitare*: historical infinitives.

*quod—instrueretur*: the *quod* introduces the reason of the Gauls, not of Caesar: F.L. 198, 2; P. L. II., 165 (a).—*ab* properly governs *muro* understood.—*tanto spatio*: ablative of degree of difference: F.L. 58, 6; P. L. II., 124 (d).

*tantulae staturae*: "of such trifling stature": F.L. 130, 7; P. L. II., 115.

*brevitas nostra=brevitas nostrorum militum.*

*considerent*: what would the form be in direct discourse? F.L. 209, 1 (5); P. L. II., 214 (a) 1.

CHAPTER XXXI.

*moveri, scil. turrim.*

*specie*: "sight."

*non*: join this with *sine ope divina*.

*qui—possent=quippe qui—possent*: "inasmuch as they—were able": F.L. 198, 4; P. L. II., 196.

*quam—audirent*: "of which they had constantly heard from others." *Audio*, as *akoiv* in Greek, has often a perfect meaning in the present. For the mood of *despoliaret*: F.L. 181, 3; P. L. II., 27, 208.

*traditis armis=si arma tradita essent.*
sibi—consuessent: “that it would be better for them, if they should be brought to such a condition, to endure any lot whatever at the hands of the Roman people than to be tortured to death by those over whom they had been accustomed to hold absolute sway.” The subject of praestare is the part quamvis—consuessent.

CHAPTER XXXII.

consuetudine sua: “in accordance with his habit”: of treating mercifully a defeated foe: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (b).

aries: generally the Romans spared the inhabitants, if the city surrendered before the battering ram was applied.

in Nerviis: “in the case of the Nervii.”

ne quam: is quam here from quis or qui?

re—suos: “when the answer was reported to their people they said they were ready to do whatever was ordered (by Caesar).”—ad suos: explain ad. Why may not suis be read for ad suos? F.L. 6, 3; P.L. II., 93 (a).—facere, scil. eos, i.e., Aduatucos.

muri, i.e., of the town: agger, of the Romans.


CHAPTER XXXIII.

sub vesperum: “at the approach of evening”: cp. ἐπὶ νύκτα. There is also a reading sub vespere, which has not quite the same meaning. In Caesar, de Bell. Gall. 5, 13, sub bruma means “in the depth of winter.” Sometimes sub with acc. means also “a little after;” Livy 21, 18: sub hanc vocem—succlamatum est.

illi: afterwards distributed by partim—partim so as to form a divided subject of fecerunt.

ante invito consilio: “having previously formed a plot.”


deditione facta: express this in other ways.—praesidia deducturos, scil., esse: “would either withdraw their outposts,” from the line of circumvallation where the Roman sentries kept watch. Supply aut with deducturos (esse).—denique: “at least,” here—saltēm.
scutis—intentis: "having made shields of bark or of osiers intertwined." The *ex* governs *viminibus* as well as *cortice*. Others take *viminibus intertextis* as abl. absolute.

tertia vigilia: with the Romans the civil day began at midnight and ended at midnight as with us; the natural day began at twilight and ended at dark. The day and the night were divided into twelve hours each, the length of each hour depending on the season. The night was also divided into four watches (*vigiliae*) of three hours each: from 6–9 P.M.: 9–12: 1–3: 3–6.

*ascensus*: because the Roman works were on a height above the level of the plain.

*omnibus copiis*: abl. of accompaniment: F.L. 12, 3; P.L. II., 124 (I).

*repentino*: adverb for the more usual form *repente* which some have.

*ignibus*: "by fire signals."—*proximis*: nearest that part of the town from which the sally was made.

*concursum est*: *cp. itur, ventum est*: F.L. 164, 2; P.L. III., 72 (h).

*ut—debut*: "as brave men were bound to fight, when their case was nearly desperate, on disadvantageous terms against men hurling their missiles from a rampart and towers."—in extrema—*salutis*: the prepositional ablative absolute: F.L. 188, 5 (a); P.L. II., 34.

*sectio*: "booty," in this case the inhabitants as well as their goods. Properly speaking *sectio* was property sold on the public account whether it was property taken in war, or property forfeited to the *populus*, or property sold for the payment of a penalty. *Sector* was a purchaser of such property. Some say the word is derived (1) from *sequi*, "to follow," on account of the merchants (*mercatores*) following the army for the purpose of speculating in such property, or, (2) from *secare*, "to retail," because the purchaser (*sector*) retailed to the merchant what he bought in a lump.

*millium quinquaginta trium*: predicate genitive of characteristic: F.L. 130, 7; P.L. II., 115.

**CHAPTER XXXIV.**

*Venetos*: The names of the tribes here mentioned still survive in corrupted forms: *Veneti*, in the modern *Vannes*; *Redones*, in *Rennes*; *Aulerci Eburovices*, in *Evreux*; *Sesuvios*, in *Séez*. So in Chapter xxxv., Carnutes, Andes, Turones, may be seen in the modern *Chartres, Angers*, and *Tours*. 
CHAPTER XXXV.

quae incoherent: for subjunctive of attraction: F. L. 188, 5; P. L. II., 220.

se: referring to nationibus.

qui—pollicerentur = ut ei pollicerentur: F. L. 198, 4; P. L. II., 196.

legationes = legatos: abstract for concrete.

Italian: Caesar means Gallia Cisalpina, or Citerior, which, though within the natural boundaries of Italy, formed no part of Italy in a political sense at this time. Gallia Cisalpina was a provincia.

ex—Caesaris: "in accordance with the letters of Caesar."

dies—supplicatio: we have also mention of supplicationes in Caesar, de Bell. Gall., 4, 38; 7, 90. In these cases the genitive dierum is used. Of course dies is acc. of duration of time. A supplicatio was a religious thanksgiving and festival for a successful victory, proclaimed by a resolution of the senate and celebrated with or without a triumph.

accidit nulli: the longest celebration before this time was the supplicatio, lasting for ten days, in honour of Pompey's victory over Mithradates. Note emphatic position of nulli. See Chapter vi., B. II.
SHORT EXERCISES

BASED ON CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, B. II.

For Oral Translation into Latin.

I.

1. We have mentioned above that Caesar was in winter-quarters in Hither Gaul and that frequent reports were brought to him that the Gauls had formed a league against him. 2. The Gauls were afraid that Caesar would lead his army against them. 3. They were instigated by some tribes who did not wish the Roman army to remain in these places. 4. The people were constantly aiming at a revolution because they were annoyed (molestes ferre) that the Romans had conquered them. 5. They hired men who were able very easily to carry out their plans.

II.

1. Caesar was greatly disturbed by the letters and news which he received from his lieutenant. 2. At the beginning of the summer he enlisted two legions and sent his soldiers into the territory of the Belgae to carry on war. 3. He directs his lieutenant to find out what the Gauls were doing. 4. The lieutenant informed him that the enemy had collected large bands and had brought together a large army within ten days into one spot. 5. He thought that he should provide corn and that he should move his camp into the territory of the Belgae.

III.

1. Sooner than any one expected, Caesar came into the territory of the Remi, who dwelt next the river Rhine. 2. The ambassadors of the Remi, the leading men of the state, were sent to say that they would give up all their (possessions) to the Romans. 3. "We have not," said one of the ambassadors, "formed a league with the rest of the Belgae, nor have we entered into a conspiracy at all." 4. We are ready to aid you with (supplies of) corn and arms. 5. The Germans who dwelt across the Rhine were unable to deter them from forming a league with the Gauls.
IV.

(a)

1. He asked what states were in arms against the republic. 2. Most of the Belgae are descended from the Germans, and in ancient times crossed the Rhine. 3. They drove out all the Gauls from that district and prevented the Cimbri and Teutoni from entering their territory. 4. We found out how many men each tribe had promised for the war. 5. The Helvetii are the most powerful tribe of all Gaul on account of their valour, influence and number of population.

(b)

1. They promised to supply ten thousand picked men. 2. Among them lived a King, the most powerful of all Gaul, who held sway not merely over the greater part of that district, but also over Britain. 3. We entrusted to Galba the supreme command of the whole war. 4. On account of his valour, this man held sway (regnum obtinere) for many years among the Nervii. 5. All these tribes are called by the general (unus) name of Gauls.

V.

(a)

1. When Caesar had cheered the Remi by his speech, the whole senate came to him. 2. He orders the enemy to bring hostages to him. 3. He informed the Aedui how important it was for him that all things should be done punctually (ad diem). 4. "We must not fight," said he, "so many enemies at one time." 5. We began to lead our men into the territories of the Belgae. 6. Our men began to be led into the territories of the Belgae.

(b)

1. All the forces assembled on that day at one spot. 2. He hears from spies that the river Axona is about ten miles off. 3. He led his army across the river and pitched his camp on the farther bank. 4. The ditch and rampart rendered the rear of the camp safe. 5. He was able to convey corn to the camp without any danger.

VI.

1. The camp of Caesar was distant from the town about ten miles. 2. This town began to be besieged by the Belgae (with) all their forces. 3. When a large number of the enemy surrounded all the walls, they began to hurl stones from every side. 4. They formed a testudo, after they had
hurled stones and darts against the enemy. 5. Night put an end to the siege. 6. “Unless they send aid to me,” said he, “I am not able to hold out long.”

VII.

1. The archers and slingers were ordered to aid the citizens. 2. At the arrival of Caesar hope came to the Remi. 3. He delayed a few days in the neighbourhood of the town and devastated the territory of the enemy. 4. He burned all the villages which he could approach and pitched his camp (at a distance) less than three miles off. 5. It was plain by the camp-fires how great this camp was.

VIII.

1. He daily tested the valour of the enemy and the daring of our soldiers. 2. When it was noticed that our men were not inferior to the enemy, he drew up his line in front of the camp on a hill. 3. The hill in front gradually slopes to a plain. 4. The enemy were not able to surround our men because Caesar had planned a redoubt (castellum) on each flank. 5. The two legions which he had left in the camp he was able to hold as reserves.

IX.

1. The enemy crossed a small marsh while our men were waiting. 2. The general was ready to attack the enemy if they began to cross the river. 3. When both lines had been engaged in battle, the enemy were led back to their camp. 4. We have mentioned above that the river Axona to which the enemy set out, was in the rear of our army. 5. They led some of their forces across the river with the intention of destroying the bridge. 6. They devastated the lands of the Remi and kept our men from (obtaining) supplies.

X.

(a)

1. Titurius, who was of great service to Caesar, informed him that the archers had been led across the river. 2. In the plain a fierce battle is fought with the cavalry of the enemy. 3. Our men having slain a large number of the enemy attempted to cross the stream. 4. He said that he had been disappointed in crossing the river. 5. On that day corn began to fail the army.
EXERCISES.

I. He thought it was best for all the soldiers to return home. 2. After summoning a council, they led the soldiers into the territories of the Remi. 3. The Remi assembled on all sides to defend their homes. 4. They preferred (ma'v) to fight in their own territories rather than in those of another. 5. He could not persuade them to attack the Romans in battle or to bring aid to their allies.

XI.

1. They set out from home with great din at the fourth watch and hastened to reach the camp at daybreak. 2. Their departure seemed very like a rout. 3. This fact was learned by the spies, who, fearing an ambuscade, told Caesar why the enemy left. 4. Caesar sent forward all his cavalry to keep the enemy within the camp. 5. He appoints two lieutenants over the legions and orders them to follow closely with all the cavalry.

XII.

1. Before the enemy recovered from the panic the general set out for Rome. 2. The army was led by the commander into the territory of the Belgae who are next to the Germans. 3. He heard that he was not able to take this town by storm. 4. The camp began to be fortified with a ditch and rampart. 5. The Romans threw up a mound and built towers on the next night. 6. Ambassadors were sent to Caesar to treat for surrender and begged that the Romans spare them, their wives and children.

XIII.

1. Caesar received as hostages the leading men of the state and the two sons of King Galba. 2. After the Suessiones had been received in surrender, they gave up their arms. 3. All collected their property at the city of Rome, which was about five miles distant from that place. 4. All
the aged began to leave the town since they were not able to fight in battle against the Roman people. 5. According to their custom, when the Romans came to that place, after pitching their camp, they fortified it with a rampart and ditch.

XIV.

1. "The Bellovaci," said he, "are in allegiance to our state." 2. We have been instigated by our chiefs to say that we have suffered all kinds of insults. 3. Those revolted from the Aedui and carried on war against our state. 4. They fled into Britain because they knew what loss the enemy had inflicted on their lands. 5. They begged the Romans that they would show their mercy to them.

XV.

1. "I," said Caesar, "shall receive you into allegiance and will protect you." 2. Our state excelled the rest of Gaul in the number of the population. 3. They gave up their arms and surrendered themselves to the Romans without delay. 4. Nothing is imported into the territory of the Aedui which is supposed to tend to luxury. 5. He declared that he had not sent ambassadors nor had he accepted any conditions of peace.

XVI.

1. Through our territories he made a march of three days. 2. "The river Sambre is not," said he, "more than four miles distant from our camp." 3. The Nervii took up their position across this river and awaited there the arrival of the soldiers. 4. When he had persuaded the allies to await the arrival of our men, he found out that the enemy had crossed the river. 5. He collected all the women into a place to which (of us) there was no access, since they were useless for war.

XVII.

1. He learned all these things from the scouts who were sent forward to pick out a place suitable for a camp. 2. He afterwards learned from the captives that our route was watched by the enemy. 3. "It is no trouble," said he, "to defeat the Romans hampered-with-baggage (sub sarcinis), since they will not dare to make a stand if we repulse them in battle." 4. Of old the Nervii were very powerful in infantry although they had no cavalry force. 5. No one was able to enter the brambles and briars which formed a protection to their territories. 6. Our journey was hindered by the hedges which the Nervii had made.
XVIII.

1. Our men chose as a place for the camp a hill which sloped to the river Sambre. 2. You could not easily see into it because it was covered with woods from the bottom to the top. 3. Amid these woods for many days the enemy conceal themselves. 4. Down the river were many outposts, which were seen by our men. 5. The river was about five feet deep.

XIX.

1. Caesar sent forward his cavalry to pursue the enemy. 2. The Belgae reported to the Nervii the place and arrangement of our line. 3. When the enemy approached our camp, Caesar, according to custom, led out the tenth legion against them. 4. The two legions which he had lately enrolled in Gaul were protecting the baggage. 5. He crossed the river with the slingers and bowmen to engage in battle with the enemies' cavalry.

XX.

1. After making an attack on our men they withdrew to the woods. 2. The legions which were the first to begin the battle pursued the retreating (enemy). 3. They agreed among themselves that this was the time for beginning the battle. 4. When they had drawn up their line and ranks among the woods they suddenly rushed forward from every side. 5. Almost at one and the same time the enemy rush down against our camp with incredible speed.

XXI.

1. Caesar, after cheering the cavalry, hastened down with the soldiers of the seventh legion. 2. "Remember," said he, "your former valour; be not disturbed in spirit, but boldly withstand the attack of the enemy." 3. The
BOOK II.

57

general made a speech shorter than he was accustomed (*soleo*) to do.

4. So eager for the fight were the Gauls that the Romans had not time to
draw their swords before they rushed upon them. 5. The Roman soldiers
take up their positions at their standards which they saw in the van.

XXII.

1. He drew up his army after he had learned these things from his
lieutenants. 2. One legion opposed the enemy in one place, another in
another. 3. We have mentioned before that the view was obstructed by
the intervening trees. 4. They could not collect all their supplies, nor
could they find out what (supplies) it was necessary to provide. 5. Amid
such unevenness of ground the general could not carry out all the orders
which he gave to the lieutenants.

XXIII.

1. The soldiers of the tenth legion take up their stand on the right wing
and drive the enemy into the river. 2. After a great number of them had
been slain they pursued the rest across the river. 3. When they had put to
flight the enemy they did not hesitate to return to the camp. 4. For five
hours a battle was fought (*pugnatum est*) on the very summit of the hill.
5. The Nervii had a king named Boduognatus, who attempted to reach
that place.

XXIV.

1. All the light-armed soldiers were driven back at the first onset of our
troops. 2. After they met the enemy (who were) opposing (them) they
drove them headlong in flight to the banks of the river. 3. The enemy
who had gone out of the camp for the purpose of foraging, saw that our
men had crossed the river. 4. The Romans saw that the Treveri, terrified
by the noise of those who were pursuing hard, fled in all directions.
5. "We," said they, "have defeated the Romans, and we have gained
possession of your camp."

XXV.

(a)

1. Having set out to the right wing we saw that our men were hard
pressed by the enemy. 2. "I see," said Caesar, "that our baggage is a
great hindrance to the soldiers on the march." 3. The standard-bearer
and all the centurions of the fifth cohort were slain in that battle. 4. The
man was so severely wounded that he was not able to carry his arms. 5. Some in the rear left the battle and thus (*ita*) avoided the darts.

(b)

1. The battle was in a critical condition because we had no reserves who could be sent to aid our soldiers. 2. Caesar, drawing a shield from one soldier, armed himself and advanced against the foe. 3. He orders the cohorts to extend their line so that they might use their spears the more easily. 4. By the approach of the general hope was inspired in the soldiers. 5. Each one of the Roman soldiers desired to exert himself since he was fighting in sight of the general.

XXVI.

1. Caesar saw that our men were hard pressed by the enemy. 2. He advises the tribune to advance against the enemy. 3. One brought aid to one, another to another, and they were not afraid that the enemy would surround them. 4. The soldiers who were in the rear were a great protection to the baggage. 5. Titus Labienus sent his soldiers to aid our troops. 6. They watched from the height what deeds the general did in war.

XXVII.

1. Many of our men were so severely wounded by the javelins of the enemy that they were unable to renew the battle. 2. A great change took place in the battle, because the camp followers terrified the enemy who rushed against our men. 3. The cavalry blotted out the disgrace because they placed themselves in front of the common soldiers. 4. The soldiers fought very bravely since the front rank displayed such valour. 5. The enemy threw their javelins from the mound and hurled back against our men the intercepted darts. 6. Their valour rendered it an easy matter to cross the stream.

XXVIII.

1. The nation of the Nervii by this battle were almost exterminated. 2. All the women, children and elders were collected in the estuaries and fens. 3. All who survived, with one consent, surrendered to Caesar. 4. “We,” said they, “have been reduced to a few who are able to bear arms.” 5. He restrained all the neighbours from wrong-doing and ordered his soldiers to protect the Nervii.
XXIX.

1. The Aduatuci with many thousand men came to aid the Nervii. 2. All their towns and redoubts were deserted when the approach of our army was known. 3. On every side, all round, this town had such high rocks that it could easily be defended. 4. The wall was defended by rocks of great weight and beams were placed on it. 5. All the baggage which they did not take with them, they placed across the river Rhine. 6. Six thousand men were left to guard the redoubts. 7. After these had picked out a place for an abode, peace was made with the unanimous consent of all.

XXX.

1. Frequent sallies were made from the town by our army. 2. Caesar moved forward the vineae, raised a mound and built a tower near the town. 3. When so great a tower was being built so far off, the Nervii began to jeer. 4. The Gauls compared to the Romans were of great size. 5. "Do you think," said they, "to place so high a tower on our walls."

XXXI.

1. When the tower was nearing the walls, ambassadors were sent to Caesar to treat for peace. 2. "We do not think," said one of the ambassadors, "that the Romans have carried on this war without the aid of the gods." 3. "You," said he, "have moved forward engines of war of such height that we do not think that you could do this alone." 4. We ask one thing, that you will save our citizens and not take our arms from us. 5. We are willing to suffer any punishment whatever at the hands of the Romans rather than be slain by our enemies.

XXXII.

"I," said Caesar, "according to my custom, will save you if you will surrender yourselves before the battering-ram touches the wall." 2. You must surrender your arms and do no harm to the allies of the Roman people. 3. "We," says he, "will do whatever you order." 4. So great was the heap of arms that it almost reached the top of the mound of the camp. 5. They opened their gates on that day, but concealed their arms in the town.

XXXIII.

1. Just before evening the gates were shut and the soldiers were ordered to leave the town. 2. The enemy previously entered into a plan because
they believed that our men would protect the camp somewhat carelessly. 
3. At the second watch a sally was made suddenly against that part where 
the fewest soldiers were stationed. 4. Where the camp fires were fewest 
the enemy made an onset, and fought most valiantly against our men in a 
very disadvantageous place. 5. On the next day the gates were burst open 
and all the booty of that town was sold by Caesar.

XXXIV.—XXXV.

1. On that day they informed Caesar that the enemy had sent an em-
bassy. 2. All these States were reduced under the sway of the Romans 
in that year. 3. All the nations who dwelt across the Rhine sent ambas-
sadors to Caesar to promise that they would give hostages. 4. In the 
beginning of the next summer he carried on war with these states, and 
afterwards set out by forced marches to Italy. 5. The Senate decreed a 
thanksgiving of ten days, a thing which never happened to anyone before, 
since the days of Marius.
BOOK III.
C. IULI CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO.
LIBER TERTIUS.

Contents of Book III.—Campaign of 56, B.C. Gaul has nomi-
nally submitted to a Roman protectorate, but some of the tribes are
rebellious.—Galba in the Alps, chs. 1-6.—Naval war against the
Veneti, chs. 7-16.—Crassus subdues Aquitania, chs. 17-27.—Caesar
goes in pursuit of the Morini, chs. 28-29.

I.—Cum in Italian proficisceretur Caesar, Servium
Galbam cum legione duodecima, et parte equitatus, in
Nantuates, Veragros, Sedunosque misit, qui ab finibus
Allobrogum, et lacu Lemanno, et flumine Rhodano, ad
summas Alpes pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit, quod iter
per Alpes, quo, magno cum periculo magisque cum
portoriiis, mercatores ire consuerant, patefieri volebat.
Huic permisit, si opus esse arbitraretur, uti in eis locis
legionem hiemandi causa collocaret. Galba, secundis
aliquot proeliis factis, castellisque compluribus eorum ex-
pugnatis, missis ad eum undique legatis, obsidibusque
datis, et pace facta, constituit cohortes duas in Nantuatibus
collocare, et ipse cum reliquis eius legionis cohortibus in
vico Veragrorum, qui appellatur Octodurus, hiemare : qui
vicus, positus in valle, non magna adiecta planitie, altissi-
mis montibus undique continetur. Cum hic in duas
partes flumine divideretur, alteram partem eius vici Gallis
concessit, alteram, vacuam ab illis relictam, cohortibus
ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum locum vallo fossaque
munivit.

II.—Cum dies hibernorum coi..plures transissent,
frumentumque eo comportari iussisset, subito per explora-
tores certior factus est ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis con-
cesserat, omnes noctu discessisse, montesque, qui impen-
derent, a maxima multitudo Sedunorum et Veragrorum
teneri. Id aliquot de causis acciderat, ut subito Galli
belli renovandi legionisque opprimendae consilium cape-
rent: primum, quod legionem, neque eam plenissimam, detractis cohortibus duabus, et compluribus singillatim, qui commenatus petendi causa missi erant, absentibus, propter paucitatem despiciebant: tum etiam, quod, propter iniquitatem loci, cum ipsi ex montibus in vallem decur- rerent, et tela conicerent, ne primum quidem posse imper- tum sustinere existimabant. Accedebat, quod suos ab se liberós abstractos obsidum nomine dolebant: et Romanos non solum itinerum causa, sed etiam perpetuae possessionis, culmina Alpium occupare conari, et ea loca finitimae provinciae adiungere, sibi persusum habebant.

III.—His nuntiis acceptis, Galba, cum neque opus hibernorum munitionesque plene essent perfectae, neque de frumento reliquoque commenatu satis esset provisum, quod, deditione facta, obsidibusque acceptis, nihil de bello timendum existimaverat, consilio celeriter convocato, sententias exquirere coepit. Quo in consilio, cum tanti- tum repentini periculi praeter opinionem accidisset, ac iam omnia fere superiera loca multitudine armatorum completa conspicerentur, neque subsidio veniri, neque commenatus supportari interclisis itineribus possent, prope iam desperata salute, nonnullae huiusmodi sententiae dicebantur, ut, impedimentis relictis, eruptione facta, iisdem itineribus, quibus eo pervenissent, ad salutem contendsent. Maiori tamen parti placuit, hoc reservato ad extremum consilio, interim rei eventum experiri, et castra defendere.

IV.—Brevi spatio interiecto, vix ut his rebus, quas constituissent, collocandis atque administrandis tempus dare- tur, hostes ex omnibus partibus, signo dato, decurrere, lapides gaesaque in vallum conicere: nostri primo integris viribus fortiter repugnare, neque ullam frustra telum ex loco superiore mittere: ut quaeque pars castrorum nudata defensoribus premi videbatur, eo occurrerere, et auxilio ferre: sed hoc superari, quod diuturnitate pugnae hostes defessi proelio excedebant, alii integris viribus succede- bant: quorum rerum a nostris propter paucitatem fieri
nihil poterat; ac non modo defesso ex pugna excedendi, sed ne saucio quidem eius loci, ubi constiterat, relinquendi, ac sui recipiendi, facultas dabatur.

V.—Cum iam amplius horis sex continenter pugnaretur, ac non solum vires, sed etiam tela, nostris deficerent, atque hostes acrius·instarent, languidioribusque nostris vallum scindere, et fossas complere coepissent, resque esset iam ad extremum perducta casum, Publius Sextius Baculus, primi pili centurio, quem Nervico proelio com pluribus confectum vulneribus diximus, et item Caius Volusenus, tribunus militum, vir et consilii magni et virtutis, ad Galbam accurrunt, atque unam esse spem salutis docent, si eruptione facta extremum auxilium ex perirentur. Itaque, convocatis centurionibus, celeriter milites certiores facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium, ac tantummodo tela missa exciperent, seque ex labore reficerent; post, dato signo, ex castris erumperent, atque omnem spem salutis in virtute ponerent.

VI.—Quod iussi sunt, faciunt; ac, subito omnibus portis eruptione facta, neque cognoscendii, quid fieret, neque sui colligendi, hostibus facultatem relinquunt. Ita, commutata fortuna, eos, qui in spem potius surorum castrorum venerant, undique circumventos intericit; et, ex hominum millibus amplius triginta, quem numerum barbarorum ad castra venisse constabat, plus tertia parte interflecta, reliquos perterritos in fugam coniciunt, ac ne in locis quidem superioribus consistere patiuntur. Sic, omnibus hostium copiis fusiis, armisque exutis, se in castra munitionesque suas recipiunt. Quo proelio facto, quod saepius fortunam tentare Galba nolletbat, atque alti sese in hiberna consilio venisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rebus viderat, maxime frumenti commeatusque inopia permutus, postero die omnibus eius vicis aedificis incensis, in Provinciam reverti contendit; ac, nullo hoste prohibente aut iter demorante, incolumem legionem in Nantuates, inde in Allobrogas perduxit, ibique hiemavit.
RISING OF THE VENETI,—A NAVAL WAR.

VII.—His rebus gestis, cum omnibus de causis Caesar pacatam Galliam existimaret, superatis Belgis, expulsis Germanis, victis in Alpibus Sedunis, atque ita, inita hieme, in Illyricum prefectus esset, quod eas quoque nationes adire, et regiones cognoscere, volebat, subitum bellum in Gallia coortum est. Eius belli haec fuit causa. Publius Crassus adolescens cum legione septima proximus mare Oceanum in Andibus hiemarat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frumenti erat, praefectos tribunosque militum complures in finitimis civitatis, frumenti commeatusque petendi causa, dimisit: quo in numero erat Titus Terrasidius, missus in Esubios; Marcus Trebius Gallus, in Curiosolitas; Quintus Velanius, cum Tito Silio, in Venetos.

VIII.—Huius est civitatis longe amplissima auctoritas omnis orae maritimae regionum earum; quod et naves habent Veneti plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navigare consuerunt, et scientia atque usu nauticarum rerum reliquos antecedunt, et, in magno impetu maris atque aperto, paucis portibus interiectis, quos tenent ipsi, omnes fere, qui eo mari uti consuerant, habent vectigales. Ab iis fit initium retinendi Silii atque Velanii, quod per eos suos se obsides, quos Crasso dedissent, recuperatus existimabant. Horum auctoritate finitimi adducti (ut sunt Gallorum subita et repentina consilia), eadem de causa Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et, celeriter missis legatis, per suas principes inter se coniurant, nihil nisi communi consilio acturos, eundemque omnes fortunae exitum esse latus: reliquasque civitates sollicitant, ut in ea libertate, quam a maiorisibus acceperant, permanere, quam Romanorum servitutem perferre, mallet. Omni ora maritima celeriter ad suam sententiam perducta, communem legationem ad Publimum Crassum mittunt, si velit suos recipere, obsides sibi remittat.

IX.—Quibus de rebus Caesar ab Crasso certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, naves interim longas aedifi-
cari in flumine Ligeri, quod influit in Oceanum, remiges ex Provincia institui, nautas gubernatoresque comparari iubet. His rebus celeriter administratis ipse, cum primum per anni tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Veneti, reliquaeque item civitates, cognito Caesaris adventu, simul quod quantum in se facinus admississent intelligebant—legatos, quod nomen apud omnes nationes sanctum inviolatunique semper fuisset, retentos ab se et in vincula coniectos—pro magnitudine periculi bellum parare, et maxime ea, quae ad usum navium pertinent, providere instituunt; hoc maiore spe, quod multum natura loci confidebant. Pedestria esse itinera concisa aestivali, navigationem impeditam propter inscientiam locorum paucitatemque portuum sciebant: neque nostros exercitus propter frumenti inopiam diutius apud se morari posse confidebant: ac iam, ut omnia contra opinionem acciderent, tamen se plurimum navibus posse: Romanos neque ullam facultatem habere navium, neque eorum locorum, ubi bellum gesturi essent, vada, portus, insulas novisse: ac longe aliam esse navigationem in concluso mari, atque in vastissimo atque apertissimo Oceano, perspiciebant. His initis consiliis, oppida muniunt, frumenta ex agris in oppida comportant, naves in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum bellum gesturum constabat, quam plurimas possunt, cogunt. Socios sibi ad id bellum Osismios, Lexovios, Nannetes, Ambiliatos, Morinos, Diablintes, Menapios adsciscunt: auxilia ex Britannia, quae contra eas regiones posita est, arcessunt.

X.—Erant hae difficultates belli gerendi, quas supra ostendimus; sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitabant: iniuriae retentorum equitum Romanorum; rebellio facta post deditionem; defectio datis obsidibus; tot civitatum coniuratio; in primis, ne, hac parte neglecta, reliquae nationes idem sibi licere arbitrarentur. Itaque cum intelligeret omnes fere Gallos novis rebus studere, et ad bellum mobiliter celeriterque excitari, omnes autem homines natura libertati studere, et conditionem servitutis...
odisse; priusquam plures civitates conspirarent, partendum sibi ac latius distribuendum exercitum putavit.

XI.—Itaque Titum Labienum legatum in Treveros, qui proximi Rheno flumini sunt, cum equitatu mittit. Huic mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat, atque in officio contineat; Germanosque, qui auxilio a Belgis arcessiti dicebantur, si per vim navibus flumen transire contetur, prohibeat. Publium Crassum cum cohortibus legionariis duodecim et magno numero equitatus in Aquitaniam proficisci iubet, ne ex his nationibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur, ac tantae nationes coniungantur. Quintum Titurium Sabinum legatum cum legionibus tribus in Unellos, Curiosolitas, Lexoviosque mittit, qui eam manum distinendum curet. Decimum Brutum adolescentem classi, Gallicisque navibus, quas ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisque pacatis regionibus convenire iusserat, prae- ficit, et, cum primum posset, in Venetos proficisci iubet. Ipse eo pedestribus copiis contendit.

XII.—Erant eiusmodi fere situs oppidorum, ut, posita in extremis lingulis promontoriisque, neque pedibus aditum haberent, cum ex alto se aestus incitavisset—quod bis accidit semper horarum viginti quatuor spatio—neque navibus, quod, rursus minuente aestu, naves in vadis afflictingentur. Ita utraque re oppidorum oppugnatio impediebatur; ac, si quando magnitudine operis forte superati, extruso mari aggere ac molibus, atque his ferme oppidi moenibus adaequatis, suis fortunis desperare coeperant, magno numero navium appulso, cuius rei summam facultatem habebant, sua deportabant omnia, sequente oppida recipiebant. Ibi se rursus iisdem opportunitatibus loci defendebant. Haec eo facilius magnam partem aestatis faciebant, quod nostrae naves tempestatibus detinebant; summaque erat vasto atque aperto mari, magnis aestibus, raris ac prope nullis portibus, difficultas navigandi.

XIII.—Namque ipsorum naves ad hunc modum factae armataeque erant. Carinae aliquanto planiores, quam
nostrarum navium, quo facilius vada ac decessum aestus excipere possent: prorae admodum erectae, atque item puppes, ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestatumque accommodatae; naves totae factae ex robore ad quamvis vim et contumeliam perferendam: transtra pedalibus in latitudinem trabibus confixa clavis ferreis, digitis pollicis crassitudine: ancorae, pro funibus, ferreis catenis revinctae: pelles pro velis, alutaeque tenuiter confectae, sive propter lini inopiam atque eius usus inscientiam, sive eo, quod est magis verisimile, quod tantas tempestates Oceani tantosque impetus ventorum sustineri, ac tanta onera navium regi velis non satis commode arbitrabantur. Cum his navibus nostrae classi eiusmodi congressus erat, ut una celeritate et pulsu remorum praestaret, reliqua, pro loci natura, pro vi tempestatum, illis essent aptiora et accommodatiora: neque enim his nostrae rostro nocere poterant, tanta in eis erat firmitudo; neque propter altitudinem facile telum adiecebatur; et eadem de causa minus commode copulis continebantur. Accedebat, ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et se vento dedissent, et tempestatem ferrent facilius, et in vadis consisterebatur, et, ab aestu derelictae, nihil saxa et cautes tимерent: quem rerum omnium nostris navibus casus erant extimescendi.

XIV.—Compluribus expugnatis oppidis, Caesar, ubi intellexit frustra tantum laborem sumi, neque hostium fugam captis oppidis, reprimi, neque his noceri posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convenit, ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter ducentae et viginti naves eorum paratissimae atque omni genere armorum ornatissimae, profectae ex portu, nostris adversae consistiterunt: neque satis Bruto, qui classi praeerat, vel tribunis militum centurionibusque, quibus singulae naves erant attributae, constabat, quid agerent, aut quam rationem pugnae insistenter. Rostro enim noceri non posse cognovertant; turribus autem excitatis, tamen has altitudo puppium ex barbaris navibus superabat, ut neque ex inferiore loco satis commode tela adici possent, et missa The character of the enemy's fleet

The naval victory won by the Romans by an ingenious contrivance.
ab Gallis gravius acciderent. Una erat magno usui res praeparata a nostris, falces praecutae, insertae affixaeeque longuriis, non absimili forma muralium falcium. His cum funes, qui antennas ad malos destinabant, compre-
hensi adductique erant, navigio remis incitato praerumpe-
bantur. Quibus abscessis, antennae necessario concide-
bant, ut, cum omnis Gallicis navibus spes in velis
armamentisque consisteret, his ereptis, omnis usus navium
uno tempore eriperetur. Reliquum erat certamen positum
in virtute, qua nostri militæ facile superabant, atque eo
magis, quod in conspectu Caesaris atque omnis exercitus
res gerebatur, ut nullum paulo fortius factum latère posset:
omnes enim colles ac loca superiora, unde erat propinquus
despectus in mare, ab exercitu tenebantur.

XV.—Deiectis, ut diximus, antennis, cum singulas
binæ ac ternæ naves circumsteterant, militæ summa vi
transcendere in hostium naves contenderant. Quod
postquam barbari fieri animadverterunt, expugnati com-
pluribus navibus, cum ei rei nullum reperiaret auxilium,
fuga salutem petere contenderunt: ac, iam conversis in
eam partem navibus, quo ventus ferebat, tanta subito
malacia ac tranquillitas exstitit, ut se ex loco movere non
possent. Quae quidem res ad negotium conficiendum
maxime fuit opportuna: nam singulas nostri consectati
expugnaverunt, ut perpaucæ ex omni numero, noctis
interventu, ad terram pervenerint, cum ab hora fere
quarta usque ad solis occasum pugnaretur.

XVI.—Quo proelio bellum Venetorum totiusque oræ
maritimæ confectum est. Nam, cum omnis iuventus,
omnes etiam gravioris aetatis, in quibus aliquid consilii
aut dignitatis fuit, eo convenerant; tum, navium quod
ubique fuerat, unum in locum coegerant: quibus amissis,
reliqui, neque quo se recipierent, neque quemadmodum
oppida defenderent, habebant. Itaque se suaque omnia
Caesari dediderunt. In quos eo gravius Caesar vindican-
dum statuit, quo diligentius in reliquam tempus a barbaris
ius legatorum conservaretur. Itaque, omni senatu necato, reliquos sub corona vendidit.

SABINUS CRUSHES THE UNELLI.

XVII.—Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Quintus Titurius Sabinus cum iis copiis, quas a Caesare acceperat, in fines Unellorum pervenit. His praeerat Viridovix, ac summam imperii tenebat earum omniun civitatum, quae defeicerant, ex quibus exercitum magnasque copias coegerat. Atque his paucis diebus Aulerci Eburowices, Lexoviiique, senatu suo interfecto, quod auctores belli esse nolebant, portas cluserunt sequcum Viridovice coniunxerunt; magnaque praeterea multitudo undique ex Gallia perditorum hominum latronumque convenerant, quos spes praedandi, studiumque bellandi, ab agricultura et quotidianum labore revocabat. Sabinus idoneo omnibus rebus loco castris sese tenebat, cum Viridovix contra eum duum millium spatio consedisset, quotidieque productis copiis pugnandi potestatem faceret; ut iam non solum hostibus in contemptionem Sabinus veniret, sed etiam nostrorum militum vocibus nonnihil carperetur: tantamque opinionem timoris praebuit, ut iam ad vallum castrorum hostes accedere auderent. Id ea de causa faciebat, quod cum tanta multitudine hostium, praesertim eo absente, qui summam imperii teneret, nisi aequo loco, aut opportunitate aliqua data, legato dimicandum non existimabat.

XVIII.—Hac confirmata opinione timoris, idoneum quendam hominem et callidum delegit, Gallum, ex his, quos auxilii causa secum habebat. Huic magnis praemiis pollicitationibusque persuadet, uti ad hostes transeat; et, quid fieri velit, edocet. Qui ubi pro perfuga ad eos venit, timorem Romanorum ponit; quibus angustiis ipse Caesar a Venetis prenatur, docet: neque longius abesse, quin proxima nocte Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum educet, et ad Caesarem auxilii ferendi causa profisciscatur. Quod ubi audidit est, conclamant omnes, occasionem negotii bene gerendi
amittendam non esse, ad castra iri oportere. Multae res ad hoc consilium Gallos hortabantur: superiorum dierum Sabini cunctatio, perfugae confirmatio, inopia cibariorum, (cui rei parum diligenter ab iis erat provisum), spes Venetici belli, et quod fere libenter homines id, quod volunt, credunt. His rebus adducti, non prius Viridovicem reliquosque duces ex concilio dimittunt, quam ab his sit concessum, arma uti capiant et ad castra contendant. Qua re concessa, laeti, ut explorata victoria, sarmentis virgultisque collectis, quibus fossas Romanorum compleant, ad castra pergunt.


CRASSUS SUBDUES AQUITANIA.

XX.—Eodem fere tempore, Publius Crassus, cum in Aquitaniam pervenisset—quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et regionum latitudine, et multitudine hominum, ex tertia parte Galliae est aestimanda—cum intelligeret in his locis sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucis ante annis Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, legatus, exercitu pulso, interfectus

XXI.—Pugnatum est diu atque acriter, cum Sotiates, superioribus victoriis freti, in sua virtute totius Aquitaniae salutem positam putarent; nostri autem, quid sine imperatore, et sine reliquis legionibus, adolescentulo duce, efficere possent, perspici cuperent. Tandem, confecti vulneribus, hostes terga vertere. Quorum magno numero interfecto, Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiatum oppugnare coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus, vineas turresque egit. Illi, alias eruptione tentata, alias cuniculis ad aggerem vineasque actis—cuius rei sunt longe peritissimi Aquitani, propterea quod multis locis apud eos aerariae secturae sunt—ubi diligentia nostrorum nihil his rebus profici posse intellexerunt, legatos ad Crassum mittunt, seque in deditionem ut recipiat petunt. Qua re impetrata, arma tradere iussi, faciunt.

XXII.—Atque, in ea re omnium nostrorum intentis animis, alia ex parte oppidi Adcantuannus, qui summan imperii tenebat, cum sexcentis devotis, quos illi soldurios appellant—quorum haec est conditio, uti omnibus in vita commodis una cum his fruantur, quorum se amicitiae dediderint; si quid iis per vim accidat, aut eundem casum una ferant, aut sibi mortem consciscant: neque adhuc hominum memoria repertus est quisquam, qui, eo inter-
fecto, cuius se amicitiae devovissent, mortem recusaret—
cum iis Adcantuannus eruptionem facere conatus, clamore
ab ea parte munitionis sublato, cum ad arma milites
concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnatum esset, repulsus
in oppidum tamen, uti eadem deditions conditione uteretu-
tur, ab Crasso impetravit.

XXIII.—Armis obsidibusque acceptis, Crassus in fines
Vocatium et Tarusatium profectus est. Tum vero barbari
commoti, quod oppidum, et natura loci et manu munitionum,
paucis diebus, quibus eo ventum erat, expugnatum
cognoverant, legatos quoquoversus dimittere, coniurare,
obsides inter se dare, copias parare coeperunt. Mittuntur
etiam ad eae civitates legati, quae sunt citerioris Hispaniae,
finitimae Aquitaniae: inde auxilia ducesque arcessuntur.
Quorum adventu magna cum auctoritate, et magna cum
hominum multitudine, bellum gerere conantur. Duces
vero ii deliguntur, qui una cum Quinto Sertorio omnes
anmos fuerant, summamque scientiam rei militaris habere
existimabantur. Hi consuetudine Populi Romani loca
capere, castra munire, commeatibus nostros intercludere
instituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, suas copias
propter exiguitatem non facile diduci, hostem et vagari et
vias obsidere et castris satiis praesidii relinquere; ob eam
causam minus commode frumentum commeatumque sibi
supportari; in dies hostium numerum augeri; non
cunctandum existimavit, quin pugna decertaret. Hac re
ad consilium delata, ubi omnes idem sentire intellexit,
posterum diem pugnae constituit.

XXIV.—Prima luce, productis omnibus copiis, duplici
acie instituta, auxiliis in median aciem coniectis, quid
hostes consilii caperent exspectabat. Illi, etsi propter
multitudinem, et veterem belli gloriam, paucitatemque
nostrorum, se tuto dimicaturos existimabant, tamen tutius
esse arbitrabantur, obsessis viis, commeatu intercluso,
sine ullo vulnere victoria potiri: et, si propter inopiam rei
frumentariae Romani sese recipere coepissent, impeditos
in agmine et sub sarcinis, inferiores animo, adoriri
cogitabant. Hoc consilio probato ab ducibus, productis Romanorum copiis, sese castris tenebant. Hac re perspecta, Crassus (cum sua cunctatione atque opinione timoris hostes nostros milites alacriores ad pugnandum effecisset; atque omnium voces audiretur, exspectari diutius non oportere, quin ad castra iretur) cohortatus suos, omnibus cupientibus, ad hostium castra contendit.

XXV.—Ibi cum alií fossas complerent, alií, multis telis coniectis, defensores vallo munitionibusque depellerent auxiliaresque (quibus ad pugnam non multum Crassus confidebat) lapidibus telisque subministrandis, et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandis, speciem atque opinionem pugnantium praebèrent; cum item ab hostibus constanter ac non timide pugnaretur, telaque ex loco superiore missa non frustra acciderent; equites, circuitis hostium castris, Crasso renuntiaverunt, non eadem esse diligentia ab decumana porta castra munita facilemque aditum habere.

XXVI.—Crassus, equitum praefectos cohortatus, ut magnis praemiis pollicitationibusque suos excitarent, quid fieri velit, ostendit. Illì, ut erat imperatum, eductis quatuor cohortibus, quae, praesidio castris relictæ, intritæ ab labore erant, et longiore itinere circumductis, ne ex hostium castris conspici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque ad pugnam intentis, celeriter ad cas, quas diximus, munitiones pervenerunt, atque, his prorutis, prius in hostium castris constiterunt, quam plane ab iis videri, aut, quid rei gereretur, cognoscì possèt. Tum vero, clamore ab ea parte audito, nostri redintegratis viribus, quod plerumque in spe victoriae accidere consuevit, acris impugnare coeperunt. Hostes undique circumventi, desperatis omnibus rebus, se per munitiones deicere et fuga salutem petere intenderunt. Quos equitatus aper-tissimis campis consectatus, ex millium quinquaginta numero, quae ex Aquitania Cantabrisque convenisse constabat, vix quarta parte relictà, multa nocte se in castra recepit.

CAESAR AND THE MORINI.

XXVIII.—Eodem fere tempore Caesar, etsi propè exacta iam aestas erat, tamen, quod, omni Gallia pacata, Morini Menapiique supererant, qui in armis essent neque ad eum unquam legatos de pace misissent, arbitratus id bellum celeriter confici posse, eo exercitum adduxit: qui longe alia ratione, ac reliqui Galli, bellum agere instituerunt. Nam quod intelligebant maximas nationes, quae proelio contendissent, pulsas superatasque esse, continentessque silvas ac paludes habeabant, eo se suaque omnia contulerunt. Ad quarum initium silvarum cum Caesar pervenisset, cæstraque munire instituisset, neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostris, subito ex omnibus partibus silvae evolaverunt et in nostros impetum fecerunt. Nostri celeriter arma ceperunt, eosque in silvas repulerunt, et, compluribus interfectis, longius impedtioris locis sequuti paucos ex suis deperdiderunt.

XXIX.—Reliquis deinceps diebus Caesar silvas caedere instituit, et, ne quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam materiam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem collocabat, et pro vallo ad utrumque latus exstruebat. Incredibili celeritate magno spatio paucis diebus confecto, cum iam pecus atque extrema impedimenta ab nostris teneretur, ipsi densiores silvas peterent; eiusmodi sunt tempestates consequutae, uti opus necessario intermitteretur, et, continuatione imbrium, diutius sub pellibus milites contineri non possent. Itaque vastatis omnibus eorum agris, vicis aedificiisque incensis, Caesar exercitum reduxit, et in Aulercis, Lexoviiisque, reliquis item civitatibus, quae proxime bellum fecerant, in hibernis collocavit.
NOTES.

BOOK III.
NOTES.

BOOK III.

CHAPTER I.

The events of the first six chapters of Book III, belong to the autumn and early winter of 57 B.C.; the other chapters give a narrative of the events of 56 B.C.

* cum — Caesar:* "when Caesar was on his march to Italy." — *proficis-ceretur = in itinere esset:* for the force of the imperf. subj.: see F.L. 203, 3; P.L. iii., 99 f. The plan of opening up the road through the Alps was formed after Caesar began the march. — *in Italian:* why is the preposition expressed? Translate: he set out to Rome; he set out to Rome, a large city of Italy; he set out for home; he set out for the house of his father. Italy Proper (*Italia propria*) extended north as far as the Rubicon on the east, and the Arnus on the west. Evidently Caesar includes Gallia Cisalpina under the title of *Italia.*

* Servium Galbam:* afterwards one of the assassins of Caesar (B.C. 44). He was the great-grandfather of the Emperor Galba.

* cum legione duodecima:* Caesar had at this time eight legions in Gaul, numbering from the VII, to XIV, inclusive. According to Strabo, Caesar had lost two legions under the command of Q. Pedius (II., 2), which had been enrolled for the Belgic campaign. These had been treacherously attacked by the Salassi in ascending the Val d’Aosta. The present expedition was to check the mountain tribes. The *Nantuates* were in the present French Savoy, between the *Veragri* and the *Allobroges.* The *Veragri,* whose chief town was *Octodurus* (Martigny), occupied the Lower Valois, and the *Seduni,* the Upper Valois. Their chief town was *Sedunum* (Sitten or Sion). [See Map, i.]

* parte equitatus:* consisting of auxiliaries.

* finibus:* distinguish in meaning *finis,* *fines.* What other words differ in meaning in the singular and plural? In Vergil *finis* is masc. or fem.; in
Lucretius, only once fem., but in phrases hac, ea, qua, fine or fini the fem. gen. is constant.

**summas Alpes**: "the highest part of the Alps." The word Alpes is from the Keltic alp, "high," or "white": cp. Albania, Albyn, Albion, Alba, Albula, Albanus.

mittelii, scil. legionem or milites: the object after mittendi is sometimes omitted: cp. Ter. Phor. i., 1, 16, puer causa erit mittendi. Translate, "the cause thereof was," or "his reason was."

**iter per Alpes**: Pompey, twenty years before this, had connected Gaul and Italy by a road over Mount Genevère in a westerly direction. Caesar wished to make now a northern route for general traffic over the Simplon and the Great St. Bernard leading from Octodurus (Martigny) to Augusta Praetorium Salassorum (Aosta) founded some thirty years after, 26 B.C., by the Val Entremont and the Val du Grand St. Bernard. By this route Napoleon crossed the Alps on his venturesome expedition in May, 1800.

**quo—consuerant**: "by which traders generally travelled, but only at great risk, and after payment of heavy dues."—magnus—magnis: note the emphasis gained by placing the adjective before the preposition and also by repetition—portoriiis: custom duties levied on imports and exports, levies on goods passing through the country on rivers and roads, bridge tolls and the like.—periculo: rather refers to the dangers from the lawless mountain tribes than to the perils of the route, though these must have been considerable in the days when no friendly hospice was there.—mercatores: often mentioned by Caesar, i., 39; ii., 15; iv., 2, 3, 5, 20, 21; vi., 37. These were traders mainly from the Greek colony at Massilia (Marseilles), and were probably Greeks and Italians who followed the Roman camp.—consuerant: note that consuevi, like odii, memini, coepi, is a perfect form with a present meaning. Hence, consuevi=soleo; consueveram=solitus sum. The contracted forms of the verb are more common than the uncontracted ones.—patfieri: compounds of -facio with prepositions generally form the passive in -ficior, but with verbal stems and adverbs in -fio; as arefio, calefio, benefic, satisfist.

huic = Servio Galbae.

**hiemandi causa**: note the position of causā, generally after the word or words it governs: cp. gratiā.

proeliis—facta: a series of ablative absolutes is occasionally employed to express circumstances which follow in succession; first come the battles,
then the capture of the strongholds, later the sending of envoys, then the giving of hostages, and finally the ratification of peace. The order of the ablative absolutes will depend on the regard the writer has to variety and precision of expression: Madvig, 430.—castellis: "fortified villages": often used of the hamlets of the Alpine tribes as in Livy, 21, 33.—Distinguish in meaning expugno and oppugno.

constituit—collocare: when does constituto take an infinitive, and when ut with the subjunctive? F. L. 181, note 2; P. L. II., 198 (g), N.B. Translate into Latin: Caesar resolved to lead a legion to Rome: Caesar resolved that the lieutenant should lead a legion to Rome.

cohortes duas: about 1,000 men. Trace the successive meanings of the word cohors and the connection with our word court.

vico: the vicus was a row or group of houses in the open country in opposition to oppidum, a walled town. With the root vic are connected Foukoç, vicus, vicinus; English—wick, in Ipswich, Hawick.

Octodurus: the modern Martigny or Martinach. The name Octo-dur-us contains the Keltic dwr, "a river."

qui—continentur: "this hamlet lies in a valley with a plain of no great extent adjoining, and is shut in on every side by very high mountains."—vicus: the repetition of the antecedent with the relative is frequent in Caesar when exactness of expression is required.

flumine: to-day called the Drance, which flows into the bend of the Rhine not far from Octodurus (Martigny).

alteram—relictam: "the other part left free from them." The preposition follows vacuam, not relictam: see Bell. Gall. II., 1, 2: vacuum ab defensoribus.

eum locum: the post occupied by the Romans.

CHAPTER II.

cum dies—iussisset: "when several days of life in winter quarters had passed and he had ordered corn to be brought thither."—hibernorum, scil. castrorum, said of time as eo is of place.—eo—in eam partem vici, Octoduri or in eum locum. When does cum take the subjunctive, and when the indicative?

exploratores: legionary soldiers sent out to pick up intelligence, if single,
are termed *speculatores*: if in parties, *exploratores*. Distinguish *per exploratores, ab exploratoribus*: F. L. 223; P. L. II., 128.

*concesserat—impenderent*: the indicative proves that the remark is Caesar’s own, while the subjunctive shows that the statement is given on the authority of others: F. L. 207, note 2; P. L. II., 165 (a).—*montes*, evidently here low heights, for a javelin could be hurled from them.

*noctu*: an old ablative: cp. *diu*, *interdiu*.

*id aliquot—caperent*: *id* refers to what precedes, and *ut—caperent* is added to give more information: "that—their unexpected resolve to renew the war and crush the legion—had happened from several causes," or "several causes had contributed to this—their sudden resolve," &c.: cp. Caesar Bell. Gall. 1., 4: *damnatum—poenam sequi oportebat ut igni cremaretur*: the clause *ut igni cremaretur* defines *poenam*; so often.—*accidere* is here as elsewhere of unforeseen or unfavourable events.

*primum—despiciebant*: "in the first place, because they held in contempt that legion on account of its small numbers, and that not fully complete, inasmuch, as two cohorts had been taken from it and several individuals were absent who had been detailed for the purpose of obtaining supplies." The twelfth legion had suffered severely in the fight with the Nervii (B. II., c. 23).—*conmeatus* is genitive. The soldiers had gone to get supplies either from the merchants (*mercatores*), or the natives peacefully (B. II., c. 9) and not by foraging (*pabulatio* or *frumentatio*). The adverb *singillatim—singuli*: as *privatim—privati*: cp. Bell. Gall. 1., 17: *esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus*.

*tum etiam*: "secondly": cp. *primum*, above.

*iniquitatem loci*: "the disadvantages of the position," of our men.

*ipsi*: the mountaineers. Explain fully the mood and tense of *decurrerent* and *conicerent*.

*ne primum quidem impetum suum*: "not even their first onset": note the emphatic word is placed between *ne—quidem*.

*accedebat—habebant*: "to this was added their resentment at their children being torn away from them as hostages, and their conviction that the Romans not merely for the purpose of making roads, but for the purpose of permanent occupation were attempting to get possession of the heights of the Alps, and to unite these places to the neighbouring province." The phrase *accedebat quod* may be rendered: "and moreover"; literally,
there was added that”: the quod clause is the subject of accedebat. Distinguish accedit ut, introducing a historical fact, and accedit quod, giving a reason. Caesar here, as often, frankly gives the true reason of the outbreak: cp. v., 54; vii., 77.—obsidium nomine, “as hostages”: cp. B. vi., 19, dotis nomine; vii., 89, praedae nomine.—persuasum habebant like cognitum habebant: persuasum is neut. sing. acc. agreeing with the clause Romanos —adiungere: of course sibi depends on persuasum.

CHAPTER III.

his—acceptis: express this in other ways.

opus hibernorum, scil. castrorum: “the work on the winter quarters,” may refer to the work on the winter quarters as a whole, while the munitiones are the several defences comprising these. Others take opus hibernorum to include the laying out of streets, the adapting of the buildings already standing for the use of the soldiers, the erection of huts, etc., while munitiones refers to the construction of the fortifications, the wall and the ramparts mentioned in Chap. I., sub finem. Note that perfectae agrees with the nearest nominative.

neque provisum: “nor had sufficient provision been made for corn and other supplies.” What is the difference between providere with acc.; with dat. and with de and ablative? Often frumentum and commeatus without reliquus are used together since commeatus includes supplies other than corn (frumentum); B. i., 39, 48; III., 23. Sometimes reliquus is added as here.

consilio: a council of war probably composed of the tribuni militum and centuriones primorum ordinum, i.e., the eight centurions in command of the eight cohorts there encamped. Distinguish consilium, a select deliberate body, each member of which contributes something to the debate and hence often applied to a council of war; concilium, a large mass meeting assembled for some public purpose to accept or reject some proposal made.

tantum repentini periculi=tantum et tam repentimum periculum.

praeter opinionem: “contrary to expectation.” See note on acciderat Chapter II. Distinguish between nunc “at the present moment,” and iam, “already,” implying an act going on for some time in the past.

completa—conspicerentur: “were seen filled.” This participial construction is common in Greek and English, but not often found in Latin.

neque—possent: “and neither could relief come nor supplies be brought
up as the roads behind them were closed." After *veniri* supply *posset* from the *possent* which agrees with *commendatus* the nearest subject: literally, "could it be come up for (their) relief": the passive *veniri* is frequently used impersonally: cp. B. C. i., 67: *plerique censebant posse prius ad angustias veniri quam sentiretur*.—*subsidio* is a dative of purpose: F. L. 134. 1; P. L. III., 82 (c).—*itinribus* : F. L. 100, 5; P. L. III., 85 (o).

*desperata*—*salute* : Cicero always says *desperare salute* : Caesar always, *desperare de salute* except in chap. xii., infra; and B. vii., 50 when a dative is used but in the ablative absolute construction he uses *desperare salute* : B. v., 37; B. vi., 5. So also *desperata fuga, victoria*.

*impedimentis relictis eruptione facta* : these two ablative absolutes are not connected by a conjunction because the one is really subordinate to the other: "upon leaving the baggage if a sally was made" = *si, impedimentis relictis, eruptione facta esset*.

*ad salutem contenderent* : the expression seems to stand midway between the literal meaning of *contendere*, in *contendere ad oppidum*, when a definite locality is reached and *contendere ad laudem*, gloriam in which *contendere* means "to strive to attain": cp. Cic. Phil. xiv., 32; *ad laudem gloriamque contenderere*.—*salutem*, probably "a place of safety."

*hoc reservato—defendere* : "to reserve this plan to the last, and in the meantime to wait for results and defend the camp."—*placet* : *placet, non placet* are the technical words in the Roman senate: *placet*, "I vote yea" : *non placet*, "I vote nay"; with *placet* scil. *mihi*.

CHAPTER IV.

*brevi—daretur* : "a short space having intervened, so short, that time was scarcely allowed for arranging and carrying out those details which they had determined (to arrange and carry out)."—*brevi* is put first for emphasis; here we have inversion in order in *vix ut for ut vix* : cp. Bell. Gall. 1., 9; *vix qua singuli carri ducerentur* : here also *vix* is put first for emphasis. So also we have inversion with *vix* in Bell. Gall., B. ii., 28, *vix ad quingentos*.—*constituissent, scil. collocare et administrare* : *constituissent* is in subjunctive by attraction.—*collocare* is here "to arrange"; literally, "to put in place": cp. Bell. Alex. 33 : *sic rebus omnibus confertis et collocatis* : Cic. Epist. ad Brutum i., 15 : *ad collocandum civitatis statum*.

*decurrere—coniicere—repugnare—mittere—occurre—ferre* : historical infinitives put for the indicative: F. L. 216, 3, note 2; P. L. III., 101 (d). A succession of these is often used in rapid and animated description.
gaesa: the gaesum was a Gallic spear and the word was probably Keltic. It seems to have been a common weapon among the Alpine tribes: cp. Verg. Æn. viii. 661: Alpina coruscant Gaesa manu. They are described as javelins with a thick shaft and barbed iron head of extraordinary length.

nostri—mittere: "at first our men, so long as their strength remained undiminished, boldly withstood them, and hurled no dart without effect, since the ground they occupied was higher (than that occupied by the enemy)."
—nostri, scil. milites.—integris viribus: abl. absol.: F. L. 100, 5: P. L. iii., 85 (o).—ex loco superiore: the prepositional abl. absol. is often used when regularly we should have a present part. of sum, which does not exist: cp. Bell. Gall. 1, 33: in tanto imperio: in tanta rerum iniquitate. The Roman soldiers occupied the rampart (vallum).

ut—succeedebant: "as each part of the camp stripped of defenders seemed to be hard pressed (by the enemy), to this part they rushed and brought aid, but they were put to a disadvantage by this, that the enemy, exhausted by the length of the battle, withdrew from the fight, (whilst) other enemies with unimpaired strength relieved them."—defensoribus: abl. separation: F. L. 158, 2; P. L. iii., 85 (h).—premi, scil. ab hostibus.—co—in eam partem.—defesso: a very strong word: defatigatus expresses lassitude merely, not exhaustion.—proelio: F. L. 158, 2; P. L. iii., 85 (h).—alii, scil. hostes.—integris viribus: see above.

ac non modo—dabatur: "and not only to an exhausted man was the power of withdrawing from the fight not given, but not even to a wounded soldier was the opportunity afforded of leaving the spot where he had taken his stand, and of betaking himself to a place of safety."—non modo = non modo non: the second non may be omitted, as here, only when a negative (as ne quidem in this passage) follows, and then only when both clauses have a common predicate (as dabatur). It would be incorrect to omit the second non in such a sentence as non modo non interfuctus est, sed ne levissimum quidem vulnus accepit: cp. the omission of the second ov in the phrase ov μόνον ov in Greek.—defesso, scil. cuiquam.—sui recipiendi: F. L. 170, 3; P. L. iii., 104 (b).

CHAPTER V.

iam: "already."

amplius horis sex: the construction with the accusative is more common.
pugnaretur: continuous action.

nostris defecerent: deficere is also used with the accusative: Bell. Gall. v., 33; vii., 50.
languidioribus nostris: "and while our troops were becoming more faint" : F.L. 100, 5; P.L. III., 85 (o).

to tear down the palisades" (vallii), and thus effect an entrance.

fossas: plural, though there was probably only one ditch around the camp.

resque—casum: "and when the battle was by this time brought to a final crisis." Res is a generic word and may have a wide application.

primi pili centurio: originally the first centurion of the triarii, afterwards the chief centurion of the legion.

Nervico proelio: "in the battle with the Nervii" mentioned B. II., 25. If Nerviorum had been used for Nervico, Caesar would have said in proelio.

C. Volusius Quadrigatus: mentioned B. IV., 2; VI., 41; VIII., 23, 48: B.C. III., 60. Caesar elsewhere speaks of him with commendation and he is the only one of all the tribunes so mentioned.

et consilii et virtutis (magnae): "of great resource and bravery" :— F.L. 130, 7, 8; P.L. III., 81 (e).

si—experirentur: "if they should try the only remedy left them by making a sortie."—experirentur: imperf. subj. because docent is a historical present: F.L. 216, 2 (a); P.L. III., 107 (a), iii.

certiorem facere. This construction of certiorem facere is only used when a command is implied.—Parumper is commonly used when future time is meant as here.—tantummodo exciperent: "should merely receive (on their shields) the darts hurled (at them)," i.e., should act simply on the defensive and not hurl a weapon in return.

CHAPTER VI.

quod=id quod.—iusse sunt, scil. facere.

omnibus portis: ablative of place from which: F.L. 158, 2; P.L. III., 85 (h), i.—fieret: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. 99 (d).

sui colligendi: "of rallying themselves": sui is plural referring to hostibus: colligendi agrees with sui in form but not in number: cp. sui recipiendi: Chap. v., B. III.
eos—interficiunt: "they surround on all sides and slay those who had entertained the hope of taking the camp."—potiundorum old form for potiundorum. Verbs that do not govern an accusative have no gerundive, but potior, fruor, fungor, utor, vescor, governing the ablative, have the gerundive, because in old Latin they govern an accusative.

amplius, as plus below, is an adverb without any influence on the construction.

armisque exutis: “and being stripped of their arms”: armis is the ablative of separation after exutis: F.L. 158, 2; P.L. III., 85 (h). The meaning, however, is that they threw away their arms, as Caesar did not take them from the men.

atque—viderat: “and remembered that he had come into winter quarters with one design, (but) saw that he had found the situation different (from what he had expected).” Note that meminerat is perf. in meaning, not pluperf. like vidérat.—ali—aliis: note the absence of the conjunction (as syndeton). The idea is that he had to face a state of affairs quite incompatible with the purpose for which he came.

frumenti—commeatusque: see note Chap. III.

reverti: distinguish in meaning revertor, “to turn back” on a journey: redeo, “to go back” after a journey is completed. The tenses derived from the present of revertor are passive in form; those from the perfect are active.

Allobrogas: a nation lying along the line from Vienne to Geneva, between the Rhone and the Isère; (cp. B. G. i., 10, where they are mentioned as being in the Roman provinitia). As soon as Galba had crossed the Tête Noire, he would have a comparatively level march by Chamounix to Sallen-chus and so to Vienne.

demorante: demoror is elsewhere used by Caesar, but in Cicero only once.

CHAPTER VII.

quum—est: "though Caesar had every reason to think (literally, thought for all reasons) that Gaul was subdued, in consequence of the defeat of the Belgae, the expulsion of the Germans, the conquest of the Seduni (who dwell) among the Alps, and when, under these circumstances, at the beginning of winter he had set out for Illyricum, because he desired to visit those tribes also, and to become acquainted with that district, a war arose suddenly in Gaul.” Notice that quum is both causal and temporal.—pacatam:
a euphemistic expression for *victam*—*Belgis superatis*: see Book II., Chapters I.-XXXIII.—*expulsis Germanis*: referring to the war against Ariovistus, B. I., Chapter XXX.-LIV.—*Sedunis*: the Seduni are mentioned, as they were the most important of the Alpine tribes.—*inita*: equivalent to *prima*.

—*Illyricum*= *ad Illyricum*: F.L. 85, 1; P.L. III., 83 (g). The provinces of Illyricum and the two Gauls were assigned to Caesar for five years, B.C. 59. In April, 56 B.C., Caesar was at Luca, where he had an interview with Pompey and Crassus, the former of whom he had previously met at Ravenna. The result of this conference was that Pompey and Crassus were to be nominated consuls for the ensuing year, and that Caesar's command was to be extended for another five years.—*quod*—*volebat*: distinguish this in meaning from *quod*—*vellet*:

*haec*: "as follows": note that *hic* may refer to what follows (corresponding in this case to ὅδε, τοιόσοδε in Greek) or to what precedes (corresponding to οὖτος, τοιοῦτος).

*proximus mare*: "very near the sea," not "next the sea," as the Andes were not contiguous to the ocean.—*proximus* is used with a dative or accusative. With *mare Oceanum*: *cp. flumen Rhenus; terra Gallia*. The district of the Andes was in the modern Anjou.

*prefectos tribunosque militum*: the *praefecti* were officers of the allied troops (*socii*); the *tribuni militum* officers of the legion, six being attached to each legion, so that each tribune had charge of about 1,000 men and had 10 centurions under him.

*quo in numero*: the regular Latin expression for "in the number of whom."

*Curiosolites* lived around Dinan and St. Malo: the *Sesuvii*, in eastern Normandy, about Falaise, while the *Veneti* occupied Vannes, in Bretagne.

**CHAPTER VIII.**

*huius—earum*: taking *amplissima* as a superlative relative translate: "the influence of this state is by far the most extensive of the whole seaboard of that district"; or taking *amplissima* as a superlative absolute which we often find combined with *longe* in Caesar; translate: "the influence of this state is very great indeed over the whole seaboard of that district."
**BOOK III.**

*quaod—habent*: distinguish this form *quaod—habeant*: F. L. 198, 2; F. L. II., 165 (a), (b).

*in Britanniam navigare*: the Veneti probably got from Britain tin and other metals, skins and wool. We also learn from Caesar (Bell. Gall. vi., 13) that Gallic youths were sent to Britain to finish their education under the Druids and the seat of Gallic Druidism was in the district between the Seine and the Loire, near the country of the Veneti.

*consuerunt*: what verbs have a perfect form with a present meaning? See note on *consuerat*, Chap. I.

*scientia atque—rerum*: “in the knowledge and especially in the practice of seamanship”: F. L. 71, 3; P. L. III., 85 (a). Distinguish in use:—*que, et, atque*.

*in—aperto*: “being on an open sea of great violence”: hypallage=*in magni impetu mari aperto*: literally, “in a great and exposed onset of the sea”: so we have *mitis supientia Laeli*: “the mild and wise Laelius.” Note the prepositional ablative absolute: see note Chap. IV., B. III.

*paucis—interiectis*: “with few ports at intervals” (on the coast): F. L. 100, 5; P. L. III., 85 (o).

*tenet ipsi*: “they keep in their own hands”; note the emphatic position of *ipsi*.

*omnes fere*: what is the usual position of *fere*? The reference is to the fact that from the fewness of the ports many would be compelled to take refuge in the harbours of the Veneti and thus forced to pay tribute. *Vestigates*, properly persons who paid *vectigal*, a general name for taxes levied on goods, lands, &c., and therefore variable with the assessment: *stipendium*, a fixed tax generally paid by conquered states for the maintenance of the Roman army.

*ab his—retinendi*: “these take the first step by detaining Silius and Velanius.”

*quaod—existimabunt*: distinguish this form *quaod—existimarent*: F. L. 198, 2; P. L. II., 165 (a), (b).

*per eos*: note that *per* often expresses inferior agency.

*Gallorum—consilia*: Caesar often refers to the fickle character of the Gauls: the same is true of their modern descendants.—*Subitus*, that which comes quick, whether expected or not: *repentinus*, that which comes unexpected.
coniurant: "they form a league."

quam-acceperant: a remark of Caesar’s own and hence the indicative. Others read acceperint, using the words of the Veneti.

Romanorum servitutem: subjective genitive: "the slavery imposed by the Romans."

si—remittat: turn this into direct narrative.

CHAPTER IX.

quod—longius: as mentioned in a note on Chap. vii., Caesar was at Luca in Etruria in the spring of 56 B.C. Distinguish in meaning quod aberat and quod abesset: F. L. 198, 2; P. L. ii., 165 (a), (b).

naves longas: ships may be conveniently divided into (a) war ships, called by the Romans naves longae, because they were long and narrow and, therefore, fitted for swift sailing: (cp. Gk. νῆς μακραί, νῆς ταχεῖα) and (b) ships of burden, called by the Romans naves onerariae: (cp. Gk. πλοῖα, φορτικά, ύλικάδες) made for carrying heavy loads, and, therefore, bulky and broad.

in Oceanum: Caesar ordered the ships to be built on the Loire, on the south side, opposite the spot where the Mayenne flows into it, below Angers. Note that quod agrees in gender with the generic word flumen, as Liger is masc.; so B. ii., chap. v.: flumen Axonam quod.

institui: "to be procured."

cum primum—potuit: scil. administrare from administratis: "as soon as he could do so by the time of the year"; i.e., as soon as the season permitted. Distinguish in meaning cum primum—potuit and cum primum—posset in B. iii., chap. xi.—For the force of per, cp. B. ii., chap. xvi.: mulieres quique per aetatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur.

cognito Caesaris adventu: express this in other ways. Some have after adventu, certiores facti and understand de magnitudine periculi. In that case translate: "the Veneti and likewise the rest of the states upon hearing of Caesar’s arrival being fully made aware of the extent of the danger"; or "when Caesar’s arrival was known, being informed (of the fact)."

simul quod—coniectis: "at the same time because they were aware how great a crime they had committed by detaining and casting into prison ambassadors—a title which had always been holy and inviolate among all nations." Distinguish in meaning facinus, (from facio), a bold, daring
crime, generally in a bad sense unless joined with a qualifying adjective: scehts, guilt or wickedness; flagitium, a disgraceful crime, as adultery.—admississent: for the mood: F. L. 176, 2; P. L. III., 99 (d).—facinus in me admitto, literally, “I put a crime upon myself,” i.e., I commit a crime.—From legatos to coniectos is in apposition to facinus. Caesar calls the praefecti and tribuni in chapter VI., legati to suit his purpose. For the punishment meted out to those who violated the ius legatorum: cp. Cic. de Leg. Man.: chap. v.: legati quod erant appellati superbius, Cornithum patres vestri, totius Graeciae lumen, extinctam esse voluerunt.—ad omnes = apud omnes: as in 1., 31; IV., 16; v., 53; VII., 5.—fuisset: F. L. 198, 4; P. L. III., 99 (e).

ad usum navium = ad navigationem: “for sailing,” or “for the requirement of ships.”

instituunt = incipiunt.

hoc maiore spe: “their hopes being higher on this account.”—spe: abl. absol.: hoc: abl. means.

quod—confidebant: the indicative expresses an actual fact. What would considerent express? F. L. 198, 2; P. L. II., 165 (a), (b).

aestuariis: the whole coast from the mouth of the Loire to Brest in Finisterre is full of arms of the sea.

locorum: “of the coast.”

ac iam ut—acciderent: “nay, allowing that everything was already happening contrary to their expectations.” For force of ut: F. L. 196, 7; P. L. 99 (i), ii. Iam ut with subjunctive followed by tamen as here introduce a suppositional case, while etsi with the indicative, followed by tamen introduces an actual fact.

posse, scil. sciebant.

neque = et non.—ubi = in quibus locis.

longe aliam—atque: “very different from.”

in concluso mari: like the Mediterranean.

ubi—constabat: scil., inter se: “when it was believed among them.”

Lexovios: the name still survives in the modern Lisieux: Diablintes, in Jablins; Nantuates, in Nantes. The Morini were a sea-coast people (from the Keltic mor, a sea), whose territories extended from Boulogne northward as far as Dunkerque.
Britannia: this is incorrect. Caesar made the invasion of Britain under the pretext that the Gauls were aided by their countrymen in Britain in their wars against the Romans: B. iv., chap. xx.

CHAPTER X.

erant: note emphatic position: "there were really the following difficulties."

iniuriae—Romanorum: "the wrongs done by the detention of the Roman knights." The legati mentioned in the previous chapter were of equestrian rank. For the objective genitive: cp. Livy. iv., 32; scelus legatorum contra ius gentium interfectorum. The plural iniuriae shows that several suffered detention.

rebellio—deditionem: "the renewal of the war after submission." Note the meaning of rebellio.

in primis—arbitrarentur: scil., timor, after in primis in apposition to multa: "above all the apprehension, that, if he did not attend to this district, the rest of the tribes would think that they might do the same."—haec parte neglecta—si haec pars neglecta esset.—idem, subject of licere, which is impersonal.—It is generally supposed that the Veneti were afraid that Caesar was, at this time, contemplating an invasion of Britain, and that the conquest of the island would destroy their commerce.

novis rebus studere: (cp. Gk. νεωτερισθεν); "are fond of a change of government."

et—excitari: cp. B. ii., chap. i.; qui nobilitate et levitate animi novis rebus studebant. Caesar often mentions fickleness as a characteristic of the Gauls; see note chap. viii., B. iii.

prior quam—conspirarent: the only case of conspirare in Caesar; elsewhere he uses coniurare. What two reasons for the subjunctive? F.L. 201, 5; 206, 4; P.L. iii., 99 (f), iv.


CHAPTER XI.

Treveros: the name still exists in the modern Trèves.

proximi flumini: what other constructions are used with proximi? See chap. vii.
huic mandat—adeat—contineat—prohibeat: note that ut is often omitted with mandat: F.L. 181, 3; P.L. III., 99 (a), 2.

in officio: "in allegiance."

auxilio: dative of purpose: F.L. 134, 1; P.L. III., 82 (c)—arcessiti, scil. esse.

contentur: for subjunctive: F.L. 206, 4; P.L. III., 99 (e).

cum duodecim: probably the cohorts were drawn from different legions.

Aquitania: the district from the Garonne to the Pyrenees, occupied by the Basques, a different race from the inhabitants of Gallia proper.

tanteae nationes: the Galli and Aquitani.

qui eam—curet: "to see to the dispersion of this force." Explain the mood of curet.

Unellii or Venelli dwelt on the peninsula of Cotantin, and had a capital, Crociatonum, near Valoques, south of Cherbourg. The Curiosolites bordered on the Redones towards the east and the Veneti to the south. Their name is still preserved in Corscit, south of St. Malo. The Pictones or Pictoni were on the south side of the lower Loire. Their name still survives on the modern Poilou. Along with the Santones they occupied all the coast from the Loire to the Garonne.

quum primum possit: the subjunctive expresses that his setting out depended on the attendant circumstances: see note, Chap. IX., B. II.

CHAPTER XII.

fere: "as a rule": "as a general thing."

situs: note the plural: the English idiom requires the singular. Good examples of such positions would be Mont St. Michael in Normandy and St. Michael’s Mount in Cornwall.

in—promontoriisque: "situated at the ends of tongues and headlands." The lingulae were low "tongues" of land running out into the sea, of which good examples are the Point de Croisic, on which the town of Croisic is situated and the tongue of Quiberon, both insulated at high water. The promontoria were high and rocky. It makes little difference whether we write promontorium or promuntorium: both are connected with the root min, "to jut": cp. mons, (originally mins), minae.

pedibus: "on the land side."
aditum haberent = adire possent. Habeo (as ἔχω in Greek) has often this meaning: cp. illud affirmare pro certo habeo: Livy 44, 22.

cum incitavisset: "as often as the tide had set in from the deep": for this force of cum: cp. L. III., 13: cum ventus saequare coepisset. What is the derivation of aestus?

spatio: for the case: F. L. 82, 2; P. L. III., 85 (b), iii.

navibus: construe erant eiusmodi fore situs oppidorum ut posita in lingulis promontoriiisque necque navibus aditum haberent.

quot—afflictarentur: "because as the tide went down (i.e., at ebb tide), ships would get dashed on the shallows."—minuente aestu: F. L. 100, 5; P. L. III., 85, (o).—minuo is here intransitive.

utraque re: "by both circumstances," i. e., by the ebb and flow of the tide.

ac, si quando—recipiebant: translate the participles by finite verbs for an English version: "and, if ever it so happened, that they were baffled by the extent of our works and began to despair of their success, when the sea had been thrust back by a dyke and dams and these had attained the level of the walls of the town, then they would bring up a number of vessels, for doing which they had the best means, and thus they would remove all their effects, and withdraw to neighbouring towns."—extruso—molibus: at low tide Caesar built two dykes, parallel to each other, to keep out the tide at high water, and when the tide was out he built a cross wall at the end to keep out the sea. In this way they used each back of the wall as an agger. Others take aggere et molibus as a hendiadys: "by massive dykes."—his—adaequatis: it seems a matter of indifference whether we take adaequare intransitive, "to be equal to," and hence his adaequatis would be abl. abs. and moenibus, a dative, or adaequare may be taken transitively "to reach," and then moenibus adaequatis is abl. absol., and his is abl. of means.—suis fortunis: dative: as also in B. VII., 50; sibi desperans. Elsewhere Caesar uses de aliqua re desperare.—cuius rei—habeant. Others translate: "of which part of the service they had a large number."

iisdem—locis: "with the same advantage of position."

magnam partem: acc. of extent of time.

do facilius: "all the more easily."

vasto—portibus: abl. absolutes: "when the sea was so boundless and open, the waves so great, the harbours so few and far between,"
CHAPTER XIII.

Namque closely connects the preceding narrative with what follows: "(the Veneti have not the same difficulty in navigating these waters as we) for, etc."

hunc: "the following"; the different particulars given afterwards.

armatae: "rigged out"; cp. νῆς ὑπὲλίποντας Od. 17, 228.

carinae—navium: scil. fuerunt: "their bottoms were considerably more flat than those of our ships."—carina originally meant the "shell of a nut"; akin to the Greek κάρυον, "a nut"; from root καρ, "hard"; cp. κέρας, cernu: German hart: Eng. hard. Then it came to signify the hull, bottom, keel of a vessel. So also φάσιθνος, "a kidney bean," was used for a light boat.

quo—possent: "that they might be able the more easily to take the shallows and the ebb of the tide."—quo: when is quo used for ut? F. L. 183, 5; P. L. III., 99. 1. Tacitus (Ann. II., 6) when speaking of the ships used on the coast of the Netherlands says: planae carinis, ut sine noxa siderent.

prorae, scil. erant navibus: "the ship had prows."

ad quamvis—perferendum: "to withstand any violence and bad usage, however great."—quamvis: literally, "any you please," i.e., no matter how great.—contumeliam: originally means "violence" or "blows." It is generally said of persons.

transstra—crassitudine: scil. erant: "the cross timbers consisted of beams a foot thick, riveted with iron bolts of the thickness of a man's thumb."—transstra: originally "row benches"; here said of cross timbers used to support the deck and to give solidity to the vessel.—pedalibus trabibus: abl. of description: F. L. 131, 9; P. L. III., 85 (c).—altitudinem here equivalent to crassitudinem.—digiti pollicis in apposition, as flumen Rhenus because pollex is used for both thumb and great toe; digiti is, therefore, added for the sake of clearness.

pro funibus: hemp ropes were liable to be chafed on rough ground and also to be damaged by the alternate wet and dry weather to which they were exposed.

pelles—confectae: scil., erant Venetis: "(the Veneti had) skins for sails, and hides thinly dressed." The sails of the Romans were made of flax and called carbasa: the Veneti used skins with the hair on (pelles) or hides dressed (alutae) with alum (alumen).
eius usus: literally, “the use of it.” — eius is governed by usus, and refers to lini.—quod—abitrabantur: “because they thought that so tempestuous an ocean and such violent winds could not be very well resisted and that such heavy vessels could not be very well managed by sails.” — tantas tempestates Oceanis tantarum tempestatum Oceanum, by hypallage, — tanta onera navium tam graves naves: “so cumbersome vessels,” the abstract for the concrete.—velis refers to the canvas sails such as the Romans used.—abitrabantur: why indicative? F. L. 198, 2; P. L. III., 213, 2.

cum—accommodatione: “the encounter of our fleet with their vessels was of such a kind that ours had the advantage in speed alone, and in the working of the oars: everything else, considering the character of the coast and the violence of the storms was more suitable and adapted for them.” —illis = Venetis.

his: what verbs govern the dative? F. L. 105, 9; P. L. III., 82 (e), i. —rostro: abl. of means. The rostrum: the beak or ram of an ancient Roman ship consisted of a strong beam projecting from the prow beneath the water and furnished with sharp points of metal.

neque—adicietabatur: “nor could a dart easily be thrown so far on account of their height.” —adicietabatur = adici poterat.

et—continebantur: “and for the same reason they were less advantageously held by the grappling irons,” of the Romans.—copulis: otherwise called manibus ferreis, harpagonibus, “grappling hooks” by which the Romans caught hold of the enemy’s vessels and drew them alongside their own.

accedebat ut—extimescendus: “there was added the fact that when the breeze began to blow hard and when they were running before the wind, they could both more easily withstand the storm and more safely ride amid the shallows, and when left by the tide, they feared not at all the rocks and reefs: the danger from all which things was greatly to be feared by our ships.” Distinguish between accedit ut with the subjunctive introducing a historical fact, and accedit quod with the indicative introducing a clause giving a reason.—se vento dare, literally “to give oneself to the wind,” i.e., in nautical parlance, to run before the wind.—facilius—tutius: note the emphatic position of these adverbs.—ab aestu: aestus is here personified, hence ab: F. L. 71, 2; P. L. III., 82 (d), i.—reiectae: the ebbing tide left the flat bottomed boats safely on the bottom.—mhil: (derived from, either, ne, old negative = non, and hilum, a mark, or ne, filum, a thread) is often used emphatically for non: cp. Cic. in Rull. II., 23: Pompeius beneficius isto legis nihil utitur: Livy IV., 33: ea species nihil territur equos. So
also the Greeks used οὐδὲν for an emphatic οὐ. — saxa — cautes: generally saxa (Gk. πέτραι) are large masses of stone of whatever shape: cautes are rough, jagged peaks generally under water.— navibus: F.L. 173, 4 : P.L. III., 82 (d).

CHAPTER XIV.

expugnatis : distinguish in meaning expugno and oppugno.

ubi — sumi : "feeling that all this labour was being expended to no purpose." — laborem sumere, "to take pains."

frustra: distinguish frustra, in vain, disappointed expectations, so far as the subject is concerned: nequidquam, in vain, absence of success, so far as the result is concerned: incassum, in vain, involving a want of consideration.

captis oppidis: "by taking the towns." Notice that often a verbal noun in English is translated by the participle in Latin. Translate: after the conquest of Gaul: from the foundation of Rome.


statuit exspectandam classem: "he made up his mind to await the arrival of the fleet." Caesar means all the fleet.

quae — visa est: the Veneti seem to have sailed forth from the river Aurray when the approach of the Romans from the Loire was signalled by them. The battle between the fleets probably took place in the Bay of Quiberon and was viewed by Caesar's army from the neighbouring heights of St. Gildas. As the Veneti far surpassed the Romans in number and equipment of vessels, the victory of the Romans was all the more signal.

— primum, scil. ubi.

armorum: "equipment." The word includes not merely arms but also the ship's tackling: so it means the complete equipment of a vessel: cp. Gk. ἀρμα.

neque— vel: it is very unusual to have neque or nec used once without another neque or nec following. In place of vel we might have aut or ve, which latter is probably the correct reading.

quibus — attributae: "who had taken charge of several ships."

quid agerent— insisterent: "what they were to do or what plan of fighting they were to adopt." For the mood in agerent— insisterent: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. III., 99 (a).— insistere: properly, "to set oneself to."
rostro: what two cases may this be?

turribus—excitatis: “even though towers were erected,” on the Roman ships: the abl. abs. is here equivalent to a concessive clause. Ships so furnished with towers were called naves turritae. Note that the regular construction would require has to be omitted and turribus excitatis changed to turres excitatas, as the object of superabat. The text, though ungrammatical, is far more forcible than the regular form. We find a parallel to this construction in B. v., 4: principibus convocatis hos conciliavit.

ex—navibus: “on the side of the barbarian vessels.”

ut—acciderent: “so that missiles could not very well be thrown into them from a lower standing place, and those discharged by the Gauls descended with greater force.” No doubt the weight of the Roman telum prevented its being thrown to any great height and the Gauls therefore, have a double advantage from the height of the bulwarks of their vessels.

una res: no doubt the victors would have lost the victory without this weapon. Caesar purposely avoids mentioning the possibility of a defeat.
—usui: F.L. 134, 1; P.L. 82 (e).

falces praecutae: in apposition to res. The sharp edged hooks of the Romans fastened to long poles (B. iv., 17), like the falces murales employed in pulling down the turf walls of the enemy.

non—falcium: understand formae after absimili: “of a shape not different from the shapes of hooks used in sieges.” For case of forma: F.L. 131, 9; P.L. iii., 85 (e).—formae: F.L. 6, 3; P.L. iii., 82 (e), v. These long hooks reached and cut the enemy’s rigging and thus the ships of the enemy, propelled by sails only, would be left unmanageable.

funes—destinabant: “the ropes which made the sail yards fast to the mast.”—antennas: “the sail yards,” called by the Greeks κερατα. The Romans had no technical word for these ropes. They afterwards adopted the Greek word ceruchi (κηροῦχοι).

navigio—praerumpabantur: “they were broken off by getting the ship under way.”—navigio incitato: abl. abs. Explain fully the tenses in comprehensi erant and praerumpabantur.

quibus—abscissis: so far as meaning is concerned it matters little whether abscessis (from absceindo) or abscisis (from abscido) is the correct reading.

concidebant: “fell all in a heap.”
Gallicis navibus: "on the part of the Gallic ships"; F.L. 134, 2; P.L. iii., 82 (f), i.—armamentis: same as arma, above.

usus navium: "control of the vessels."—uno = eodem.

reliquum: note the emphatic position: F.L. 231, 7; P.L. iii., 110 (b).

ut—posset: "so that no act a little braver than usual was able to escape notice": with fortius, scil. solito, i.e., no act at all distinguished.

CHAPTER XV.

cum—circumsteterant: "when two or three ships had surrounded one.” It is not to be supposed that the Romans outnumbered the ships of the Veneti. The Romans concentrated their forces on one vessel at a time instead of fighting the enemy in a general engagement. Explain the force of the distributive: F.L. 79, 8; P.L. 261 (c). The indicative with cum shows that the time in two clauses is coincident or nearly so.

transcendere—naves: “tried to board the ships of the enemy.”

contendebant: the imperfect here is used of a repeated act: F.L. 216, 3; P.L. iii., 97 (b).

quod=et hoc, i.e., “such tactics,” “such a stratagem.”

cum—auxilium: “when no remedy was discovered against this movement”: literally, “a remedy for this thing.”—ei rei = navium expugnatione.

ac iam—possent: “and all along the vessels being turned in that direction in which the wind drove them, suddenly so great a stillness and calm ensued that they could not move from their position.” Distinguished iam, time to the present and including it; nunc, the present moment.—quo=in quam partem.—subito: note emphatic position. What would be the usual position?—malacia, a pure Greek word μαλακία. It is quite possible that Caesar added tranquillitas to express the force of the Greek word. The Gallic ships had no oars.

quidem adds emphasis to the relative: “this circumstance indeed.”

negotium: here “engagement.” Derive negotium.

perpauae: notice that Caesar prefers perpauci to paucissimi.

pervenerint: others read pervenirent. The perfect lays stress on the fact occurring at a given period of time, here expressed by noctis interventu, and means that very few ships reached land then or after. The imperfect would express the fact as a consequence of a preceding preposition.
ab hora—quarta: The Roman day began at six a.m., and lasted to six p.m.; divided into twelve equal parts. The night was generally divided into four watches (quattuor vigiliae) extending from 6 p.m. to 6 a.m. It is probable that the battle here mentioned was fought about the time of the autumnal equinox; so that quarta hora would be about 10 o’clock in the morning.

CHAPTER XVI.

bellum Venetorum: “the war against the Veneti”: note the objective genitive.

cum—tum: “not only—but also.”

gravioris aetatis: “of more advanced age”: gen. of description.

navium quod ubique fuerat: “all their ships”: literally, “whatever of ships had been (to them) every where.”—navium partitive genitive: F.L. 69, 10; P.L. III., 81 (b).

reliqui—habebant: “the rest had nowhere to betake themselves, nor any means of defending their towns.”—quo recipere—ut eo recipere: Others take habebant = sciebant: see note Chap. xii, B. iii.

in quos—statuit: “on these Caesar thought that he ought to inflict punishment the more severely on this account, in order that the right of ambassadors might be observed more scrupulously in future by the barbarians.”—vindicare in aliquem is properly “to claim a right against a person,” hence “to punish a person.” For the reference to ius legatorum: see B. iii., c. ix.

necato: Caesar’s rigour against his enemies is well known.

sub corona: referring to the old custom of selling the captives in war with a corona or chaplet on their head.

CHAPTER XVII.

dum—geruntur: F.L. 201, 3; P.L. III., 99 (f), iii.—cum iis copiis: “with these legions”: see Chap. xi.

pervenit: either present or perfect; cp. Caes. i., 46, dum haec geruntur... nuntiatum est; v., 22, dum—geruntur... Cassivelaunus... mittit.

his: for dative; F.L. 120, 2; P.L. III., 82 (e), ii.
...summam imperii: "the supreme command": cp. B. l., 41, II., 4, belli
summam; VI., II, summa omnium rerum.

ex quibus—coegerat: "from among whom he had assembled an army
and great forces." Schneider says that copias means "men" and not
"things" and that the phrase copias cogi or coactas always refers to "men.
Besides Caesar in the next chapter says that no attention was paid to collect-
ing supplies.

his paucis diebus: "within the past few days." Note the use of his
referring to a time near the present, i.e., after the arrival of Sabinus. For
the case: F.L. 82, 2; P.L. III., 85 (b).

Aulerci Eburovices: the Aulerci formed four cantons in Gaul. [See
proper names.] The Aulerci Eburovices were often called Eburones, N.
w. of the Carnutes, along the west bank of the Sequana (Seine), above
Lutetia (Paris). Their chief town was Mediolanum, afterwards Eburovices
(now Evreux).

auctores belli: "the originators of the war."

nolebant: supply senatores from senatu.

perditorum—latronum: men were perditi who were without means,
ruined financially. So Caesar speaks of the followers of Catiline, cives perditi.
Translate "of men of broken fortunes and marauders": probably a
class of men who lived a wild, marauding life.

quos—revocabat: "whom the hope of booty and the love of fighting
were alluring away from the tillage of the soil and from regular work."
The war against the Gauls was now in its third year, so that the primitive
life of the people was now being demoralized.

loco: ablative absolute: "his position being in all respects convenient." —castris with tenebat: F.L. 85, 3; P.L. II., 125 (a).

duum—spatio: "at a distance of two miles." —duum millium scil.
passuum.—duum is an archaic form for duorum: so also the archaic geni-
"drachmum, mnummum, talentum following numerals.—spatio: why
ablative? F.L. 58, 6; P.L. 160 (d).

hostibus=hostium: "in the eyes of the enemy": F.L. 134, 2; P.L. III., 82 (f).

nostrorum—carpetur: "in our soldier's talk was to a certain extent
criticized."

vocibus: in the plural voces has the meaning often of "abuse," "cla-
Distinguish in meaning nonnihil, nihil non; nonnulli, nulli non; non nemo; nemo non; nonnull quam, nunquam non; nonnusquam, nusquam non.

*tantamque*—praebuit: “and he conveyed so great an impression of cowardice.”

*id* refers back to *castris se tenebat*.

*praesertim*—existimabat: “he (Sabinus) thought that he, as a lieutenant-general, ought not to fight especially in the absence of his commander-in-chief.”—*teneret*: F.L. 198, 4; P.L. III., 85 (a), ii, foot note 2.

**CHAPTER XVIII.**

*idoneum*—delegit: “he picked a man suited to his purpose and adroit.”

*Distinguish in meaning* diligo and deligo.

*ex his* = unum ex his.

*quin*—educet: a good example of Caesar’s sententious style. He says that he only gave orders without telling us what the orders were. We learn, however, from the sequel the orders given.

*qui*: F.L. 232, note; P.L. ii., 239.—*pro perfusa*: “as a deserer.”

Generally perfusa is a deserer, who betrays his party: transfuga a waverer, who changes or forsakes his party.

*proponit*: “pictures,” or “represents.”

*neque*—educat: literally, “and that it was not later than the next night that Sabinus would lead his troops secretly out of camp”: *quin=qui non*, i.e., *ut non*. Translate: “that Sabinus would not delay longer than the next night in secretly withdrawing his troops out of camp.”—*clam*: for calam: rt. KAL, “to conceal”: cp. celo, καλεῖπτω.

*occasionem*—esse: “the chance of fighting a successful battle should not be lost.”

*Distinguish in meaning* amitto, “to lose” through negligence: *perdo*, “to lose,” wilfully.

*iri oportere*: generally impersonal verbs are joined with the inf. pass., not act.—*oportet* is said to be connected with *pars, partio*, etc., and originally meant, “it falls to my share”: F.L. 162, 4; P.L. III., 72 (i).

*superiorum dierum Sabini*: dierum is gen. of description and Sabini is subjective genitive: for a combination of the two genitives: cp. B. ii., 17; *eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri perspecta*. 
spes Venetici belli: "the hopes which they entertained regarding the war with the Veneti": subjective genitive.

quod—credunt: a causal clause in apposition to res. Caesar thinks that in most men "the wish is father to the thought."

prior—quam sit concessum: F.L. 201, 5; P.L. III., 99 (f), iv.

laeti: "with joy."

ut—victoria: "(as they would have done) if victory had been assured."

With ut scil. pergenter.—explorata victoria: abl. abs.—ut = utpote, sicuti, tanquam: F.L. 195, 3.—sarmentis = sarpmentis: from sarpo, "I prune": properly "prunings."—virgulta: properly "green twigs"; cp. vireo, viridis.—quibus = ut cis: F.L. 181, 1; P.L. III., 99 (a), 1.

CHAPTER XIX.

imo: "from the foot" of the slope.—imum: adjectives are used as nouns: so in augusto B. II, 25; minimum in the next sentence.

passus: F.L. 69, 9; P.L. III., 149, 92. The Roman passus was a double step = 5 Roman pedes = 4 ft. 10\(\frac{1}{4}\) in. in English measurement; so that a Roman mile (mille passus) was 4854 ft. = 1618 yds., or 142 yds. less than the English mile.—circiter is an adverb and mille passus goes with accliavis, as accusative of extent of space.

magno cursu: "at a full run."

quam minimum spatii: "as little time as possible."—spatii = temporis: partitive genitive: F.L. 69, 10; P.L. III., 81 (b).

exanimatique pervenerunt: "and they were out of breath when they arrived." Note the difference of idiom.

Sabinus—dat: Sabinus cheered on his men and finding them anxious for battle gave the signal at once."—cupientibus, scil. eis.—dat: historical present: F.L. 216, 2 (a); P.L. III., 97 (a).

impeditis—onera: "while the enemy were encumbered on account of the loads which they carried."—hostibus: abl. absolute: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. III., 85 (v).—ea: the sarmenta and virgulta.

duabus portis, scil. castrorum: what were the names of the gates of a Roman camp?

factum est: "the result was."
opportunitate: abl. of cause: so also inscientia, defatigatione, virtute, exercitacione.—ferrent, scil. hostes.

ac: "but," literally "and further": cp. use of et: Cic. Rosc. Amer. 

io: animo non deficiam, et id quod suscepi perferam: "I will not fail, but I will perform what I have undertaken."

occiderunt: distinguish in meaning occiderunt, occiderunt.

paucos: "only a few."

ut est: "as on the one hand the spirit of the Galls is quick and ready to undertake wars, so on the other their resolution is too slack and nerveless to bear up against calamity." Caesar often mentions the fickle and irresolute character of the Galls.

CHAPTER XX.

dere: note the usual position of dere.

in Aquitaniam: why is the preposition necessary?

quae pars—aequimanda: "which division, as has been said before, by reason both of its extent and population, is to be considered a third par, of Gaul." Caesar does not mean that Aquitania formed a third of Gault but that its extent and population would warrant us in regarding it on an equality with the other two divisions.—ut—est: see B. I., chap. I. —ex—parte: ex has here the same meaning as in haeres ex asse, "a sole heir": and in adverbial phrases as ex aequo, "in the way of what is just."

paucis ante annis: express this in other ways. Twenty-two years before this, in the war with Sertorius (78-72 B.C.), Hirtuleius, the lieutenant of Sertorius, defeated both Praeconinus and Mallius. Note ubi=in quibus: so unde=e quibus.


finitimae his regionibus: what adjectives govern the dative? F.L. 60, 2; P.L. III., 82 (e), v.

evocatis: soldiers who had been discharged after serving their time might be again called to service by a special summons of their commander-in-chief. They were then called evocati, and were generally exempt from menial duties, or serving as pioneers or sentinels, and they were allowed to use horses on the march.
Sotiates: the name is Keltic, meaning "heroes." It is still retained in the town Sos.

subito—ostenderunt: "suddenly they unmasked their infantry which they had posted in ambush in a valley closed on all sides."—convallis: "a valley" shut in on all sides by heights.

CHAPTER XXI.

superioribus victoriis: the defeat of Praeconinus and Mallius: for case F.L. 64, 4; P.L. III., 161, 126.—freti: derived from root seen in firmus, fortis, fre-num. What adjectives govern the ablative?

positam: "depended."—putarent: for mood: F.L. 198, 3; P.L. III., 177, 167. See also cuperent.

reliquis legionibus: the legions from which the twelve cohorts which formed the force of Crassus were composed.

adolescentulo duce: "when they had only a stripling for a leader": abl. absol.: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. 85 (o).—possent: dependent question; F.L. 176, 2; P.L. III., 99 (d).

vertere: Caesar rarely uses this form of the 3rd pl. perf. act. In Sallust, Livy and Tacitus it often occurs.

ex itinere: literally: "leaving his line of march," "off his line of march," "by single escalade."

cuniculis—actis: "sometimes they ran mines and mantlets against the mounds." The word cuniculus means properly a rabbit and like some other military terms in use amongst the Romans is derived from the animal kingdom: cp. scorpio, onagri.

cuius rei—Aquitani: "a device in which the Aquitani are very skilful indeed." Note the superlative absolute. What adjectives govern the genitive?

aerariae secturae: "copper mines": properly "copper excavations."
diligentia: "owing to the watchfulness": ablative of cause
faciunt: scil. id quod imperatum erat.

CHAPTER XXII.

in ea re—intentis: "the attention of all our men being occupied in these arrangements." With intentus the more usual construction is in eam rem,
Adiantuannus: others read Adiatunnus, meaning the "one desired," from adiant, "desire."

summam imperii: see note, Chap. XVII., B. III.

cum sexcentis—dediderint: "along with six hundred faithful followers whom they call soldurii: and this is their compact, that in life they enjoy all privileges in common with those to whose friendship they have devoted themselves."—soldurios: some say the word is derived from the Basque, or Iberian saldi, "a horse," or saldi, "a cavalier." Others say that the word is derived from the same root as the German sollen, and means devinctus, obligatus. According to Athenaeus they died with the king even if he died a natural death. Valerius Maximus mentions this custom: B. II., 6, 11: Celtibiri nefas esse ducebant proelio superesse, cum is occidisset pro cuius salutem spiritum devovissent. Tacitus mentions a similar custom among the Germans (Germ. 14 : cp. vii., 40): clientes, quibus more Gallorum nefas est etiam in extrema fortuna deserere patronos.

si quid his accidat: a euphemism for moriantur: cp. εἰ τι πάθοι = εἰ θάνοι.

sibi mortem consciscant: literally: "adjudge death to themselves," "commit suicide."

quisquam: note that quisquam and ullus are used in negative: quivis and quilibet in affirmative clauses.

cum his: resuming the sentence interrupted by the parenthesis explaining the meaning of soldurii, "with these I say."

eadem—conditione: "on the same terms": what verbs govern the ablative?

CHAPTER XXIII.

armis—acceptis: express this in various ways.

et natura—munimentum: "fortified by both its natural position and art."

paucis—erat: "within a few days after his arrival there."—paucis diebus: the ablative marks an interval between two events.—quibus is here equivalent to postquam and also marks the time within which the event happened: cp. B. iv., 18, diebus decem quibus materia coepta est com- portari, which is equivalent to die decimo postquam, etc.

quoqueversum: "in all directions."

ad—Aquitaniae: "to those states of Hither Spain which adjoin Aqui-
tania"; observe the Latin idiom. Hither Spain (**Hispania Citerior**, subsequently **Taraconsensis**) included the district between the Iberus (**Ebro**) and the Pyrenees.

**adventu**: ablative of time or reason.

**omnes annos**: during the whole period of the war with Sertorius, 82, B.C.—72, B.C.

**hi—instituunt**: "these men, in the same way as the Roman people, set about selecting positions, fortifying a camp, cutting our men off from supplies.—**consuetudine**: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. III., 85 (e).—**commeatibus**: F.L. 185, 2 (1); P.L. III., 85 (a).

**quod**: refers to the preceding sentence and the clause **suas copias.—relinquere** is an equivalent to it.

**diduci**: "spread out" so as to command the different avenues and prevent them being surrounded by the enemy.

**et—relinquere**: "and that they still left behind a sufficient number to guard the camp."—**praesidii**: part. gen.; F.L. 69, 10; P.L. III., 81 (b).

**minus commode**: a mild way (litotes) of saying, "with great difficulty."

**in dies**: daily, used with words expressing increase or diminution: **quotidie**, daily, expressing anything daily repeated. Translate: **he goes to school daily**: he grows stronger daily.

**decertaret**: "to fight a decisive battle." Note the force of **de** in **decertare**, **depugnare**.

**consilium**: a council of war.

**CHAPTER XXIV.**

**productis, instituta, coniectis**: the ablative absolutes are not quite coordinate in time. The time in the first would be over before the time in the other two participles.—**duplci acie**: the forces of Crassus were small, and instead of drawing up his soldiers in the usual form (**acies triplex**) he places them in two lines, on the right and on the left, with the auxiliaries thrown into the centre.

**quid—caperent**: for the partitive genitive: F.L. 69, 10; P.L. III., 81 (b). For the subjunctive: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. III., 99 (a).

**obsessis—potiri**: "to blockade the roads, cut off our supplies, and thus win a bloodless victory." The first ablative absolute explains how that happens which is expressed by the other two,
impeditos—cogitant: "they decided to attack them encumbered on the march, and with their packs to carry, when self-confidence was impaired." Distinguish sarcina, baggage of the individual soldiers; impedita, the baggage of the whole army.

eastris: often in is omitted in such cases: cp. B. III., 17: Sabinus castris sese tenebat.

Cum—effecerit: "since by their hesitation and by the impression of cowardice which they gave, the enemy had made our soldiers all the more eager for fighting." Another reading is timidiiores: the translation then is: "being more timid than their reputation."

exspectari—oportere: impersonal verbs are generally joined with the infinitive passive, not active.

omnibus cupientibus: "and finding them all eager": abl. absolute.

CHAPTER XXV.

Cum completerit: F.L. 198, 3; P.L. III., 177, 167.

multis telis coniectis: "by a shower of darts."—vallo: F.L. 158, 2 (1); P.L. III., 85 (h).

quibus—confidebat: "in whom Crassus had little confidence so far as fighting was concerned."—quibus: F.L. 105, 9; P.L. III., 82 (e), 1.

ad aggerem: scil. faciendum: "to form a rampart": the Romans in consequence of the height of the enemy’s camp had to make a sloping mound up to it, like the agger made in sieges.

speciem—pugnantium: "the appearance and impression of combatants."

cespitibus: "turfs," "sods."

constantem ac non timide: "with steadiness and even intrepidity."

non eadem diligentia munita: "that the camp had not been formed with the same care on the side of the decuman gate." As the Romans invariably protected the camp with a rampart and ditch: munire castra often means "to form a camp." Where was the porta decumana?

CHAPTER XXVI.

praemissae pollicitationibusque: it is more than likely that no rewards would be given in the heat of battle: so we may take the expression to mean: "by the promise of reward."

praesidio castris: F.L. 134, 1; P.L. III, 82, (c).

intritae: "not worn out": a participle negativated: cp. indefessus, illae-sus, invocatus.

omnia, scil. hostium.

videri: scil. possent from the posset following. Note that priusquam videri posset means "before they could see," without implying that they ever saw; while priusquam videri potuit, means "before they could see," implying they saw: F.L. 201, 5; P.L. III, 99, (f), IV.

quid rei gereretur: "what was going on": F.L. 176, 2; P.L. III, 99, (d).

quod: refers to the thought in redintegratis viribus, i.e., the renewal of strength.

consuevit: generally happens": see note B. III, chapter I.

desperatis—rebus: see note on B. III, chapter III.

per munitiones: "all along the entrenchments": cp. IV, 33, per temonem percurrere.

apertissimis campis: Crassus was probably in the low lying lands south of the Garonne, within the Department of Gironde.

multa nocte: "far on in the night": cp. B. I, 22: multo die.

CHAPTER XXVII.

hac audita pugna: express this in different ways.

ultro: literally, to a point beyond: ultra: at a point beyond. The word may be translated by "further."

Tarbelli—Cocosates: for the position of their tribes see the map. Many of these names still survive in their modern names: Tarbelli in Tarbes, the Bigerriones in Bigorre, the Elusates, in Eauze, the Ausci in Auch, the Garumni in Garonne, the Sibuzates in Saubusse.

paucae ultimae nationes: "a few tribes, the remotest."

tempore: F.L. 105, 9. Note; P.L. III, 85, (k), III.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

iam: "by this time."

omni Gallia pacata: "amid the general reduction of Gaul": F.L. 100, 5; P.L. III, 85, (o).
Morini—essent: “the only people under arms were the Morini and Menapii” : F.L. 188, 5, (a) ; P.L. III., 99, (c).

neque = et non.

longe—ac : “in a way far different from.”

eo = in eas silvas et paludes.

initium : “entrance.”

repulserunt : the forms repuli, religio, repertit may be accounted from the fact that red may be the prefix and the principle of assimilation was observed.

derperdo: note that perdo and its compound denote wilful negligence in losing: amitto implies to lose from indifference.

deinceps: a word compounded of dein (de-in-de) and the suffix -ceps. It signifies an uninterrupted series. The meaning then is, “during all the days that Caesar spent in the country.”

imprudentibus : “off their guard,” because engaged in cutting timber, etc. It would be more common to find in milites.—militibus : abl. abs.

omnem—collocabat : “he collected together all that timber, which was cut down, directly facing the enemy, and he piled it as a rampart on each flank.” Notice the force of the imperfect.

magno spatio—confecto : “a large space having been cleared.”—paucis diebus : abl. within a point of time.”

extrema impedimenta—nostros : “the rear of the baggage train was coming within reach of our men.” Distinguish pecus, pecoris : “a collection of cattle,” and pecus, pecudis, “a single head” of cattle. Explain the subjunctives tenerentur—peterent.—densiores silvas = densiores partes silvae.

eiusmodi tempestates : literally, “storms of such kind,” i.e., “such storms,” or “such tempestuous weather.”—consecutae scil. sunt.—sub pellibus : literally, “under skins,” i.e., as we say, “under cover.” The tents under which the Roman soldiers slept in summer were covered with skins. In winter, generally, Caesar went into hiberna either in the towns of Gallia or under huts built for the winter.

Aulercis : the Aulerci Eburovices are meant [see Proper Names].

in hibernis collocavit : this includes the forces under Sabinus and Crassus.
SHORT EXERCISES

BASED ON CAESAR'S GALIC WAR, B. III.

For oral translation into Latin.

NOTE.—The student is supposed to read carefully the chapter on which each of the following exercises is based and to note carefully every construction before attempting to translate the sentences into Latin.

I.

1. Servius Galba was sent by Caesar against the Veragri. 2. He set out with one legion against the Allobroges whose territories extend from the lake of Geneva to the top of the Alps. 3. Caesar wished to open a road over the Alps. 4. He knew that merchants often at great risk were wont to go to those places. 5. Ambassadors were sent from all sides to Galba and peace was made. 6. What was the name of the village in which Galba passed the winter? 7. This village was hemmed in by very high mountains. 8. A river divided the town into two parts; one of which was assigned to the Roman legion. 9. This place was fortified by Galba, the lieutenant. 10. He took several forts by storm and stationed there a garrison.

II.

1. Caesar ordered the soldiers to collect corn to that place. 2. He was informed that the Gauls had seized the mountains. 3. The mountains which overhung are held by the Seduni and Veragri. 4. The Gauls, to whom he had assigned one part of the village had left during the night. 5. It happened that they suddenly renewed the war and tried to crush the Roman legion. 6. The legion was not complete because two cohorts had been withdrawn (from it). 7. These cohorts had been sent for the purpose of obtaining supplies. 8. The soldiers of these two cohorts, on account of the unevenness of the ground, did not think that they were able to withstand the attack of the Veragri. 9. When we made an onset against them, they were unable to withstand our troops. 10. The Veragri were persuaded that the Romans were attempting to seize the places for the purpose of holding them.
III.

1. The work on the winter quarters had not been fully finished by Galba.
2. Sufficient provision for supplies had not been made by our men.
3. The enemy made a surrender and gave us hostages.
4. It is impossible that aid should come to us in this war.
5. This war happened contrary to his expectation.
6. The heights were manned by the forces of the enemy.
7. Supplies cannot be brought up because the roads are blocked up.
8. Let us make a sortie and hasten to a place of safety by the same roads by which we came.
9. A majority determined to abandon the baggage and hasten to a place of safety.
10. After making a sortie, we defended our camp.

IV.

1. There was hardly time for giving a signal.
2. From every side the enemy hurled darts against our men.
3. Our men at first from their higher position hurled no weapon without effect.
4. When the enemy were wearied with long fighting, they withdrew and fresh men took their places.
5. Our men were so few that they could not withdraw from the fight, even when they were tired.
6. When one part of the camp was hard pressed by our men, to that quarter the enemy sent aid.
7. No chance is given to them of doing any of these things.
8. They cannot leave the place where they stand even when wounded.

V.

1. The enemy fought for more than six hours.
2. Not only did the enemy press them more vigorously, but they began to fill up the trenches.
3. In the battle with the Nervii, Servius was exhausted with many wounds.
4. We said that Caesar was a man of great valour.
5. The only hope of safety lies in making a sortie.
6. Call together the officers and order them to stop the fight.
7. We picked up the spent weapons.
8. Refresh yourselves for your toil and then make a sortie from the camp.
9. All your hope of safety rests in your own valour.

VI.

1. The enemy suddenly made a sortie from every quarter against our men.
2. You leave us no opportunity either of finding out what is doing or of collecting our wits.
3. Do you entertain the hope of slaying your enemies?
4. Out of more that one thousand men nearly one hundred were slain.
5. It was well known that more than a third of the enemy were slain in this battle.
6. Galba had come with one purpose but saw
that he had met with a different state of things. 7. After this battle was fought, there was a great lack of arms and supplies among the enemy. 8. After setting fire to all the dwellings of the enemy, Galba led his army into winter quarters.

VII.

1. When Caesar had conquered the Belgae, he set out for Italy. 2. At the beginning of winter, a war suddenly broke out amongst the Gauls. 3. He desired to go to all these places and to ascertain what the cause of the war was. 4. Crassus with one legion was in a district very close to the ocean. 5. There was a great scarcity of corn in that district. 6. Caesar sent to the different states lieutenants for the purpose of obtaining corn. 7. After he had sent tribunes of the soldiers, he went into winter quarters. 8. He despatched one legion into the country of the Veneti.

VIII.

1. The influence of the Veneti is very great because they hold all the sea coast. 2. The Veneti often cross into Britain in ships. 3. They surpassed all the other tribes of Gaul in their knowledge of naval affairs. 4. Caesar says that almost all who were accustomed to use ships were subject to the Veneti. 5. By returning two Romans, the enemy thought that the hostages which had been given to Crassus would be received. 6. We had rather receive our hostages than remain in slavery to the Romans. 7. They agreed amongst themselves to urge the states of Gaul to act in a body. 8. We would enjoy the liberty which our forefathers have given to us rather than endure the slavery imposed by the Romans. 9. If you wish to receive your ambassadors, send back our hostages to us.

IX.

1. Meanwhile ships were constructed, rowers organized and sailors collected in Gaul. 2. Crassus informed Caesar of all these matters. 3. As soon as he could, he set out into the country of the Veneti and began to collect rowers for that war. 4. We knew how great a crime we have been guilty of. 5. They apprehended and threw into chains ambassadors, men who are always looked upon as sacred. 6. Considering the magnitude of the danger let us build as many ships as possible and let us provide all that is necessary for the war. 7. They had great confidence in their ships because they were aware that our soldiers had no knowledge of the locality where they would carry on the war. 8. They were particularly strong in ships, still everything turned out contrary to expectation. 9. Navigation is...
a very different thing in the river Loire from what it is on the broad ocean. 10. They formed their plans when it was generally known where Caesar would carry on the war.

X.

1. The difficulty of carrying on the war was very great, nevertheless Caesar was led to undertake it from the league of so many states. 2. The wrong done to the Romans aroused the soldiers to renew the war. 3. If we overlook this revolt, the Morini may do the same thing. 4. They renewed the war against the Romans after the hostages had been given. 5. Since all the Gauls are quickly excited to war, the army must be distributed among several communities. 7. Caesar thought that the Gauls should be aroused to war and that his army ought to be distributed among the states of Gaul. 8. Almost all the Gauls are fond of a change in government and are easily excited to war. 9. Before the states formed a league, the army must be sent among them.

XI.

1. The lieutenant was sent into the country of the Treveri with six legions. 2. He charged the lieutenant to keep the Belgae in allegiance. 3. The Germans had been summoned to the aid of the Belgae. 4. They attempted to cross the river by means of boats. 5. Crassus with many auxiliary troops set out for that region. 6. Sabinus took care that such powerful nations should be kept apart. 7. The Romans appoint Decimus Brutus commander over all their vessels. 8. The general himself, as soon as he was able, set out against the enemy. 9. Caesar himself hastened to the sea coast with all the infantry. 10. Auxiliary troops assembled from all the neighbouring districts.

XII.

1. The towns were situated on high promontories or on tongues of land. 2. There is no access to the towns either on foot or by ships. 3. The tide in that place comes up every twelve hours. 4. At ebb-tide he saw that the ships were wrecked on the shoals. 5. Caesar shut out the sea by means of dykes and dams, which he made level with the walls of the town. 6. The enemy moved their goods the more easily, because they had an abundance of ships. 7. During the greater part of the summer Caesar was detained by storms. 8. The ports were few, so that there was a great difficulty in bringing their vessels to land. 9. The places situated on the sea were protected by the advantages of their position.
BOOK III.

XIII.

1. The ships are made flat bottomed, that they may the more easily encounter the shoals. 2. The prows of all the ships were made perpendicular, to withstand the violence of the waves. 3. The ships, which were made wholly of oak, could withstand any violence, however great. 4. The Veneti used timbers a foot thick, spikes of iron of the thickness of one's thumb, iron cables instead of ropes, and hides for sails. 5. The enemy did not use canvas on account of its scarcity, and because they were not able to steer their ships with sails of such a kind. 6. Our ships could neither bear a storm easily nor stay in shallow water with safety. 7. The ships of the enemy were better suited to withstand the force of the storms. 8. No dart thrown by our men could easily reach the ships of the enemy, on account of their height. 9. When they ran before the wind, the enemy had no fear of the rocks. 10. When the ships of our men were left by the tide, they greatly dreaded all kinds of mishaps.

XIV.

1. So much labour was spent in vain that we could not check the enemy's flight, nor injure them. 2. When Caesar learned that several towns were taken, he awaited the arrival of the fleet. 3. As soon as the Roman fleet was seen by the enemy, they set out from their port with all their ships completely equipped. 4. Brutus said that he did not know what the enemy would do in the battle. 5. "What mode of battle," said he, "will they adopt in such an emergency?" 6. Their ships cannot be injured by the beaks of our ships, because they are made of oak. 7. When the sails and rigging were torn away, their ships were of no use to them. 8. Our men were greatly superior to the enemy, because the battle was fought in sight of the Roman commander. 9. Our troops occupied all the hills, from which the battle could be seen.

XV.

1. Three or four ships at a time surrounded each of the enemy's vessels. 2. Our men at this time strove to board the ships of the enemy. 3. After the barbarians observed our men boarding the ships of the enemy, the latter sought safety by flight. 4. Since they found no relief for this, they turned their ships about. 5. They were not able to stir, on account of the calm. 6. The sudden calm was extremely opportune for pursuing them singly. 7. Very few of the ships of the enemy reached the land in safety. 8. The battle against the Veneti lasted from about 10 a.m. to sunset. 9. On that day the Roman soldiers fought bravely, for Caesar was witnessing the battle on the neighbouring heights.
XVI.

1. The Romans brought the war to a close by this battle. 2. Whatever ships we have any where, have been collected in this place. 3. We have no place to retreat to, nor can we defend our towns. 4. The enemy surrendered their towns on that day to our commander. 5. They must be punished, that they may in future regard the rights of ambassadors. 6. When the enemy were conquered, Caesar put all the senators to death. 7. The inhabitants of that state he sold as slaves. 8. In this battle the Veneti lost very many ships. 9. The barbarians carefully observed for the future the rights of ambassadors.

XVII.

1. While the lieutenant was receiving large forces from Caesar, Viridovix was collecting his troops. 2. Viridovix collected large forces from the states which had revolted. 3. Within a few days past, the enemy’s gates had been closed  the Romans. 4. Hope of plunder had called out a large number of robbers from all parts of Gaul. 5. They had been allured from agricultural pursuits and their ordinary business by their desire for plunder. 6. Every day Viridovix offered Sabinus a chance to fight. 7. In consequence of the absence of Caesar, Sabinus was unwilling to fight except on even terms. 8. A lieutenant ought not to fight unless some favourable chance is offered. 9. The enemy dared to go even to the rampart of the camp. 10. At the distance of ten miles the enemy took up their position on a hill.

XVIII.

1. Sabinus persuaded a certain man who was very shrewd to go over to the enemy as a deserter. 2. Caesar instructed this man what he wished to be done. 3. This man, a Gaul, told them that Sabinus on the next night would lead his army out of camp. 4. This man told the enemy in what straits the Romans were. 5. The opportunity of leading the army out of camp ought not to be thrown away. 6. Men generally are glad to believe what they wish. 7. They did not go to the camp till they had collected faggots to fill up the trench. 8. All shouted out: “We must not lose the chance of conquering the enemy.” 9. With joy they set out to the camp after collecting twigs with which they intended to fill up the trench. 10. On that day, he set out for the purpose of bringing aid to Caesar.

XIX.

1. They hastened with great speed, in order that the Romans might not rally and arm themselves. 2. The spot where the camp was situated,
gradually sloped to the plain. 3. With such speed they hastened that they arrived at that place breathless. 4. Very little time was given our men for arming themselves. 5. When they got to the camp all out of breath, Sabinus gave his men the signal which they desired. 6. It happened that our men made a sortie from two gates. 7. On account of the valour of the soldiers, not even one of the enemy escaped. 8. As the Gauls undertake war with eagerness, so they are by no means resolute in bearing defeat.

XX.

1. Almost at the same time P. Crassus was waging war in these places where the army of Valerius had been defeated a few years before. 2. Caesar said that Aquitania forms the third part of Gaul. 3. Mallius fled from the same place after losing his baggage train. 4. No moderate activity must be employed. 5. When he had arrived there and learned that it was the place where Valerius had been killed a few years before he used no ordinary diligence. 6. On his arrival, the Sotiates collected all the forces they could and attacked our army on the march. 7. When the cavalry of the enemy were repulsed, the commander led the infantry against the enemy. 8. The enemy renewed the battle when they saw that our forces were scattered. 9. He collected all the force and engaged in battle on that day with the enemy.

XXI.

1. Since the safety of all Aquitania depends on our valour, let us not turn our backs. 2. What can they do with a mere boy for a leader. 3. They wish to show what they can do without their general. 4. Sometimes they made sorties, and sometimes they worked mines up to the walls. 5. A large number of the enemy spent with wounds began to retreat to their town. 6. The people of Aquitania are very well skilled in working mines. 7. Owing to the watchfulness of our men they could accomplish nothing with mines. 8. They asked Caesar to receive them and their citizens in surrender. 9. When this request was granted, all were ordered to hand over their arms to our officers.

XXII.

1. The king from one part of the town attempted to make a sally. 2. He set out with six hundred devoted followers, called soldurii. 3. They enjoy all the blessings of life in common with those to whose friendship they have devoted themselves. 4. If anything should happen to him to whose friendship a soldurius has devoted himself, he would not refuse to die. 5. Nor has any one been found so far who has refused to commit
suicide. 6. They raised a shout and boldly rushed to arms. 7. Though they were driven back into the town, nevertheless, they enjoyed the same basis of surrender. 8. After a fierce battle, the king and his devoted followers were driven back into town. 9. The Romans drove the king into the town, where he surrendered all his possessions to Crassus.

XXIII.

1. The lieutenant received in surrender the hostages whom the enemy gave. 2. The town was taken a few days after they arrived there. 3. Ambassadors were summoned from these states which belonged to Hither Spain. 4. On the arrival of the auxiliaries they carried on the war more eagerly. 5. Crassus could not easily separate his forces, whereas the enemy could roam about and leave a sufficient garrison for the camp. 6. Since the number of the enemy was increasing day by day, he thought that he must not hesitate to engage in battle. 7. Learning that the whole council had the same feeling, he set the next day for the battle. 8. The leaders picked for that war had served for many years under Sertorius. 9. The enemy determined to keep our men from the provisions which were in these places.

XXIV.

1. At daybreak, Caesar drew up all his army in a double line. 2. All the auxiliaries of the enemy were placed in the middle of the line. 3. Let us wait to see what plans the enemy are forming. 4. On account of our reputation in war we shall easily obtain a victory. 5. The enemy attacked our men encumbered with baggage while on the march. 6. The enemy thought that if the roads could be blocked up, and thus our army prevented from obtaining supplies, they could easily gain a victory without any loss. 7. On account of the hesitation of the enemy, our men were more eager for the battle. 8. We must no longer delay going into the enemy's camp. 9. The more timid the enemy were the more eager did our soldiers become. 10. When Caesar had addressed his soldiers, he led all his forces against the camp of the enemy.

XXV.

1. Some of the Romans filled the ditch; others drove the enemy from the rampart. 2. While some were supplying stones and weapons for the fighters, others were bringing sods for the mound. 3. The enemy fought steadily and hurled weapons with good effect from the rampart. 4. Crassus, the lieutenant of Caesar, had not much confidence in the auxiliary
troops who were stationed in the centre. 5. None of the darts which were
thrown by our men from the heights, fell without effect. 6. The enemy
fought for many hours steadily against our troops. 7. The Romans arrived
at the decuman gate and demolished the walls before the enemy could find
out what was going on. 8. Word was brought back to Crassus that the
cavalry of the Romans had ridden round the camp of the enemy. 9. The
camp of the Romans was fortified with the greatest care by Caesar. 10.
We had an easy access to the camp of the enemy.

XXVI.

1. Caesar, addressing his troops, told them what he wished them to do
in this battle. 2. Three cohorts which had been left to guard the camp
were led out. 3. They led the horsemen around by a longer route that
they might not be seen by the enemy. 4. The eyes of all the soldiers in
the army were fixed on the battle. 5. The Romans burst through the
defences of the camp before it was clear what was being done. 6. No one
could easily perceive what the enemy were doing. 7. It often happens
that the hope of victory brings strength to the soldiers. 8. The enemy,
when surrounded on all sides, strive to rush through the fortifications. 9.
Caesar with all his cavalry pursued the enemy through an unobstructed
district. 10. It is clear that out of fifty thousand men hardly a fourth part
was left.

XXVII.—XXVIII.

1. Very many Aquitanians gave themselves up to Caesar, but some of
the remotest tribes omitted to send hostages to him. 2. Summer had
now almost gone, and winter was near at hand. 3. The only nations
among the Gauls which had not been subdued were the Morini and Men-
apii. 4. Both these nations carried on war in a different manner from
Caesar. 5. When these nations had been conquered in battle they col-
lected all their effects in the extensive forests of their country. 6. When
Caesar arrived at the forest to which they had betaken themselves, he
began to fortify a camp. 7. Having made an attack against our men they
were driven back again into the woods. 8. They followed the Romans too
far and lost a great many of their men.

XXIX.

1. After felling the trees, Caesar piled up the timber for a rampart. 2.
To prevent an attack being made against our men, Caesar piled up all the
timber he had cut. 3. Within a few days he covered a long distance with incredible speed. 4. Storms so severe followed that Caesar had of necessity to give up the work. 5. The soldiers could not be kept under cover from the continued rains. 6. He devastated all the lands of the enemy. 7. When he had burned all their buildings, he led home his army. 8. He stationed his soldiers in winter quarters among the states which lately had revolted.
Map No. 5.

BRITAIN

IN

CAMPAIGNS OF

B.C. 55 & 54.

Latin Names are in Roman Type. Modern Names are in Italic Type.

1ST. CAMPAIGN
2ND. CAMPAIGN

English Channel
Bellovaci

Bratuspantium (Brest)

Samarobriva (Amiens)

Dieppe

Newchapel

Caletes

Longitude East from Greenwich
C. IULI CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALlico.

LIBER QUARTUS.

Contents of Book IV.—55 B.C.—Gaul has been brought under a Roman protectorate; the attempts of the Belgae, the Veneti and others to throw off the yoke have been crushed. Caesar now has two tasks before him: to check certain German tribes who are encroaching on Gaul (Chs. i.-xix.), and to overawe the Britons, who have been aiding their Gallic kinsmen (Chs. xx.-xxviii).

GERMAN TRIBES CHECKED.

I.—EA, quae sequuta est, hieme, qui fuit annus Cneio Pompeio, Marco Crasso consulibus, Usipetes Germani, et item Tenchtheri, magna cum multitudine hominum flumen Rhenum transierunt, non longe a mari, quo Rhenus influit. Causa transeundi fuit, quod, ab Suevis complures annos exagitati, bello premebantur et agricultura prohibebantur. Suevorum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum omnium. Hi centum pagos habere dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula millia armatorum bellandi causa ex finibus educunt. Reliqui, qui domi manserint, se atque illos alunt. Hi rursus invicem anno post in armis sunt; illi domi remanent. Sic neque agricultura, nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur. Sed privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil est; neque longius anno remanere uno in loco incolendi causa licet. Neque multum frumento, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in venationibus; quae res et cibi genere, et quotidianae exercitatione, et libertate vitae (quod, a puere nullo officio aut disciplina assuefacti, nihil omnino contra voluntatem faciant), et vires alit, et immani corp-
orum magnitudine homines efficit. Atque in eam se con-
suetudinem adduxerunt, ut locis frigidissimis neque ves-
titus, praeter pelles, habeant quicquam (quarum propter
exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta), et laventur
in fluminibus.

II.—Mercatoribus est ad eos aditus magis eo, ut, quae
bello ceperint, quibus vendant, habeant, quam quo ullam
rem ad se importari desiderent. Quin etiam iumentis,
quibus maxime Gallia delectatur, quaeque impenso parant
pretio, Germani importatis non utuntur: sed quae sunt
apud eos nata, parva atque deformia, haec quotidiana
exercitatione, summi ut sint laboris, efficiunt. Equestribus
proeliis saepe ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur,
equosque eodem remanere vestigio assuefaciunt; ad quos
se celeriter, cum usus est, recipiunt: neque eorum
moribus turpis quicquam aut inertius habetur, quam
ephippiis uti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiat-
orum equitum, quamvis pauci, adire audent. Vinum ad
se omnino importari non sinunt, quod ea re ad laborem
ferendum remollescere homines atque effeminari arbi-
trantur.

III.—Publice maximam putant esse laudem, quam
latissime a suis finibus vacare agros: hac re significari,
magnum numerum civitatum suam vim sustinere non
posse. Itaque una ex parte a Suevis circiter millia
passuum sexcenta agri vacare dicuntur. Ad alteram
partem succedunt Ubii (quorum fuit civitas ampla atque
florens, ut est captus Germanorum), et paulo quam sunt
eiusdem generis ceteri humaniores; propertea quod
Rhenum attingunt, multumque ad eos mercatores ventit-
ant, et ipsi propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt moribus
assuefacti. Hos cum Suevi multis saepe bellis experti
propter amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis finibus ex-
pellere non potuissent, tamen vectigales sibi fecerunt, ac
multo humiliores infirmioresque redegerunt.

IV.—In eadem causa fuerunt Usipetes et Tenchtheri,
quos supra diximus, qui complures annos Suevorum vim sustinuerunt; ad extremum tamen, agris expulsi et multis Germaniae locis triennium vagati, ad Rhenum pervenerunt. Quas regiones Menapii incolabant, et ad utramque ripam fluminis agros, aedificia vicosque habebant; sed tantae multitudinis aditu perterriti, ex his aedificiis, quae trans flumen habuerant, demigraverant, et, cis Rhenum dispositis praesidiis, Germanos transire prohibebant. Illi, omnia experti, cum neque vi contendere propter inopiam navium, neque clam transire propter custodias Menapiorum possent, reverti se in suas sedes regionesque simulaverunt; et, tridui viam progressi, rursus reverterunt; atque, omni hoc itinere una nocte equitatu confecto, inscios inopinantesque Menapios oppresserunt, qui, de Germanorum discessu per exploratores certiores facti, sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigraverant. His interfectis navibusque eorum occupatis, priusquam ea pars Menapiorum, quae citra Rhenum quieta in suis sedibus erat, certior fieret, flumen transierunt, atque, omnibus eorum aedificiis occupatis, reliquam partem hiemis se eorum copiis aluerunt.

V.—His de rebus Caesar certior factus, et infirmitatem Gallorum veritus, quod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles, et novis plerumque rebus student, nihil his committendum existimavit. Est autem hoc Gallicae consuetudinis, uti et viatores, etiam invitos, consistere cogant, et, quod quisque eorum de quaque re audierit aut cognoverit, quaerant; et mercatores in oppidis vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regionibus veniant, quasque ibi res cognoverint, pronuntiare cogant. His rumoribus atque auditionibus permoti de summis saepe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum eos e vestigio poenitere necesse est, cum incertis rumoribus serviant, et plerique ad voluntatem eorum ficta respondeant.

VI.—Qua consuetudine cognita, Caesar, ne graviori bello occurreret, maturius quam consuerat ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, ea, quae fore suspicatus erat, facta cognovit; missas legationes a nonnullis civita-
Caesar discovers intrigues between the Gauls and Germans; calls a meeting of the Gallic chiefs and gets their aid against the Germans.

VII.—Re frumentaria comparata equitibusque delectis, iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanos audiebat. A quibus cum paucorum dierum iter abesset, legati ab his venerunt, quorum haec fuit oratio: Germanos neque priores Populo Romano bellum inferre, neque tamen recusare, si lascissantur, quin armis contendant, quod Germanorum consuetudo haec sit a maioris tradita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque deprecari: haec tamen dicere, venisse invitos, ejectos domo. Si suam gratiam Romani velint, posse eis utiles esse amicos: vel sibi agros attribuunt, vel patiantur eos tenere, quos armis possederint. Sese unis Suevis concedere, quibus ne dii quidem immortales pares esse possint: reliquum quidem in terris esse neminem, quem non superare possint.

VIII.—Ad haec Caesar, quae visum est, respondit; sed exitus fuit orationis: Sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Gallia remanerent: neque verum esse, qui suos fines tueri non potuerint, alienos occupare: neque ullos in Gallia vacare agros qui dari tantae praesertim multitudini sine iniuria possint. Sed licere, si velint, in Ubiorum finibus considere, quorum sint legati apud se, et de Suevorum iniuriis querantur, et a se auxilium petant: hoc se ab iis impetraturum.

IX.—Legati haec se ad suos relaturos dixerunt, et, re deliberata, post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversuros: interea ne propius se castra moveret, petierunt. Ne id quidem Caesar ab se impetrari posse dixit: cognoverat
enim magnam partem equitatus ab iis aliquot diebus ante praedandi frumentandique causa ad Ambivaritos trans Mosam missam. Hos exspectari equites, atque eius rei causa moram interponi arbitrabatur.

X.—Mosa profuit ex monte Vosego, qui est in finibus Lingonum, et, parte quadam ex Rheno recepta, quae appellatur Vahalis, insulam efficit Batavorum, neque longius ab eo millibus passuum octoginta in Oceanum influit. Rhenus autem oritur ex Lepontiiis, qui Alpes incolunt, et longo spatio per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiorum, Sequanorum, Mediomatricorum, Tribocorum, Treverorum citatus fertur; et, ubi Oceano appropinquat, in plures diffuit partes, multis ingentibusque insulis effectis—quarum pars magna a feris barbarisque nationibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt qui piscibus atque ovis avium vivere existimantur—multisque capitibus in Oceanum influit.

XI.—Caesar cum ab hoste non amplius passuum duodecim millibus abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legati revertuntur: qui, in itinere congressi, magnopere, ne longius progrederetur, orabant. Cum id non impetrasset, petebant, uti ad eos equites, qui agmen antecessissent, praemitteret, eosque pugna prohiberet; sibique uti potestatem faceret in Ubios legatos mittendi: quorum si principes ac senatus sibi iureurando fidem fecissent, ea conditio, quae a Caesare ferretur, se usuros ostendebant: ad has res conficiendas sibi triduis spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eodem illo pertinere arbitrabatur, ut, tridui mora interposita, equites eorum, qui abessent, revertentur: tamen sese non longius millibus passuum quatuor aquisitionis causa processurum eo die dixit: huc postero die quam frequentissimi convenirent, ut de eorum postulatis cognosceret. Interim ad praefectos, qui cum omni equitatu antecesserant, mittit, qui nuntiarent, ne hostes proelio lasserent, et, si ipsi lassaserentur, sustinerent, quoad ipse cum exercitu propius accessisset.

XII.—At hostes, ubi primum nostros equites conspex-
erunt—quorum erat quinque millium numerus, cum ipsi non amplius octingentos equites haberent, quod ii, qui frumentandi causa ierant trans Mosam, nondum redierant, nihil timentibus nostris, quod legati eorum paulo ante a Caesare discesserant, atque is dies induciis erat ab eis petitus—impetu facto, celeriter nostros poturbaverunt. Rursus resistentibus nostris, consuetudine sua ad pedes desiluerunt, suffossisque equis, compluribusque nostris deiectis, reliquis in fugam coniecerunt, atque ita perterritos egerunt, ut non prius fuga desisterent, quam in conspectum agminis nostri venissent. In eo proelio ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur quatuor et septuaginta, in his vir fortissimus, Piso Aquitanus, amplissimo genere natus, cuius avus in civitate sua regnum obtinuerat, amicus ab Senatu nostro appellatus. Hic cum fratri intercluso ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculo eripuit; ipse, equo vulnerato deiectus, quoad potuit, fortissime restitit. Cum circumventus multis vulneribus acceptis cecidisset, atque id frater, qui iam proelio exscesserat, procul animum advertisset, incitato equo se hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

XIII.—Hoc facto proelio, Caesar neque iam sibi legatos audiendos neque conditiones accipiendas arbitrabatur ab his, qui per dolum atque insidias, petita pace, ultero bellum intulissent: exspectare vero, dum hostium copiae augerentur, equitatusque reverteretur, summae dementiae esse iudicabat; et, cognita Gallorum infirmitate, quantum iam apud eos hostes uno proelio auctoritatis essent consequuti, sentiebat: quibus ad consilia capienda nihil spatiis dandum existimabat. His constitutis rebus, et consilio cum legatis et quaestore communicato, ne quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportunissima res accidit, quod postridie eius diei mane, eadem et perfidia et simulatione usi Germani, frequentes, omnibus principibus maioribusque natu adhibitis, ad eum in castra venirent; simul, ut dicebatur, sui purgandi causa, quod, contra atque esset dictum et ipsi petissent, proelium pridie com-
misissent; simul ut, si quid possent, de induciis fallendo impetrarent. Quos sibi Caesar oblatos gavisus, illico retineri iussit; ipse omnes copias castris eduxit equitatumque, quod recenti proelio perterritum esse existimabat, agmen subseu quae iussit.

XIV.—Acie triplici instituta, et celeriter octo millium itinere conlecto, prius ad hostium castra pervenit, quam quid ageretur Germani sentire possent. Qui, omnibus rebus subito perterriti, et celeritate adventus nostri, et discessu suorum, neque consilii habendi neque arma capiendi spatio dato, perturbantur, copiasne adversus hostem educere, an castra defendere an fuga salutem petere prae- staret. Quorum timor cum fremitu et concursu significareetur, milites nostri, pristini diei perfidia incitati, in castra irruerunt. Quorum qui celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper nostris restiterunt, atque inter carros impedimentaque proeliwm commiserunt: at reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierumque—nam cum omnibus suis domo exasserant Rhenumque transierant—passim fugere coepit; ad quos consecandos Caesar equitatum misit.

XV.—Germani, post ergum clamore audito, cum suos interfici viderent, armis abiectis signisque militaribus relictis, se ex castris eiuerunt: et cum ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni pervenissent, reliqua fuga desperata, magno numero interfecto, reliqui se in flumen praecipita- verunt, atque ibi timore, lassitudine, vi fluminis oppressi perierunt. Nostri ad unum omnes incolumes, perpaucis vulneratis, ex tanti belli timore, cum hostium numerus capitum quadringentorum et triginta millium suisset, se in castra receperunt. Caesar his, quos in castris retinuerat, discedendi potestatem fecit; illi supplicia cruciatumque Gallorum veriti, quorum agros vexaverant, remanere se apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertatem concessit.

CAESAR CROSSES THE RHINE.

XVI.—Germanico bello conlecto, multis de causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhenum esse transeundum: quorum
C. IULI CAESARIS

illa fuit iustissima, quod, cum videret Germanos tam facile impelli, ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rebus eos timere voluit, cum intelligerent, et posse et audere Populi Romani exercitum Rhenum transire. Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum et Tenchtherorum, quam supra commemoravi praedandi frumentandique causa Mosam transisse neque proelio interfuisse, post fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in fines Sigamborum receperat seque cum iis coniunxerat. Ad quos cum Caesar nuntios misisset, qui postularent, eos, qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intelissent, sibi dederent, responderunt: Populi Romani imperium Rhenum finire: si, se invito Germanos in Galliam transire non aequum existimaret, cur sui quicquam esse imperii aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet? Ubii autem, qui uni ex Transrhenanis ad Caesarem legatos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dederant, magnopere orabant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suevis premerentur; vel, si id facere occupationibus reipublicae prohiberetur, exercitum modo Rhenum transportaret; id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliqui temporis satis futurum: tantum esse nomen atque opinionem eius exercitus, Ariovisto pulso et hoc novissimo proelio facto, etiam ad ultimas Germanorum nationes, uti opinione et amicitia Populi Romani tuti esse possint. Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur.

XVII.—Caesar his de causis, quas commemoravi, Rhenum transire decreverat; sed navibus transire, neque satis tum esse arbitrabatur, neque suae neque Populi Romani dignitatis esse statutebat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultas faciendi pontis proponebatur, propter latitudinem, rapiditatem, altitudinemque fluminis, tamen id sibi contendendum, aut aliter non transducendum exercitum, existimabat. Rationem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bina sesquipedalia, paulum ab imo praecuta, dimensa ad altitudinem fluminis, intervallo pedum duorum inter se iungebat. Haec cum machinationibus immissa in flumen
defixerat fistucis que adegerat, non sublicae modo directa ad perpendiculum, sed prona ac fastigata, ut secundum naturam fluminis procumberent; iis item contraria bina, ad eundem modum iuncta, intervallo pedum quadragenum, ab inferiore parte, contra vim atque impetum fluminis conversa statuebat. Haec utraque insuper bipedalibus trabibus immisis, quantum eorum tignorum iunctura distabat, binis utrimque fibulis ab extrema parte distinebantur; quibus disclusis atque in contrariam parte distinebantur, tanta erat operis firmitudo, atque ea rerum natura, ut, quo maior vis aquae se incitavisset, hoc artius illigata tenerentur. Haec directa materie iniecta contextebantur, et longuriiis cratibusque consternebantur: ac nihilo secius sublicae et ad inferiorem partem fluminis oblique agebantur, quae, pro pariete subiectae et cum omni opere connectae, vim fluminis exciperent: et aliae item supra pontem mediocris spatio, ut, si arborum trunci sive naves deiciendi operis essent a barbaris missae, his defensoribus earum rerum vis minueretur, nee ponti nocerent.

XVIII.—Diebus decem, quibus materia coepta erat comportari, omni opere effecto, exercitus transducitur. Caesar, ad utramque partem pontis firmo praesidio relict, in fines Sigambrorum contendit. Interim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, quibus pacem atque amicitiam petentibus liberaliter respondit, obsidesque ad se adducii iubet. At Sigambri, ex eo tempore, quo pons institui coeptus est, fuga comparata, hortantibus iis quos ex Tenchtheris atque Usipetibus apud se habebant, finibus suis exesserant, suaque omnia exportaverant, sequen in solitudinem ac silvas abdiderant.

XIX.—Caesar, paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus, omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis frumentisque succisis, se in fines Ubiorum recepit; atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suevis premerentur, haec ab iis cognovit: Suevos, posteaquam per exploratores pontem fieri comprehissent, more suo concilio habitu, nuntios in omnes partes dimisisse, uti de oppidis demigrarent, liberos, after laying waste the lands of the Germans, he returned to Gaul and destroys the bridge.
CAESAR'S BRIDGE
ACROSS
THE RHINE.

a, a. Tigna bina sesquipedalia.
b, b. Trabes bipedales.
c, c. Fibulae.
d, d. Directa materia, longuriis cratisbusque construta.
e, e. Sublicae ad inferioriorem partemfluminis oblique actae.
f, f. Sublicae supra pontem immis****sae.
g. Castellum ad caput pontis pos-itum.
h. Longuri.
i. Crates.
CAESAR'S BRIDGE ACROSS THE RHINE.

A. Cross-section.
B. The Bridge seen from above.
uxores, suaque omnia in silvas deponerent, atque omnes qui arma ferre possent unum in locum convenirent: hunc esse delectum medium fere regionum earum quas Suevi obtinerent: hic Romanorum adventum exspectare atque ibi decertare constituisset. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus his rebus confectis, quarum rerum causa transducere exercitum constituerat, ut Germanis metum inceret, ut Sigambros ulcisceretur, ut Ubios obsidione liberaret, diebus omnino decem et octo trans Rhenum consumptis, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum arbitratus, se in Galliam recepit pontemque rescidit.

FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN.

XX.—Exigua parte aestatis reliqua, Caesar, etsi in his locis—quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit—maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod, omnibus fere Gallicis bellis, hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intelligebat: et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen magno sibi usui fore arborabatur, si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus cognovisset: quae omnia fere Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatores illo adit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quicquam praeter oram maritimam atque eas regiones, quae sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque, evocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quantae nationes incolerent, neque quem usum belli haberent, aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui essent ad maiorum navium multitudinem idonei portus, reperire poterat.

XXI.—Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idoneum esse arbitratus Caium Volusenum, cum navi longa praemittit. Huic mandat, uti, exploratis omnibus rebus, ad se quam primum revertatur: ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam transiectus. Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus et, quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum
bellum fecerat, classem iubet convenire. Interim, consilio eius cognito et per mercatores perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus eius insulae civitatisbus ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur obsides dare atque imperio Populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus auditis, liberaliter pollicitus, hortatusque ut in ea sententia permanerent, eos domum remittit, et cum his una Commium—quem ipse, Atrebatisbus superatis, regem ibi constituerat, cuius et virtute et consilium probabat, et quem sibi fidelem arbitrabatur, cuiusque auctoritas in iis regionibus magni habebatur—mittit. Huic imperat, quas possit adeat civitates, horteturque ut Populi Romani fidem sequantur, seque celeriter eo venturum nuntiet. Volusenus, perspectis regionibus, quantum ei facultatis dari potuit qui navi egredi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad Caesarem revertitur; quaeque ibi perspexisset renuntiat.

XXII.—Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt, qui se de superioris temporis consilio excussarent, quod homines barbari, et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti, bellum Populo Romano fecissent, seque ea quae imperasset facturos pollicerentur. Hoc sibi satis opportune Caesar accidisse arbitratus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat, neque belli gerendi, propter anni tempus, facultatem habebat, neque has tantularum rerum occupationes sibi Britanniae anteponendas iudicabat, magnum his obsidum numerum imperat. Quibus adductis, eos in fidem recepit. Navibus circiter octoginta onerariis coactis contractisque, quot satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quicquid praeterea navium longarum habebat, quaestori, legatis, praefectisque distribuit. Huc accedebant octodecim onerariae naves quae ex eo loco ab millibus passuum octo vento tenebantur quominus in eundem portum pervenire possent. Has equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Quinto Titurio Sabino et Lucio Aurunculeio Cotta, legatis, in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legati
non venerant, deducendum dedit. Publium Sulpitium Rufum legatum cum eo praesidio, quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere iussit.

XXIII.—His constitutis rebus, nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem, tertia fere vigilia solvit, equitesque in ulteriorem portum progradit, et naves conscendere, et se sequi iussit: a quibus cum id paulo tardius esset administratum, ipse hora diei circiter quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias armatas conspexit. Cuius loci haec erat natura: adeo montibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in litus telum adiici posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nequaquam idoneum arbitratus locum, dum reliquae naves eo convenirent, ad horam nonam in ancoris exspectavit. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, et quae ex Voluseno cognosset, et quae fieri vellet, ostendit, monuitque—ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritimae res postularent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem motum haberent—ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis, et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo et sublatis anchoris, circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

XXIV.—At barbari, consilio Romanorum cognito, prae- misso equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proeliis uti consuerunt, reliquis copiis subsequuti, nostros navibus egredi prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quod naves, propter magnitudinem, nisi in alto, constitui non poterant; militibus autem, ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, magno et gravi armorum onere oppressis, simul et de navibus desiliendum, et in fluctibus consistendum, et cum hostibus erat pugnandum; cum illi aut ex arido, aut paululum in aquam progressi, omnibus membris expediti, notissimis locis, audacter tela conicerent, et equos insuefactos incitarent. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti, atque huius omnino generis
pugnae imperi, non eadem alacritate ac studio, quo in pedestribus uti proeliis consueverant, utebantur.


XXVI.—Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter; nostri tamen, quod neque ordinis servare, neque firmiter insister, neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alia ex navi, quibuscumque signis occurrerat, se aggregabat, magno opere perturbabantur. Hostes vero, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur: plures paucos circumsistebant: alii ab latere aperto in universos tela coniciebant. Quod cum animum advertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus compleverat, et, quos laborantes conspexerat, iis subsidia submittebat. Nostri, simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consequitis, in hostes impetum fecerunt, atque eos in fugam dederunt, neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesar defuit.
XXVII.—Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt: obsides daturae, quaeque imperasset se se facturos, polliciti sunt. Una cum his legatis Commius Atrebas venit, quem supra demonstraverum a Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos oratoris modo imperatoris mandata perferret, comprehenderat atque in vincula coniecerant: tum, proelio facto, remiserunt et in petenda pace eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignoscetur, petiverunt. Caesar questus, quod, cum ulterius in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petitissent, bellum sine causa intelissent, ignoscere imprudentiae dixit, obsidesque imperavit: quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem, ex longinquioribus locis accessitam, paucis diebus sese daturos dixerunt. Interea suas remigrare in agros iusserunt, principesque undique convenire et se civitatesque suas Caesari commendare coeperunt.

XXVIII.—His rebus pace confirmata, post diem quartum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves octodecim, de quibus supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulereant, ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quae cum appropinquarent Britanniae, et ex castris vidererunt, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla earum cursum tenere posset, sed aliae eodem, unde erant perfectae, referrentur; aliae ad inferiorum partem insulae, quae est propius solis occasum, magno sui cum periculo deicerentur: quae tamen, ancoris iactis, cum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversa nocte in altum progressae, continentem petierunt.

XXIX.—Eadem nocte accidit, ut esset luna plena, qui dies maritimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit: nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat, quasque in aridum subduxerat, aestus complebat; et onerarias quae ad ancoras erant deligatae, tempestas afflictabant; neque ulla nostris facultas aut
administrandi, aut auxiliandi, dabatur. Compluribus navibus fractis, reliquae cum essent—funibus, ancoris, reliquisque armamentis amissis—ad navigandum inutiles, magna (id quod necesse erat accidere) totius exercitus perturbatio facta est: neque enim naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent; et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendas eas usui sunt, et, quod omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

XXX.—Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae, qui post proelium factum ad ea, quae iussaret Caesar, facienda convenerant, inter se colloquuti, cum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intelligerent, et paucitatem militum ex cast orum exiguitate cognoscerent, quae hoc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat, optimum factu esse duxerunt, rebellione facta, frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere, et rem in hiemem producere, quod, iis superatis aut reditu interclusis, neminem postea belli inferendi causa in Britanniam transitterum confidebant. Itaque, rursus coniuratione facta, paulatim ex castris discedere, ac suos clam ex agris deducere coeperunt.

XXXI.—At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventu navium suarum, et ex eo, quod obsides dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat: nam et frumentum ex agris quotidie in castra conferebat, et, quae gravissime afflictae erant naves, earum materia atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur, et, quae ad eas res erant usui, ex continenti comportari iubebat. Itaque, cum id summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commode posset, effecit.

XXXII.—Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque ualla ad id tempus bellis suspicione interposita, cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in
castra ventitaret, ii, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesari renuntiarunt, pulverem maiorem, quam consuetudo feret, in ea parte videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consilii, cohortes, quae in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem proficisci, duas ex reliquis in stationem succedere, reliquas armari et confestim sese subsequi iussit. Cum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi, atque aegre sustinere, et, conferta legione, ex omnibus partibus tela conici, animum advertit. Nam quod, omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento, pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes huc nostros esse venturos, noctu in silvis delituerant: tum dispersos, depositis armis, in metendo occupatos, subito adorti, paucis interfectis, reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant: simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

XXXIII.—Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae; primo per omnes partes perequitant, et tela coniciunt, atque ipso terrore equorum, et strepitu rotarum, ordines plerumque perturbant; et, cum se inter equitum turmas insinuaverint, ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt, atque ita currus se collocant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum, in proelis praestant; ac tantum usu quotidiano et exercitacione efficiunt, uti, in declivi ac praecipiti loco, incitatos equos sustinere, et brevi moderari ac flectere, et per temonem percurrere, et in iugo insistere, et inde se in currus citissime recipere consuerint.

XXXIV.—Quibus rebus, perturbatis nostris novitate pugnae, tempore opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tuit: namque eius adventu hostes constiterunt, nostri se ex timore receperunt. Quo facto, ad laccessendum et ad commitendum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratus, suo se loco continuit, et, brevi tempore intermisso, in castra
legiones reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupatis, qui erant in agris, reliqui discesserunt. Sequae sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris continerent, et hostem a pugna prohiberent. Interim barbari nuntios in omnes partes demiserunt, paucitatemque nostrorum militum suis praedicaverunt, et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sui liberandi facultas daretur, si Romanos castris expulsissent, demonstraverunt. His rebus celeriter magna multitudine peditatus equitatusque coacta, ad castra venerunt.

XXXV.—Caesar, etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus acciderat, fore videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate pericum effugerent; tamen nactus equites circiter triginta, quos Commius Atrebas, de quo ante dictum est, secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro castris constituit. Commissio proelio, diutius nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt, ac terga verterunt. Quos tanto spatio sequuti, quantum cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt, complures ex iis occiderunt; deinde, omnibus longe lateque afflictis incensisque, se in castra receperunt.

XXXVI.—Eodem die legati, ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace, venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum, quem antea imperaverat, duplicavit, eosque in continentem adduci iussit, quod, propinqua die aequinoctii, infirmis navibus, hiemi navigationem subiciendam non existimabant. Ipse, idoneam tempestatem nactus, paulo post medium noctem naves solvit, quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex his onerarie duae eodem, quos reliquae, portus capere non potuerunt, et paulo infra delatae sunt.

XXXVII.—Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi milites circiter, trecenti, atque in castra contenderent Morini, quos Caesar, in Britanniam proficiscens, pacatos reliquerat, spe praedae adducti, primo non ita magno suo numero circumsteternunt, ac, si sese interici nollent, arma ponere iussuerunt. Cum illi, orbe facto, sese defen-
derent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter millia sex convenerunt. Qua re nuntiata, Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites im-petum hostium sustinuerunt, atque amplius horis quatuor fortissime pugnaverunt, et, paucis vulneribus acceptis, complures ex iis occiderunt. Postea vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abiectis armis terga verterunt, magnusque eorum numerus est occisus.

XXXVIII.—Caesar postero die Titum Labienum leg-atum, cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui cum propter siccitates paludum, quo se recipierent, non habe- rent—quo per fugio superiore anno fuerant usi—omnes in potestatem Labieni venerunt. At Quintus Titurius et Lucius Cotta, legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succi-sis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissi-mas silvas abdiderant, se ad Caesarem receperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt; reliquae neglexerunt. His rebus gestis, ex literis Caesaris dierum viginti supplicatio a Senatu decreta est.
NOTES.

BOOK IV.
NOTES.

BOOK IV.

Note.—F.L. = First Latin Book; P.L. = Primary Latin Book. In the case of the former the numbers refer to the pages and sections; of the latter, the Roman numerals refer to the part of the book, and the Arabic to the sub-section.

CHAPTER I.

ea—consulibus: "in the following winter belonging to the year in which Cneius Pompey and Marcus Crassus were consuls." The Latin is loosely expressed. We should expect hieme eius anni qui fuit annus. The Romans marked their years by the names of the consuls as the Athenians did by the name of the chief archon. Each book of Caesar is supposed to record the events of one year: B. I., the events of the Helvetian war of 58 B.C.; B. II., of the Belgic war of 57 B.C.; B. III., of the Venetic of 56 B.C.; B. IV., of the war against the Germans and of the first expedition to Britain, 55 B.C.—Cn. Pompeio M. Crasso consulibus: abl. absol.—Note the absence of the connective.

Usipetes Germani et Tenctheri: we often find the generic with the specific name: cp. Aedui Ambarri: B. I., c. xi. According to Tacitus there were three great divisions of the Germans: the Ingaevones, on the coast of the German ocean: the Hermiones, in the central and eastern parts of Germany: the Istaevones, on the southern parts of the Rhine. The two tribes mentioned here occupied the north bank of the Lippe, about fifty miles below Cologne.

a mari: "from (that part of) the ocean."—quo = in quod.

quod: "the fact that," explains causa: in this sense quod takes the indicative.

Suevis: others have Suebis, a name still preserved in "Suabians." In its narrowest sense the word denotes the Sennones who dwelt between the Elbe and the Oder: but in its widest sense it was equivalent to Hermiones, and included all the tribes in eastern and central Germany, from the upper Rhine to the Vistula and Baltic.

premebantur: "had been hard pressed": note the force of the imperfect.
NOTES.

Suevorum gens: according to Mommsen, the correct orthography is Suebi, and the word is etymologically connected with sweifen, "the rangers," or "nomads": a likely derivation considering the description given here and also in Tacitus (Germ. 38).

pagos: properly country districts of enclosed or cultivated land round a fortified place. Such is the meaning of pagus applied to Italy. Outside of Italy the word had a wider meaning. With the root PAG, "to fix," cp. pango: so, δήμος, "a township" (from δέω, "to bind"); English town: A.S. tun from tynan, "to enclose." The word still exists in the French pays: cp. Pays de Vaud.

ex quibus—educunt: "from each of which yearly they lead out from their territories a thousand armed men." Note the force of the distributive: F.L. 69, 8, (a); P.L. III., 216, c. This would make the force of the Suevi 100,000 men.—quotannis; written thus or quot annis: abl. of point of time. In full it would be tot annis quot sunt: cp. quot mensibus, "monthly."

qui domi manserunt: "who (each year) have remained at home": explain the case of domi: F.L. 86, (first line); P.L. III., 161, (i). Others read manserint: in that case qui = quique qui, giving a reason and hence the subjunctive: "inasmuch as they have remained at home": F.L. 198, 4; P.L. III., 99, (g), iii.

rursus: often used to express contrast or correspondence between two classes (re, versus) as in v. 44; VII. 47; 51.

in vicem: "in turn": literally, "for a turn": in often signifies distribution: cp. in capite, "a head"; in modium, "a peck."

anno post: abl. of measure, "by a year later" = anno postero.

ratio atque usus: literally, "the system and further the practice" or "systematic practice": ratio: "the principle," "the science" of a thing: usus, "the practice": these words are often combined.

privati ac separati: the ager privatus is "land belonging to the individual" opposed to the ager publicus or "land belonging to the state" as a whole: ager separatius is "land marked out by boundaries."

longius anno: probably (1) to prevent the ground getting exhausted by a longer occupation and (2) to prevent the people becoming too much attached to the soil.

frumento—vivunt: vivo, like vescor, takes the ablative.—maximam
partem: "mainly": acc. closer definition or specification: F.L. 98, 3; P.L. III., 83, (e).

multumque—venationibus: "and they are greatly addicted to hunting expeditions"; multum is an adverb: cp. B. vi., 21.

quae res: "and this fact."

genere—exercitatione—libertate: causal ablatives.
a pueris: "from boyhood": cp. Gk. ἐκ παιδων.

nullo—a disposfecti: "as they are trained by no service or schooling": abl. of instrument: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. III., 159, 124.

quod—faciant: "because, as they say, they do": what would faciunt mean? F.L. 198, 2; P.L. 177.


locis frigidissimis: in is omitted, "in the coldest climate": cp. loca temperatio7-a; B. v., 12. Caesar was thinking of the mild winters in Italy.

vestitus: partitive genitive after quidquam.

laventur=se lavent: reflexive use of the passive voice.

CHAPTER II.

mercatoribus—habeant: the construction is: mercatoribus est aditus ad eos (i.e., Germanos) magis eo (conslilio) ut habeant (eos) quibus vendant (ea) quae bella ceperint: "merchants are allowed to go into their country more with the design that they (the Germans) may have persons to whom they may sell the booty which they take in war."—eo: abl. of instrument explained by the clause ut—habeant.—ceperint: subjunctive because quae denotes an indefinite class=talia ut, "such things as," and expresses a consequence. Note the perfect tense as the action expressed in ceperint must precede that expressed in vendant; a purpose is expressed and hence the subjunctive.

desiderent: "require": F.L. 183, 5; P.L. III., 99, (a) I.

quin etiam: "nay even": "moreover." Probably quin=qui ne? "how not?" introducing something startling.

iumentis: perhaps only horses are meant, though the word may be applied to any animal "yoked": for iugumentum, from iugum, "a yoke."
impenso pretio: "at an extravagant price": ablative of value: F.L. 150, 1; P.L. III., 160, (c).

prava atque deformia: "ill-shaped and unsightly."

summi—laboris: "that they are capable of enduring the greatest fatigue": F.L. 124, 1; P.L. III., 156, 118.

eodem vestigio: "in the same spot": the abl. with in omitted as in equestribus proeliis.

cum usus est: "when it is necessary." The indicative with cum is used when the contemporaneous time is expressed in principal and subordinate clauses.

eorum moribus: "according to their customs": causal ablative: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. III., 159, 124.

inertius: "more indolent": or "more unskilful" (in, ars).

ephippiis: cp. ἐφίππια: "trappings of a horse."

quanvis pauci (sint): "however few they may be": distinguish in use quanvis and quamquam.

omnino: "at all": cp. ii., 15, where a similar remark is made of the Nervii.

CHAPTER III.

publice—agros: "they consider it their special glory as a nation that the lands on their borders should lie unoccupied to the widest extent." —publice, "as a nation" opposed to privatim, "as an individual." —quam: note the emphasis that quam gives to superlatives.—a sui finibus: "starting from the territories," i.e., "on the side of their territories."

hac—posse: "by this (they suppose) is shown the fact that a great number of states cannot withstand their power": the subject of significat is the clause magnum—posse.

una ex parte a Suevis: literally, "on one side in the direction of the Suevi," i.e., "on one side of the Suevian land."—agri: partitive genitive: F.L. 69, 10; P.L. III., 155, 113.

succedunt: "come close up."

Ubii: in Caesar's time the Ubii were east of the Rhine. In the reign of Augustus the Ubii removed to the west of the Rhine, and had as their chief town Colonia Agrippinensis (now Cologne).
**BOOK IV.**

\*Germanorum*: "according to German ideas": literally, "as is the comprehension of the Germans." *Captus* means "capacity," "nature," and the passage here means "a state wealthy and flourishing, for a German state."

*humaniores*: "more civilized": so speaking of the inhabitants of Kent, Caesar says, (v., 14) *longe sunt humanissimi.*

*ventitant*: how are frequentative verbs formed?

*moribus*: instrumental abl.: see note Chapter I. Caesar, B. vi., cc. 11-24, compares the customs of the Gauls and the Germans.

*experti*: concessive: "though they had tried often by frequent wars."

*gravitatem*: "importance."

*multo*: abl. of measure, used adverbially. The difference between *multum* and *multo* as adverbs is this, that the former is used with verbs and the latter with comparative adjs. and adverbs. Translate: "reduced them to a state of far less importance and strength."

**CHAPTER IV.**

*in eadem causa*: "in the same condition."

*supra*: in Chapter I., B. iv.

*complures annos*: acc. of continuance of time: F.L. 69, 9; P.L. III., 149, 92.

*ad extremum*: "at last," "finally."

*quas regiones*: referring to the general idea contained in *ad Rhenum.* The country where they had settled was that opposite to Cleves and Nymegen.

*dispositis praeidiis*: "garrisons having been placed at different parts." Note the force of *dis-* in *dispositis.*

*transire prohibebant*: Caesar uses with *prohibeo*: (1) an infinitive as here, and not *ne, quin, quominus* with subjunctive: (2) sometimes an ablative alone, (3) or an ablative with *a* or *ab.*

*omni experti*: "after trying every expedient."

*custodias*: "sentries."

*reverti se*: note that the forms of *revertor* from the present are passive
in form and from the perf., are active. The position of se after reverti instead of before it connects it closely with in suas. Distinguish in meaning redeo and revertor.—tridui viam progressi: "advancing a three days' march."—tridui = trium dierum: F. L. 139, 7, 8; P. L. III., 8, (e): viam F. L. 95, 1; P. L. III., 83, (d).

omni = confecto: "all the distance being covered in one night by the cavalry."—equitatu: either the abl. of instrument or abl. of accompaniment with cum omitted.

priusquam = certior fieret: note that priusquam and antequam take the subjunctive when the idea of purpose is involved as here: F. L. 201, 5; P. L. III., 99, (f), IV.

eorum: i.e., of the Menapii on the west side of the Rhine.—partem: acc. of time.

eorum copiis: "with their resources": ablative of instrument or means by which they live.

CHAPTER V.

infirmitatem "the unstable character:" see notes on Chapters VIII. and X., B. III.

nihil his committendum: scil. esse: "that no confidence ought to be placed in them."—nihil = emphatic non: see note B. III., Chapter XIII.

est = consuetudinis: "now this is a characteristic of the custom of the Gauls": F. L. 124, 1; P. L. III., 81, (a), I.

invitos: "against their will."


auifterit = cognoverit: subjunctive of dependent question: F. L. 176, 2; P. L. 99, (d).

mercatores: explain this accusative: F. L. 96, 2; P. I. II., 95. Decline vulgus. What nouns of the second declension are irregular in gender?

rebus: "facts" opposed to auditionibus: "hearsays."

de summis rebus: "on most important matters."

quorum = est: "of which they are often of necessity compelled to repent immediately after":—quorum: F. L. 165, 1; P. L. III., II., 68. Literally:
of which it is necessary that they repent," or "they must needs repent."—
in vestigio: see note Chapter II., B. III.

et—respondeant: "and in most cases the answers are invented to suit
their wish."—plerique, scil. viatores: "most of the travellers." Distinguish
in meaning between plerique: "most," the "majority," and plurimi,
"very many" but not necessarily the majority.

CHAPTER VI.

qua—cognita: note the introduction of the chapter by a relative showing
a connection with the preceding narrative: "now as he knew this
custom."

ne—occurreret: "to avoid engaging in too serious a war." Caesar was
afraid that he might have to fight the Galli and Germani together. The
tense in occurreret shows that proficiscitur is a historical present: F.L. 216,
2, (a); P. L. III., 107, iii.

ad exercitum: Caesar probably joined his army in Normandy, near
Lisieux: B. III., Chapter XXIX.

consuerat: see note on Chapter I., B. III.

facta: scil. esse, so below with missas, invitatos, dissimulanda.

—uti=ut. That is, to go from the Rhine into the interior of Gaul to help
the inhabitants to throw off the yoke of the Romans.

postulassent=postulavisse: dependent clause in oblique narrative and
hence the subjunctive: F. L. 206, 4; P. L. III., 99, (e).

fore parata: the past part. pass. and fore has the force of a future
perfect: "will have been got ready."

qua spe adducti: "and so led on by their hopes."—qua=itaque ea.
Note that spes is always singular in Caesar.

Eburonum—Condrusorum: the Germans had crossed the Lower Rhine
and were now in the valley of the Meuse by way of Maestricht. [See
Map.]

clientes: "dependents": from root CLU, "to hear," hence "to obey."

quae cognoverat: the subjunctive might have been used if quae were an
interrogative. It is, however, a relative and the expression is only adjec-
tival to ea, and so without any influence on the construction. The meeting of the chieftains probably took place at Amiens.

imperato: "levied."

CHAPTER VII.

comparata: "having been procured": so also parata in the same sense.

quibus in locis: Caesar often repeats the antecedent noun in the relative clause: cp. B. i., c. vi.; erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent.

paucorum dieum iter: for dierum: F.L. 130, 7, 8; P.L. III., 81, (e).

—iter: F.L. 69, 9; P.L. 149, 92.

haec: "as follows": referring to what comes after: see note B. III., Chapter VII.

neque priores inferre: "were neither the first to make war on." Note the difference between priores and primos, the first implying two people, the latter more than two.

inferre, recusare, laecessantur: note the present tense for the sake of vividness in oratio obliqua.

quin—contendant: explain fully the use of quin: F.L. 185, 2, note; P.L. II., 154.

quinque: the antecedent is eis, understood after resistere.

deprecari: properly "to beg off" war.

haec tamen dicere, scil. legati confirmaverunt Germanos, "the ambassadors declared the Germans said these things."

domo: explain fully this case: F.L. 85, 2; P.L. III., 99, (h), i.—Decline domus.

attribuant—partiantur: what mood would this be in direct narration? F.L. 209, (5); P.L. III., 214, (a), 1.

non: the position shows it limits superare: "whom they fail to conquer."

CHAPTER VIII.

ad: "in reply to."—visum est impersonally: scil. responaere: "it seems good to reply." Note that videtur and videbatur are never so used by Caesar.
sibi—posse: “it was not possible for any friendship to exist between him and them.”—sibi: F.L. 120, 3; P.L. iii., 82, (g).


qui—potuerint: why subjunctive? F.L. 198, 4; P.L. iii., 99, (g) iii.—alienos occupare is the subject of esse and non verum the predicate. The order in Latin and in English is often inverted. Distinguish in meaning: alius, alter, alienus.

praesertim: often introduces a fresh reason: cp. kal παύσα in Greek. Translate “which can be given rightly and that too, to so large a horde.”

licere: scil. eis.

in Ubiornum sinibus: on the Rhine opposite to Cologne.

apud se: distinguish the meaning of this from that of secum.

hoc—imperaturum: scil. dixit: “he said that he would command the Ubii to do this.” Caesar could do so as he had held in his power hostages of the Ubii. Note that impero takes a dat. of the person in the sense of “command,” but a dat. of person and acc. of thing in the sense of “demand” or “levy.”

CHAPTER IX.

re deliberata = cum res deliberata esset: “after the matter had been duly considered.” What is the derivation of delibero?

post diem tertium: the next day but one, as the Romans in cases such as this reckoned in the day with which a given period began as well as the one with which it ended instead of taking the first only as we do.

propius se: “nearer them.” What constructions may propius have?

ne—quidem: here “not either,” i.e.: no more than their demands mentioned in Chapter vii.: cp. οὐδὲ.

aliquot diebus ante: the ablative is regarded as the ablative of difference with ante and post.

Ambivaritos: these were Belgians on the west of the Meuse, and since the defeat of the Belgae, under the Roman sway.

interponi: “was introduced”: interponere often means to throw an obstacle in the way: cp. hoc decreto interposito: “this decree having put
an end to the discussion" : B. vii., 33. With *fidem* it is twice used "to pledge one's word" : B. v., Chapters vi., xxxvi.

CHAPTER X.

*Vosego*: the modern Vosges near the northeast frontier of France. The Meuse really rises in the plateau of Langres, the cradle of the French rivers. Vosegus is the Latinized form of the Gallic word *fasach*, "a mountain waste," like the German *Wald*.

*parte*: "tributary." Caesar means here that the *Meuse* (Mosa) after receiving the *Waal* (Vahalis) flows into the Rhine below, eighty miles from the ocean, and forms the island of the Batavians. This implies that the Meuse does not directly flow into the German Ocean. At present, however, it does. If Caesar's account be correct the plain inference is that the geography of the country must have changed. We know that Caesar, however, was often mistaken on points of geography because these were often received on second hand and untrustworthy information.

*Batavorum*: the word *Batavi* still exists in the form *Betuwe*, a name applied to one of the islands in the Rhine, and meaning "good meadow." Their capital was *Lugdunum* (now Leyden), and not to be confounded with *Lugdunum* in Gaul (now Lyons).

*Rhenus*: this word is derived from root *sru*: "to rush" or "flow": so *Rhodanus*: *Roma* (=srouma, "the stream town"): *rēw, rēwma.—*ex Leopontiis: "from out of the country of the Leopontii," i.e., "in the country of the Leopontii." This name is still preserved in the modern Val Leventina on the upper course of the Ticino (Ticinus).

*longo spatio*: "after a long distance": abl. abs.

*citatus furtur*: "flows swiftly."

*sunt qui*: literally, "there are those who": "some." Here = *aliqui*.

*piscibus—ovis—vivere*: see note Chapter i., B. iv.

*capitibus*: here *caput* means the "mouth" of a river. Other writers use *i* in the sense of the "source": cp. Hor. Od. B. i., i. 23: *ad aquae lene caput sacrae*.

CHAPTER XI.

*passuum duodecim millibus*: abl. after the comparative with quam omitted. The ablative is not, however, governed by the comparative,
but is the ablative of extent or difference since *amplius* has no influence on the construction: cp. *amplius octingentos* next chapter; so we find it with the nom. B. VII., Chap. xv.: *amplius viginti urbes incenduntur*; or with genitive, B. I., Chap. xxxviii.: *quod est non amplius pedum sexcentorum.*

*ut erat constitutum*: "that the envoys should return the next day but one.

*congressi, scil. cum eo*: "meeting with him."

*antecessissent*: "to head the line of march": F.L. 188, 5 (a); P.L. III., 99, (c). Explain fully the order of the line of march of a Roman army.

*praemitteret, scil. quosdam*: the object is omitted as in English.

*sibique—mittendi*: "and that he would give them an opportunity of sending ambassadors among the Ubii": observe the construction of *potestatem facere* with dat. of person and gen. of gerund.—*sibi, i.e. Germanis*, not simply *legatis."

*senatus*: "council." Caesar here speaks of the deliberative assembly of his enemies as if they were Romans.

*sibique—fecisset*: "pledged their word of honour to them on oath." Note the pluperfect tense as representing the prior of two actions.—*iureiurando*: literally, "with," or "by an oath."

*ea conditione—se usuros, scil. esse*: "that they would accept the terms of agreement." What verbs govern the ablative? F.L. 116; P.L. III., II., 65.

*daret*: subjunctive of oblique command: *da*, in direct narrative.

*eodem illo pertinere*: "tended to that same end," "pointed in the same direction."

*ut—reverterentur*: explains *eodem illo.*

*abessent*: subjunctive by attraction to the mood of *reverterentur.*

*convenirent*: subjunctive of command in *oratio obliqua*: *convenite*, of *oratio recta.*

*qui nuntiarent=(eos) ut ei*: "men to bear the order": F.L. 188, 5, (a); P.L. III., 99, (c). Here *nuntiarent=mandatum perferrent.* Note that *mittit* is a historic present as shown by the tense in *nuntiarens.*

*sustinerent*: "hold their ground": not often is *sustinere* used without an object.
NOTES.

quoad—accessisset: the mood is doubly necessary: (1) from the clause being a dependent one in oratio obliqua; (2) because the final notion of expectation is involved: F.L. 206, 4; P.L. III., 99, (a).

CHAPTER XII.

at: often introduces a change of subject.

ubi—consperxerunt: "as soon as they caught sight of our cavalry": with ubi primum: cp. cum primum.—ubi meaning "when" takes the perfect indicative except in B. II., c. 9, ubi faciunt; B. IV., 26, ubi con-

spexerant.

cum—haberent: "though they themselves had not more than eight hundred": for subjunctive: F.L. 198, 4; P.L. III., 99, (b), v.—octingen-
tos; see note on passum duodecim milibus: B. IV., Chapter XI.

nihil—nostris: "while our men had no apprehension."—nihil may be taken as the object of timentibus or as an emphatic non: as in B. III., 13.


rursus resistentibus: scil. nostris.

consuetudine sua: "according to their custom": abl. of manner, often ex is expressed: B. IV., Chapter XXXII.

subfossis—deiectis: these ablative absolutes are not co-ordinate in time: "the horses being stabbed from beneath and, in consequence, many of our men being thrown from their horses":—deiectis, scil. de equis.

ut non—venissent: "that they did not cease from flight until they came into sight of our army."—fuga: F.L. 158, 2; P.L. III., 85, (h).—

venissent: for the subjunctive: F.L. 201, 5; P.L. III., 106.

interficiuntur: historical present F.L. 216, 2 (a); cp. B. V. Chapter XV.

Piso Aquitanus: the Aquitanian obtained probably his Roman name when the rights of a Roman citizen were conferred upon him: cp. B. I., 47.


amicus: a distinction given for extraordinary services as in the case of Sequanian Catamantaloedes (B. I., 3); of Ariovistus (B. I., 35).

equo vulnerato: abl. absolute expressing both time and cause.

cecidisset: distinguish this in meaning from cecidisset.

id: "this mishap."
CHAPTER XIII.

hoc—proelio: express this in other ways.

iam: joined to a negative as here: “no longer.”—sibi: F.L. 173, 4; P.L. III. 82, (d).

ab iis qui: “from such men as”: hence the subjunctive of result in intulissent: F.L. 188, 5, (a); P.L. III., 99, (b). For what other reason may this be subjunctive? F.L. 206, 4; P.L. III., 106.

per dolum atque insidias: “by the employment of craft and treachery”: join these words with intulissent. These expressions are nearly equivalent to adverbs: cp. per summum dedecus: “most disgracefully”: de improviso, “suddenly”: de integro, “afresh.”

petita pace: see note on equo vulnerato: B. IV., chap. XII.

exspectare: object of iudicabat and the subject of esse.

dum—reverteretur: “until the forces of the enemy should be increased and their cavalry return”: for the subjunctive: F.L. 201, 4; P.L. 69, (f), iii. Distinguish in meaning redeo and revertor; cresco and augeo.

summae dementiae esse: “was the height of madness”: F.L. 124; P.L. III., 81, e, ii; predicate genitive after esse.

cognita infirmitate: ablative absolute expressing a cause; “owing to,” or “from his knowledge of the fickleness.”


nihil spati=nihil temporis: F.L. 69, 10; P.L. III., 81, (b).

ne—praetermitteret: explanatory of consilio: “not to let pass any battle day,” i.e., a favourable chance for bringing on a battle—pugnae may be either (1) a genitive, like tempus committendi proelii, or (2) a dative of purpose.

postridie eius diei: literally, “on the morrow of that day.”

perfidia: what is the force of per in perfidus, perins? It was likely that Caesar charges the Germans with a breach of faith to justify his own indefensible conduct.

maioribus natu: give the positive and superlative of this expression.

simul—simul=et—et: “both . . . and.”
sui: F.L. 171, 6; P.L. II., 134.

contra—dictum: "contrary to what had been arranged." The subjunctive is owing to the virtual oratio obliqua. We might have expected contra id quod esset dictum. It is rare that contra is used with atque though we often find aliter ac: B. II., c. XIX.

si quid possent: "whatever they could": F.L. 95, 1; P.L. III., 83, (d), i.

ut—impetrarent: "that they might gain their object as to the truce by playing false." What words are used only in the plural?


CHAPTER XIV.

acie—instituta: express in other ways.

millium, scil. passuum, an omission probably for the sake of euphony, and only in case of gen. pl.: B. I., 41; II., 17; v., 13.

prius—quam—possent: F.L. 201, 5; P.L. III., 99, (f), IV.


omnibus—rebus: "by the whole state of affairs."

discussu suorum, scil. principum: "by the withdrawal of their chiefs."

perturbantur=dubitant, or in perturbantur we have a pregnant construction for perturbantur dubitazione, "are distracted with doubt." Note the historical present as shown by praestaret.

—ne—an—an: in triple disjunctive questions Caesar also uses utrum,—ne, an: utrum, an, an: and—ne, an, with the first conjunctive omitted.

pristini diei: a descriptive genitive: P.L. 130, 7, 8; P.L. III., 81, (e).

quo loco—quo in loco, i.e., in castris: the preposition in is often omitted with locus: cp. alieno loco (B. I., c. 15), iniquo loco (B. II., 33), idoneo loco (B. III., 17).

puerorum mulierumque: "consisting of children and women." Caesar's action in thus cancelling the truce and butchering defenceless women and children was so severely censured at Rome that Cato declared that Caesar ought to be delivered up to the Tenchtheri: (Plut. Caesar 22).
CHAPTER XV.

post tergum: "behind them"; cp. a tergo: "from behind," "in the rear."

Mosae et Rheni: Schneider supposes the place here to be below the Batavorum insula, and eighty miles from the sea (Chapter x.). Kra ner says that the spot was at the junction of the Maas and Waal: Herzog, Thiel, where the Waal turns to the Maas. Another reading for Mosae is Mosulae. At the confluence of the Rhine and Mosel was the Roman colony of Confluentes (now Coblenz).

reliqua fuga desperata: "despairing of further flight": for construction of despero; see note on desperata salute: B. III., Chapter III.

ad unum: "to a man."

ex tantī belli timore: "after the dread of so great a war": or "freed from the dread of so great a war": join these words closely to se receperunt. Others take the preposition ex as here a substitute for the concessive abl. absolute: (see note on ex loco superiore, B. III., Chapter IV.), and translate: "great though the apprehension of so important a war had been."

millium: genitive of description: F.L. 130, 7, 8; P.L. III., 81, (e).

iis—fecit: it is a very strong proof that Caesar did not believe the senate guilty of the charges against them when he spared them. He put to death the senators of the Veneti (B. III., Chapter XVI.), whom he did think guilty, though he admitted that they acted on compulsion.

apud eum: "in his camp": literally "near him."

libertatem, scil, remanendi apud eum: "leave to remain in his camp."

CHAPTER XVI.

Germanico: adj. equivalent to an objective genitive: "against the Germans."

iustissima: "the best grounded."—quod: explains illa: "namely that."

suis—voluit: "he wished that they should have fears for the safety of their own possessions as well": for the dative rebus: F.L. 5, 4; P.L. III., 82.

accessit—quod: "there was also the fact that": see note on Chapter II., B. III.
supra: see B. iv., Chapter IX.

qui—postularent = ut ei postularent: F.L. 184, i; P.L. III., 99, (a), i.

intulissent: subjunctive after the virtual oblique narrative implied in postularent.

dederent: ut is sometimes omitted after verbs of demand or command: F.L. 181, 3; P.L. II., 27.

non aequum—iniquum: "an unfair thing" : aequum agrees with the clause Germanos transire.

sui imperii—potestatis: F.L. 69, 10; P.L. III., 81, (e), ii.

postularet: what would this be in direct discourse? F.L. 209, (5); P.L. III., 106, (a).

quod—premerentur: the subjunctive of oblique narrative introduced by orabant.

si—prohiberetur: "if he were hindered from doing this by being engrossed by state business."

occupatio: does not mean business itself, as in English "occupation," but "the engrossing power of business."—transportaret: see note dederent above.

id—futurum: "this would be sufficient for (present) aid and a ground of hope for the future."—ad: 'as regards,' 'for.'—reliqui temporis: descriptive genitive.

pulso—facto: "by the defeat of Ariovistus, and the occurrence of that very recent battle." Note the Latin idiom. The English noun is contained in the Latin participle. For the connection between Ariovistus and the Suevi, see B. I., 58: v., 29, 55; vi., 12.

opinione—tuti: "rendered safe by this prestige and friendship": abl. of instrument.

CHAPTER XVII.

navibus: instrumental ablative.

satis tutum: when in an enemy's country Caesar was always very careful to keep the district behind him well secured.

suae dignitatis esse: "to be conformable to his own dignity": F.L. 124; P.L. III., 81, e, ii.
etsi—proponebatur: "though the very great difficulty of making a bridge was presented to him," *i.e.*, was evident. For this force of *proponere*, see B. I., Chap. 17, 20: III., 18.

*id sibi contemnendum, scil. esse:* "that he ought to strive to effect it."—*sibi*: F. L. 173, 4; P. L. 104 (a), i.

*rationem—instituit:* "the plan of the bridge he adopted was as follows." It is generally supposed that Caesar crossed the Rhine near Bonn, where the river is from 14 to 16 feet in depth and 1500 to 1600 feet wide.

tigna—*iungebat:* "he joined together in pairs piles, at a distance of two feet from one another, each a foot and a half in thickness, sharpened a little at the bottom and proportioned in their length to the depth of the river."—*bina*: what are the uses of distributives?—*sesquipedalia*: give the derivation of this word.—*ab imo praecuta*: literally, "sharpened from the lower end."—*iungebat:* "he joined in successive pairs": hence the imperfect.

*haec—statuebat:* "when he had sunk these in the river, and had fastened them by means of rafts, and had driven them home by rammers, not like a pile perfectly upright, but leaning forward and slanting, so that they should incline according to the direction of the current; in like manner opposite to these, at the distance of forty feet, at a point lower down, he placed other pairs, joined in the same manner and slanted against the force and current of the river."—*defixerat*: the pluperfect denotes repeated action—*sublicae modo*: because a pile is perpendicular, but these beams slanted a little.—*fastigate*: sloping like the gable ends (*fastigium*) of a house.—*quadragenum = quadragenorum*. Note the force of the distributive, forty feet in each case, with each pair of beams (*tigna*): F. L. 69, 8; P. L. III., 58, (c).

*haec—distinebantur:* "each pair of these piles besides was kept asunder, after beams had been let in between them two feet thick—the distance between the posts (of each pair of piles)—by two braces, one on each side at their extremity."—The *trabes* passed between the *tigna* and had one *fibula* above and one below. The *fibulae* kept firmly the *trabes* in their places; see plan.

*quibus—tenerentur:* "now that these (piles) were kept apart and had been braced in opposite directions, such was the solidity of the structure and such the nature of the materials that the greater the force of the current that drove against it, so much the more firmly were the piles kept bound together."—*quibus disclusis*: F. L. 100, 5; P. L. III., 85, (o).—*quo maior*

haec—consternantur: "these (cross-beams) were connected together by laying timber on straight, and were overlaid with poles and hurdles."

—haec, i.e., the *trubes bipedales*. The timber (*materia*) or girders were laid at right angles to the current in the direction of the bridge.—longuriis: joists, laid on the girders (*materia*) in the direction of the current.—cratibus: section of wicker work, probably branches of trees, laid over the joists to take the place of planks: see plan.

ac—exciperent: "and no less carefully piles were also driven in obliquely at the lower point of the stream, so that they being placed by way of a buttress and joined with every part of the structure might stem the force of the river."—nihil secius: literally "different by nothing." These posts driven so as to slant up the stream braced the piers by breaking the force of the torrent.—exciperent: F.L. 187, 1; P.L. III., 99, (b).

spatio: abl. of degree of difference, as *supra pontem* has the force of a comparative.

temia operis causa: "for the purpose of destroying the work": F.L. 171, 6; P.L. III., 104.

his defensoribus=his defendentibus: abl. abs. expressing cause: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. III., 85, (o).

rerum, i.e., trunci, naves.—neu=neve: "and not."

CHAPTER XVIII.

decem diebus: abl. of time within which the action occurs.

quibus: "from the time that," "after": see note on *quibus*, Chapter XXIII., B. III.

coepta erat comportari: note that the pass. form of *coepi* is used when a passive infinitive is added; the active form when an active infinitive follows:

he began to besiege the city: the city began (in Latin was begun) to be besieged.

praesidio relicito: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. III., 85, (o).

quibus . . . petentibus: "to whose request for peace and friendship"=qui cum peterent.

fuga—iis: these abl. absolutes are not co-ordinate, the latter depending on the former: "had made preparations for flight owing to the strong
advice of these” : as if he had said fugam comparaverant cum ii hortarentur. — finibus excesserant : exedere may take abl. alone or abl. with ex or the accusative.

CHAPTER XIX.

paucos dies : accusative of duration of time.

vicis ; cp. Fowkts : Eng. -wick, as in Ber-wick.


nuntios demigrarent : scil. hortantes: “had sent messengers in all directions urging them to leave their towns” : F.L. 181, 3 ; P.L. III., 99, (2). It is not likely that the Suevi had walled towns : cp. B. vi., Chap. 22.

hunc — obtinerent : “this was a chosen spot almost in the centre of these districts which the Suevi occupied.” — medium : predicate agreeing with locum understood = in medio.

decertare : “to fight a pitched battle” : cp. depugnare ; καταπολεμών.

quod : “and this fact.”

rebus : explained by the appositional clauses introduced by ut : F.L. 181, 1 ; P.L. III., 124, 27. The objects here mentioned were not accomplished, and altogether the results of this expedition were fruitless.

obsidione : the fact is that the Suevi had reduced the Ubii to the position of slaves. He probably means by the word that they were hemmed in on all sides : cp. B. vii., 32.

profectum, scil. esse : “that enough had been gained.”

CHAPTER XX.

exigua — reliqua : “though but a small part of the summer remained” : F.L. 100, 5 ; P.L. III., 85, (0).

etsi — hiemes : “though in this district the winters set in early, because all Gaul slopes to the north.” Note that etsi in Caesar occurs with the present, imperfect or pluperfect indicative in Caesar, but never with the subjunctive. The word Britannia is derived from the Keltic brit or brith, “painted,”
from the custom of the inhabitants staining their bodies: B. v., 14. In the old Welsh poems the island is called Prydom and the people Brython. The name Albion was also given to it: (cp. Aristotle de Mundo 3), which may be derived from alp, “white” or “high.”


quod—intelligebat: cp. B. III., Chapter IX., where he mentions the fact that the Nanneles and Veneti sent to Britain for aid in carrying on their wars against the Romans. Dion Cassius says that Caesar’s motive was simply to be the first Roman who invaded the island. Suetonius attributes the expedition to avarice, mentioning the pearl fisheries as the inducement.

bellis Gallicis: “in the wars against the Gauls”: probably an ablative of time or the ablative within a point of time, or in may be omitted.

inde ex Britannia.

si—deficeret: “even though the time of the year would prevent him from carrying on a regular campaign”: for the subjunctive of oblique narrative see F.L. 206, 4; P.L. III., 106.

magno usui: “of great advantage”: F.L. 134, 1; P.L. III., 82, (c). The frequent allusion to the conquest of Britain in the subsequent literature of Rome shows how popular such an expedition was.

si—cognovisset: the clauses introduced by si are really the subject of fore. Note the asyndeton in loca, portus, aditus.

Gallis: there can be no doubt that Caesar is wrong here; cp. his statements in B. III., Chapter VIII.: naves habent Veneti plurimas quibus in Britanniam navigare consuerunt.

neque = quisquam: “for not a single person goes there without a purpose.” Note the emphatic position of quisquam. Zumpt says, p. 280: “temere means, properly, at random, opposed to consulto, deliberately. Joined with non, temere acquires (but not in Cicero) a peculiar significance = non facile.” This has the backing of the Greek paraphrast who translates this ὅποιος. If this is so, translate, “for it is no easy matter for any one to go there.”

Gallias: the divisions of Gaul are meant. In Caesar’s time these were Gallia Cisalpina and Gallia Transalpina. Augustus (B.C. 27) divided Gaul into Narbonensis, Aquitania Lugdunensis, Belgica.
esset: dependent question: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. III., 99 (d).

incoherent: scil. eam.

nationes: gens (Greek φόλον) was a nation sprung from a common origin: natio (Greek ἐθνός) was a subdivision of the gens.

maiorum navium: he refers to the transports (naves onerariae).

CHAPTER XXI.

priusquam—facere: “before he made the attempt”: when does priusquam take the indicative and when the subjunctive? F.L. 201, 5; P.L. III., 99, (f), IV. Note the original meaning of periculum: cp. Greek πείρα, πειράματα.

Caius Volusenus: see note B. III., Chapter V.

navi longa: see note B. III., Chapter IX.


Morinos: “into the country of the Morini.” The Morini were “the dwellers on the sea”: see note B. III., Chapter IX. They occupied the district from the Scaldis (now Scheldt) on the east to the Samara (now Somme) on the west. Their chief town was Gesoriacum, afterwards Bonnonia (now Boulogne). The brevissimus traiectus is, of course, the Straits of Dover which is 21 miles in width between Dover and Calais.

Veneticum bellum: see B. III. This war was carried on B.C. 56.

eius = Caesaris.—perlato: “having been reported.”

qui polliceantur = ut ei polliceantur: F.L. 184, 1; P.L. III., 99, (a), 1.

dare: rarely do we find a present infinitive and an omission of pronouns with verbs of promising: F.L. 110, 1; P.L. III., 101, ii.

liberaliter pollicetur: “making kind promises to them.”—domum: F.L. 85, 1; P.L. III., 88, (g).

Atrebatibus superatis: the Atrebates a people of Gallia Belgica occupied what was once called Artois (probably a corruption of the name), but now named Pas-de-Calais. Others say that Arras (Flemish Atrecht) is a
corrupt form of the name. They were defeated by Caesar at the river Sabis (now Sambre). A portion of them, after their defeat, crossed over to Britain and settled in Berkshire on the Thames. It is quite probable that Caesar may have been influenced in sending Commius to Britain by the fact, that he being king of the Atrebates on the continent would also exercise an influence over his countrymen in Britain.

magni—habebatur: "was highly esteemed": magni is the genitive of value: F.L. 159, 2; P.L. III., 81, (g).

huic=Commio.

possit, scil. adire.—adeat: F.L. 96, 2; P.I. II., 95. Often ut is omitted after mando: cp. B. III., Chapter III.: huic mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat.

eo=in Britanniam.

ut—fidem sequantur: "to join the side of": literally, "seek the protection of."

seque: construe imperatque huic ut nunciet se (Caesarem) celeriter venturum esse eo.

perspectis regionibus: "after ascertaining the nature of the country": B. III., Chapter VII.: cognoscere regiones.

quantum—potuit: "as far as his means allowed him."—facultatis: partitive genitive: literally, "as much of opportunity as."

qui=quippe qui: "inasmuch as he": F.L. 198, 4; P.L. III., 99, (g).

navi egredi: "to disembark": cp. ἐκ νῆσος ἐκβαίνειν. Caesar uses both navi egredi or ex navi egredi.


CHAPTER XXII.

dum—moratur: note that dum, expressing time merely, meaning "while" always takes the present indicative except in B. VII., 82, even when the principal verb is evidently past.

qui excusarent: "to offer the following excuse for their past conduct": F.L. 184, 1; P.L. III., 99, (a), 1. This refers to the events narrated in the previous book; Chap. xxviii.
nostrae consuetudinis: he refers to the mercy shown by the Romans to those who yielded to their power.

Populo Romano: dative of the object, "against the Roman people." There is implied a hostile relation in bellum facere: cp. μᾶχεσθαι τινι.

sequae: construe legatique venerunt, qui pollicerentur se facturos ea quae imperasset.

hoc—accidisse: "this was a tolerably good streak of fortune." For another meaning of accidit see note B. III., Chapter II.

quod—volebat: the indicative as giving Caesar's own reasons.—post tergum "behind him."

has—anteponendas: "this business consisting of such trifles": for descriptive genitive: F.L. 130, 7, 8; P.L. III., 81 (e).

Britanniae=traiectui in Britanniam: "to his expedition to Britain." This condensed mode of expression (brachylogy) is common in Greek and Latin poetry: κώμαι χαρίτεσσων ὤμοια: "hair like (the hair of) the graces." So Shakespeare Coriolanus, Act II. sc. 2, 21: his ascent is not so easy as those who, etc.

quibus adductis eos: quibus referring to the hostages: eos, to the Morini. —in fident: "as a pledge" that the Morini would carry out their agreement.

coactis—contractisque: "having been collected and mustered."—coactis has the idea of collection under compulsion: contractis implies only their assembling.

quicquid—habebat: "all the ships of war he had besides." Note the use of quicquid navium=omnes naves: cp. Hor. Epist. 5, 1: at Odeorum quicquid in coelo regit: Livy, 3, 9: per quicquid deorum est.

huc—accedebant: "here were to have joined them." The imperfect expresses sometimes an unfilled intention: F.L. 216, 3, note 1; P.L. III., 191 (b).

ab—octo: "at the distance of eight miles." We sometimes find ab with the ablative of distance, and generally it is so used when the place is not mentioned, but understood from what precedes. Zumpt (§ 396) inclines to the idea that in the mind of the speaker the place is mentally governed by the preposition. We also find the same idiom in Greek: ἄπο σταδίων εἰκόσιν τῆς πόλεως.
NOTES.

quo minus = ut eo minus: goes with tenebantur, a verb of hindrance: F.L. 185, 2; P.L. III., 99, 1., 1.

Q. Titurio Sabino. Sabinus and Cotta were legati of Caesar, and seem to have been highly esteemed by their commander. They perished in an ambuscade planned by Ambiorix, king of the Eburones: B. v., 37. When these two are mentioned, the name of Sabinus comes first: B. iv., c. 38; B. v., c. 24; B. v., c. 52: B. vi., c. 32; but in B. vi., c. 37, the name of Cotta occurs first. Sabinus was probably the senior officer and higher in command, though both are styled legati.

Menapios: a people of Gallia Belgica who inhabited both sides of the Rhine. Their chief town was Castellum Menapiorum (now Kessel).

CHAPTER XXIII.

his constitutis rebus: express this in other ways.

tempestatem: "weather": a general term either good or bad according to the context.

tertia vigilia: the night was divided by the Romans into four watches, each of which would average three hours. Caesar would set out about midnight. It was generally held that the date was the 26th August. As to the port from which Caesar sailed many conflicting opinions are held. Mr. Airy, the Astronomer Royal, contends that Caesar started from the estuary of the Somme, and landed at the beach of Pevensey, on the coast of Sussex, near the spot where William the Conqueror disembarked eleven centuries afterwards. Mommsen favours the idea that the infantry embarked at Ambleteuse (which he identifies with portus Itius), and the cavalry at Wissant, east of Cape Gris-Nez; (Hist. of Rome, iv., 7). Strabo also gives portus Itius for the first expedition. Others say that the infantry started from Gesoriacum (Boulogne) and the cavalry at Ambleteuse.

solvit, scil. naves: "he set sail": for the omission of naves: cp. Cic. de Off. III., 12, 50: de Murena, 25; cp. the Greek expression αἰρεῖν ναῦσι, or ναῦς.

equites—progredi: so that they might embark in the eighteen ships that were windbound.

naves—conscendere: "to embark": cp. ἐπιβαίνειν ναύσι, or εἰσβαίνειν εἰς νῆος. With conscendere we have either naves or in naves. In the same way Tacitus uses ascendere: Ann II., 75.
cum—administratum esset: the subjunctive after cum gives a reason for his starting with the cavalry.—id: refers to the embarkation of the cavalry. They were detained by stress of weather since they did not start till the 30th of August.—tardius: “too slowly”: F.L. 56, 55.

hora—quarta: as sunrise would be shortly after 5 a.m., he would reach Britain about 9 a.m. Dr. Halley thinks that Caesar landed at Deal; D’Anville says at portus Lemanis (now Lymne), a short distance below Dover, while Mr. Airy gives Pevensey on the Sussex coast.

mis: “the vanguard.”

expositas: here in the sense of collocatas or instructas. Elsewhere in Caesar exponere means (1) to disembark or (2) to point out, explain.

adeo—angustis: “so close to it.”

in litus: “to the water’s edge”: cp. Celsus (Dig. 50, 16, 96): litus est quosque maximus flunctus a mari pervenit.—litus=Greek ῥηβῶν: ripa = Greek ḍχθη, the bank of a river: ora=Greek ἄρη, the bank of land on the water.

ad—egrediendum, scil. ex navibus: see note B. iv., Chapter XXI.

nequiquam idoneum: “altogether unsuited”: litotes.

dum—convenirent: F.L. 201, 4; P.L. III., 99, (f), iii.

in anoris exspectavit: a pregnant construction for naves ad anchoras deligavit et exspectavit: “he cast anchor and waited.”

legatis—convocatis: as the imperator, legati, tribuni, militum and primipilus formed the council of war, Caesar may here refer to its being called.


monuitque: followed by the clause ut postularent which is also followed by the clause (ut) administrarentur. The construction is loose and very doubtful Latin. With the reading the full construction is: monuitque (ut) omnes res administrarentur ab iis ad nutum et ad tempus ut rei militaris ratio, etc.: “he warned them that everything must be done with strict regard to the signal and the time, since military practice and especially maritime affairs required this, inasmuch as these latter had a rapid and ever-changing movement”: for the omission of ut: F.L. 181, 3; P.L. III., 124, 27, f., r.—ut quae: F.L. 196, 4; P.L. III., 99, (g), iii.

sublatis—ancoris: “having weighed their anchors”: cp. αἰρεσθαι τὰς ἀλκίρας,
constituit: "he moored": cp. ἐπὶ ἄγκυρας ὁμεῖν.

ab eo loco: from Dover, probably towards the northeast.

aperto ac plano litore: between Walmer Castle and Deal.

CHAPTER XXIV.

at: generally denotes a change in the narrative.

essedariis: the word essedum or esseda is from the Keltic ess, "a chariot." It seems to have been used by the Gauls and the Germans, as well as by the Britons, cp. Verg. Georg. iii., 204; Cic. ad Fam., 7, 6; Phil., 2, 58. It appears to have resembled the διορος of Homer, but to have been heavier, and open in front as well as behind. The aurigae mentioned in Chapter XXXIII. seem to have been the masters, while the fighting was done by the clientes or retainers. The word essedarii includes both aurigae and clientes: cp. Tac. ag. 12: auriga honestior: clientes propugnans. This was the reverse of the Homeric method, where the driver (ἤναρχος) was regarded as a mere attendant (θεριπόν), while the warrior (ὁρως) was the chief man.

quo—genere: this statement does not harmonize with that of Tacitus (Ag. 12): in pedite robur: quaedam nationes et curru proeliantur.—consuerunt = consuerunt: see note B. III., Chapter 1.

reliquis—subsequuti: "following close with the rest of the forces": cp. II., 19; II., 11, where cum is used. "It must be observed, as an exception, that the ancient writers, especially Caesar and Livy, in speaking of military movements, frequently omit the preposition cum, and use the ablativus alone." Zumpt, 437.

ob has causas: "for the following reasons." Note that hic refers to what follows as well as to what precedes. With the former it is equivalent to the Greek τοιοῦτος, ὁδε, and the latter to οὕτως, τοιοῦτος.

quod—poterant: giving Caesar's own reason. What would possent mean?

militibus autem—cum illi: the order of the clauses is inverted. The second should come first, since autem = ὅτε, and cum = πρὸς. For the case of militibus: F.L. 173, 4; P.L. iii., 152, 105; of locis: F.L. 85, 3; P.L. iii., 161, 125, (a).—oppressis of course agrees with militibus, "weighed down." Translate: "the soldiers, moreover, weighed down with a great and heavy burden of armour, were compelled at one and the same time to leap down from the ships." The arms of an ordinary soldier (miles legionarius) were (a) defensive, consisting of a shield (scutum or clipeus); a helmet
(galea): a coat of mail (lorica); greaves (ocrea): and (b) offensive, a sword (graunus); two javelins (pila).

omnibus—expediti: "having none of their limbs burdened with armour."


CHAPTER XXV.

Quod—advertit: the usual construction with animum advertere in the classical period is, animum advertere ad aliquam rem or alicui rei. The construction with two accusatives, one being a pronoun, id, hoc, illud, etc., is ante-classical, and though it occurs in Caesar and Sallust is really archaic. Cicero uses the form of animadvertere which Caesar also uses.—quod may be taken as (1) the accusative of specification or (2) as governed by the preposition in composition.

naves longas: see note Chapter IX., B. III.

species: (cp. eido) "appearance," embracing size, colour, shape, etc.: figura signifies "outline." The Britons like the Veneti (B. III., Chap. XIV.) were unaccustomed to see large vessels propelled by oars.

motus expeditior: "the speed of which rendered them more suitable for service."—ad usum = ad navigandum.

ad latus apertum: "on their unprotected flanks." This expression means here "the right": so in B. II., Chap. XXIII.; B. VII., Chap. LXXXII. The clipeus or scutum protected the left.

fundis—tormentis: the slingers (funditores) and the archers (sagittarii) belonged to the class of the velitès, or light armed infantry. The inhabitants of the Balearic islands supplied the former while the Cretans supplied the archers. By tormenta Caesar refers to the catapulta, balista, and scorpioves formed on the principle of the cross bow for hurling darts and stones against the enemy.

propelli ac subnoveri: "to be driven off and dislodged": an example of hysteron proteron.

magnus usui: note B. IV., Chap. XX.

paullum modo: "just a little," "only a short distance."

atque: at the beginning of a new sentence atque is rare and marks a strong contrast between what follows and what precedes: "and then."
Cunctantibus: abl. absolute. Curtius distinguishes the roots in cunctor, “to hesitate”: (connected with ὀκῳεῖν); cunctus (= convinctus or coiunctus), “whole,” “all”; and percontor, “to enquire” (connected with contus, κόντος) “a punt pole.”

qui aquilam ferebat = aquilifer: “the eagle bearer.” A bronze or silver eagle (aquila) was adopted by Marius in his second consulship (104 B.C.) as the standard of the legion. The standards of the cohortes were called signa, and seem to have been different for the different cohorts of the same legion. A figure of victory, a round ball, a hand and other emblems were used. The standard of the cavalry was a kind of banner called vexillum. The honour of carrying the eagle belonged to the first centurion of the first maniple of the triarii. He was called primi pili centurio or principilus, and he had an oversight over the other centurions. Along with the tribuni militum, praefecti, legati and imperator he formed the council of war. He held the rank of an eques.—decimae legionis: the tenth was evidently Caesar’s favourite legion: cp. B. I., Chap. XL: huic legioni Caesar et propter virtutem confidebat maxime. The legions were numbered prima, tertia, etc., according to the order of enlistment.

contestatus deos: the Romans entered upon every important undertaking with an appropriate formula of prayer to the deity or deities likely to aid them.

ea res: “his undertaking.”—commilitones: “comrades.”

nisi vultis: F.L. 210, I; P.L. III., 99, (h). To lose the standard was always looked upon as most disgraceful, especially to the standard-bearer, since it was a violation of the military oath (sacramentum), which bound the soldier “not to desert their standard through a desire to escape or through fear, nor leave their ranks”: Livy, 22, 38. To animate the soldiers the standard was sometimes thrown among the enemy: Livy, III., 70; II., 59, VI., 8.

officium praestitero: “shall perform my duty.” The future perfect has here the force of a quickly completed future action.

magna: “loud.”—inter se: “each other.”


dedecus: “disgrace,” i.e., the loss of the eagle.

universi: “in a body,” “to a man.”

ex navibus: the ships nearest the enemy, composing the first line.
CHAPTER XXVI.

pugnatum est: F.L. 164, 2, note 2; P.L. III., 72, (h). Note and account for the position of acrier.

nostri tamen answered by hostes vero. We should have expected hostes vero first followed by nostri tamen, but the order is often inverted as in Chapter XXIV.

quod—poterant: as giving Caesar's own reason. What would possent mean?

alius—aggregat: literally, "one from one ship, another from another, collected around whatever standard he chanced to meet." For the construction of signis: F.L. 120, 2.

singulares: "one by one": rarely used in the plural.

plures paucos: note the vividness of the asyndeton: construe plures hostes circumsistebant paucos Romanos.

alii: we should have expected alii before conspexerant to balance alii here.


ab latere aperto: see note B. IV., Chapter XXV. For the use of ab: cp. ab hostibus, "on the side of the enemy": a fronte; ab oriente; a nobis stare.

quod—animadvertisset: see note B. IV., Chapter XXV.

scaphas—navium: "the cutters belonging to the men-of-war."—scapha: cp. Greek σκάφη, σκάφος from σκάπτω, "to hollow out."

speculatoria navigia: "the spy-boats," built specially for quick sailing.

laborantes: "in distress."

simul—constiterunt: "as soon as they set foot on dry land."—simul = simul ac, or simul atque.

suis: "their comrades."—longius: "to any great distance": see note B. IV., Chapter XXIII.

capere: "to reach." They were at Wissant or, some say, at Ambleteuse, unable to sail on account of a storm: cp. Chap. XXVIII.

ad pristinam: i.e., in this respect alone his success was incomplete.
CHAPTER XXVII.

de pace: “to treat for peace.”

obsides daturos, scil. se esse: B. iv., Chapter xxii.


quem—praemissum: the plupf. affects praemissum: “who, as I previously mentioned, had been sent forward.”

cum—perferret: F.L. 198, 4; P.L. III., 99, g, ii.—oratoris modo: “as an ambassador”: cp. ritu, more, ratione.

imprudentiam: “rashness,” “thoughtlessness.”—ignosceretur: F.L. 164, 1; P.L. III., 96, b, ii.

quod intulissent: Caesar assumes here an air of injured innocence.

dum ultro petissent: “since they had presumed to ask.”—continentem, scil. terram: cp. ἁπευρός, scil. ἔνν.

partem—partem: “some—others.”

paucis diebus: “within a few days”: F.L. 82, 2; P.L. III., 85, (b), iii.

principes: subject of coeperunt.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

his rebus: “by these measures”: instrumental ablative.

post—ventum = quarto die postquam in Britanniam venerunt: note the double construction: diem quartum is governed by post as if post were a preposition, though it is really a part of the conjunction postquam: cp. ante diem quartum Kalendas Januarias. Since the Romans reckoned both days in an expression of time, this expression would be equivalent to our “three days after.” Caesar set sail at midnight on the 26th of August, and landed on the coast of Kent about 10 a.m. August 27th, and the cavalry started on the 30th of the month. Dr. Halley calculates that the moon mentioned in the beginning of the next chapter was full on the night of the 30th. Note the varieties of expression for post diem quartum quam: post quatuor dies quam: quatuor diebus postquam: quarto die postquam: quarto die quam with post omitted.—est ventum: F.L. 164, 2; P.L. III., 96 (b).

supra: Chapter xxv,
 sustulerant: "had taken on board."

leni vento: "with a light breeze": properly an ablative absolute: "the wind being mild." The portus superior where the cavalry had been weatherbound was Ambleteuse.

solverunt: "set sail": here said of the ships themselves, although the word is generally used with reference to the crew.

ex castris viderentur: "and were visible from the camp." It is probable that Caesar's camp was pitched on an elevated spot, not far from the shore.

sed: construe sed (tanta tempestas subito coorta est ut) aliae referrentur eodem.—eodem: "to the same spot."

aliae—deicerentur: "(while) others were driven down."—propius: construed here with the accusative, as is usual in Caesar: B. IV., 9: v., 36. It may also be construed with a dative or an acc. with ad.

magnus—periculum: "with great peril to themselves": sui is an objective genitive after periculum.

quae—petierunt: "while they, in spite of the fact that their anchors had been dropped, were nevertheless (tamen) filling with waves, putting out of necessity into the high seas in the teeth of night they made for the continent."—quae: join this with cum.—tamen opposed to anor is iactis.—adversa nocte: abl. abs.: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. III., 130, 48.

CHAPTER XXIX.

eadem nocte: the night of August 30th.

qui dies—consuevit: we might expect quo die luna consuevit. The construction is loose, and the sentence should be divided into two for an English translation. "It unfortunately happened on the same night that the moon was full. On the day when this happens the moon is wont to cause very high tides on the ocean." Another reading for qui dies is quae nostrisque: scil. militibus. The influence of the moon on the tides seems to have been known to Cicero: cp. de Divin. 2, 14: quid de fretis aut de marinis aestibus dicam? cum accessus et recessus (flow and ebb) lunae motu gubernantur. This work of Cicero did not appear, however, till 44 B.C., eleven years after the invasion of Britain. The rise and fall of the tide in the Mediterranean is hardly perceptible: hence the ignorance of the Romans respecting it. At Dover it rises to the height of 19 ft. at Boulogne to 25 ft.

uno tempore: "at one and the same time."
exercitum—curaverat: “had had the army brought across.” The meaning of the gerundive with cura is peculiar. It does not mean necessity, but supplies the place of the present participle passive; that is, it has the meaning of a continued passive state: cp. B. I., 12: pontem faciendum curat: B. v., i.: naves aedificandas curarent. With the infinitive cura is generally limited to negatives.

quasque—complebat—et eas naves quas in aridum subduxerat aestus complebat. Note that subducere naves is “to haul up” on shore, opposed to deducere naves “to launch.”

onerarias—afflictabat: “and the storm kept dashing together the ships of burden which were riding at anchor.” With onerarias, scil. naves. Note the force of the imperfect afflictabat as well as of the frequentative: F.L. 216, 2; P.L. III., 191, 199.

neque—dabatur: “nor was an opportunity afforded our men of managing (the vessels) or of lending aid.”

com pluribus—fractis: “after the wreck of several vessels.” Express this in other ways.

cum—inutilis: “since the others were unseaworthy owing to the loss of their ropes, anchors and other tackling.”—funibus—amissis: causal abl. abs. The funes (Gk. σχοινα) were strong ropes by which the anchors were held or the cables by which the ships were fastened to the shore. The ropes of the rigging were called rudentes (Gk. ῥυτεία).—armamentis: see note B. III., Chapter xiv.

magna: note the emphasis given to this word by its separation from the noun.

id quod—accidere: “as was unavoidable”: literally, a thing which could not but happen.”—quod accidere: the acc. with the inf. is the subject of necesse erat.

quibus reportari posse nt = ut eis reportari posse nt: subjunctive of result.—quibus: abl. of instrument.


et—erat: “and because it was generally understood that they had to winter in Gaul, corn had not been provided in these places for the winter.”

omnibus constabat: literally, “it was agreed by all.” Instead of the dative omnibus we also find constare inter omnes: B. VII., 44, 47.—in hic mem: when predetermination of future time is meant, the Latins use in with acc. Translate: “he called the Senate for the next day”: “he called the Senate on the next day.”
CHAPTER XXX.

quibus rebus cognitis: express this in other ways.

principes: subject of duxerunt.

inter se collocuti: "talking with one another": F.L. 223; P.L. III., 91.

cum—intelligerent—cognoscerent: "when they understood—observed."

—intelligere denotes a rational discernment by means of reflection: cognoscere, to learn by the senses.

hoc: "on this account," "for this reason," explained afterwards by quod; causal ablative: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. III., 85 (m).

impedimentis: distinguish impedimenta, baggage of the legion: sarcina, of the individual soldier.

optimum factu: literally, "the best thing in the doing," i.e., the best course. The supine in—u is the abl. of respect.

rebellione facta: "after the renewal of the war." Express this in other ways.

frumento commeatuque: "from corn and other supplies": abl. of separation: see note B. III., Chapter III.: F.L. 158, 2, (i); P.L. III., 85, (m).

rem—producere: "to drag along the war": cp. rem trahere; bellum protrahere or extrahere.

his superatis—interclusis: equivalent to conditional clause = si hi superati essent—interclusi essent.— With reeditu: cp. B. I., 8: commeatu prohibere.

coniuratione facta: "forming a league": here used in a good sense: cp. coniurant: see note B. III., Chapter VIII.

rursus= re versus: "back again" from peace to war.

paulatim: "little by little": opposed to universi.

deducere: i.e., to this place where they were going to make war, from the interior to the sea coast: note the force of de in deducere: cp. κατα γέενν.

CHAPTER XXXI.

cognoverat: "was familiar with": note the plupf. of cognoscere has the force of an imperf. and the perf. that of a present: F.L. 145, 1; P.L. III., 72.

ex eventu navium: "from what had happened to his ships."
fore—suspicabatur: "suspected that that would happen which actually did." The foresight of Caesar was one of his most prominent characteristics.

subsidia: "resources," literally, "succours." Elsewhere subsidia in Caesar means: (1) "reserves," "relieving forces"; (2) "the act of bringing relief": B. vii., 86.

quotidie: "daily," expressing simple repetition: in dies singulos, said of things daily increasing or decreasing: cp. note B. iii., Chapter xxiii.

quae naves, carum=earum navium quae.—naves: antecedent expressed in relative clause.

ad eas res=eis rebus: "for these purposes."

administraretur: impersonally, "it was carried out": i.e., his directions were carried out.

duodecim—amissis: concessive, "though twelve ships had been lost."

reliquis—effectit: literally, "he so arranged that it might be suitably sailed with the rest."—reliquis may be either (1) ablative instrument or (2) ablative of accompaniment.

CHAPTER XXXII.

dum geruntur: see note Chapter xvii., B. iii.

frumentatum: "on a foraging expedition": F. L. 174, 3; P. L. iii., 105.

ad id tempus: "up to this time."

ulla suspicione interposita: "any suspicion having arisen": F. L. 100, 5; P. L. ii., 85, (o).

kominum: "inhabitants": here=Britannorum.

ventitaret: "continued to come": note the force of the frequentative. So we have actito (from agere); lectito (from lego); scriptito (from scribo); haesito (from haereo); visito (from video). How are frequentatives formed? F. L. 303, (a); P. L. iii., 75, iii.

in statione: "on guard": called stationes. For the gates of a Roman camp see plan (introduction p. xxv.)—stationes were properly guards at the gates of the camp: excubiae, guards by day or night: vigiliae, night guards only; custodiae, guards to defend the fortification. The guard was inspected by circuitores, and changed every three hours, i.e., at the end of each watch.

quam consuetudo ferret: "than was usual"; "than custom admitted
of."—ut is omitted after quam. For another reason for subjunctive: F.L. 195, 3; P.L. III., 99, (g).

_in ea parte—in quam partem_: the repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause is frequent in Caesar, and occurs when distinctness is required. In rendering into English omit the antecedent in the relative clause: see note Chapter I., B. III.

_id quod erat suspicatus_: scil, esse. The indic. erat is used because the words are inserted by the writer and are not dependent on suspicatus. Note that id is inserted merely for emphasis as in Cic. de Off. 2, 6: _male se res habet, cum quod virtute effici debet, id temptatur pecunia._

_alliquid novi consilii_: "some new plan": literally, "something of a new plan": partitive genitive.

_in stationem succedere_: "to take their place on guard." Note the idea of motion conveyed by the Latin succedere and hence in with accusative.

_confestim_: "immediately." Note the emphatic position of the adverb. It is connected with the same root as in _festino_, "to hasten."

_aegre sustinere_, scil. _hostes_: "with difficulty were keeping the enemy in check." Compare the adverb _aegre._

_conferta legione_: the ablative absolute denotes the cause of their being under a cross-fire: "in consequence of their being crowded together."

_nam quod_: "for since."—_nam_ is taken with _delituerant_: while _quod_ is joined to _erat._

_noctu_: _cp. diu, interdum, dudum_ (= _diu-duvi_): old ablatives.

_tum—perturbaverant_: "then suddenly attacking (our men) scattered, after they had laid aside their arms, and were busy in reaping, they (_i.e._, the enemy) threw the rest into confusion, after slaying a few, since the ranks were irregular." With _dispersos, scil. nostros milites._—_armis dispositis_: express this in other ways.

_equitatu atque essedis circumdederant_: scil. nostros. Express this by another construction.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

_ex essedis_: an adjective attributive of _pugnae_: "of the chariot fighting."

_pugnae_ = _pugnandi_: _cp. B. 1., 28_: _genus hoc erat pugnae._

_primo_: "at first." Both _primo, and primum_ means, "for the first time"; _primo, also means "at first": primum, "firstly."
ipso—equorum: “by the sheer dread caused by their horses”: ablative of instrument. What genitive is equorum?


ordines, scil. hostium.

insulauerint: future perf. indic.: literally, “they shall have made their way.” In English we would say, “they have made their way.”

pedibus: “on foot”: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. iii., 85 (e).

aurigae: see note B. iv., Chapter xxiv.—interim: refers to a momentary space of time: interea, implies continued duration.

illi: refers to the retainers (clientes): see note B. iv., Chapter xxvi.

praestant: “secure.”

tantum—efficiunt: “they became so proficient by daily experience and practice.”

in—loco: “when the ground is sloping and even steep.” Since the verb sum has no present participle in use, the prepositional ablative absolute is used for it. For the use of ac.

brevi, scil. tempore: “in a short time”; “in a moment”: cp. ἐν βραχεί, scil. χρόνῳ.

per temonem: “along the whole length of the pole.” According to Max Müller (Science of Language, Vol. ii., p. 402), tegmo=temo: connected with tignum. Varo (L. L. vii., 78), derives it from teneo, as holding the yoke.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

quibus rebus: some take this as a causal ablative: “and owing to these facts.” Others supply permotus or adductus. Others again take them as ablative absolute: “when matters were in this state.” Others make rebus the ablative of cause depending on perturbatis, or as a dative depending on tulit.

namque: cp. καὶ γὰρ: “and (this was evident) for.” Namque in Caesar and Cicero is usually used before a vowel and always the first word of a proposition.

eius adventu: “on his arrival”: ablative of time when.

quo facto: concessive abl. abs.: “though this was done.”
ad lacesendum, scil. hostes: "for provoking the enemy to battle": others take lacesandum a gerundive with proelium: "for provoking a battle."

alienum: "unfavourable.—alienus is rarely applied to things and when it is, it is opposed to suus or opportunus: cp. locus suus: "ground of his own choosing," i.e., "favourable ground."


brevi—intermisso: "and a short time having elapsed": F.L. 100, 5; P.L. III., 85 (e).

dum—geruntur: see note B. III., Chapter xxviii.

continuos dies: acc. of duration of time: P.L. 69, 9; F.L. III., 83 (c).—continuus denotes an unbroken succession: used (1) of time, as B. i., 48; v., 13: (2) of disaster, B. vii., 14.

tempestates: see note on B. IV., Chapter xxiii.

praedicaverunt: "openly boasted." Distinguish praedico, praedico.

praedae faciendae: "of securing booty." The phrase does not occur elsewhere in Caesar.

in perpetum: either supply tempus or perpetuum in neut. adj. used as an abstract noun: "for ever": cp. eis aidiov.

si—expulissent: "if they should succeed in driving out": the pluperfect denotes the accomplishment of the expulsion, and the subjunctive is used because of the virtual oratio obliqua in demonstraverunt.

daretur: "was offered": dependent question: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. III., 99, (d).

his rebus: "by these representations," to their countrymen.

CHAPTER XXXV.

idem: subject of fore and explained by the appositive clause ut—effugerent.—effugerent: means, they had escaped in the past and would do so in the future.

triginta: some commentators give CCC: others, XXX. The MSS., however, the latter.
diutius: join this word with non: "they could no longer stand."


tanto spatio—potuerunt: "for such a distance (as far) as speed and strength allowed." Others take spatio as ablative absolute: "the distance being so great."—cursu et viribus: literally, "by running and strength": ablative of instrument.

occiderunt, scil. nostri milites. Distinguish in meaning occiderunt and occiderunt.

omnibus—inensis: "all the property far and wide being destroyed and burnt."—affligere = solo aequare: "to level to the ground." Another reading is aedificiis incensis.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

his—duplicavit: duplico follows the construction of impero by analogy.

quem ante imperaverat: see B. IV., Chapter XXVII.

in continentem: "to the continent": see B. IV., Chapter XXVII.

propinqua—aequinoctii: "as the day of the equinox was near": ablative absolute. The date of the equinox was September 24th. This remark shows how stubbornly the Britons opposed Caesar's advance. He landed on the 27th of August, and though he had been nearly a month attempting to gain possession of the island, we find him still at the sea shore.—dies is feminine here, as it usually is, when it means time generally or in the sense of a fixed or appointed day: cp. die constituta, die dicta.

infirmis—existimabat: literally, "he did not think that the voyage ought to be exposed to a storm, his ships being unseaworthy," i.e., "he did not think that he on his voyage should run the risk of encountering a storm, seeing that his ships were unseaworthy."—infirmis navibus: ablative absolute or some say ablative of instrument with "unseaworthy ships," not a dative of agent with subiciendam.—hiemi: dative of indirect object governed by subiciendam: cp. B. VII., 77: et perpetuae servituti (Galliam) subicere.

eosdem—portus: Boulogne or Ambleteuse.

paulo sunt: were carried down the channel below Gesoriacum (Boulogne), perhaps as far as the modern Etaples.
CHAPTER XXXVII.

ex navibus—expositi, scil. in terram. This refers to the duae onerariae.
proficiscens: "in the act of setting out" = cum proficisceretur.
praedae: praeda=prae-hend-a or prae-hid-a: root HEND, Greek χαδ in χαδ-αω, "to seize": cp. praedium=præhendium.

non ita: "with not so very large a number": instrumental ablative. This use of ita is limited like the English so to negative clauses: cp. B. v., 47; non ita multum moratus.

circumsteterunt, scil. eos: the three hundred.
nolle: F. L. 206, 6; P. L. III., 199, 214, (2). The obliqua oratio is implied in iussent.—orbe facto: "having formed themselves into a circle." In Sallust (Jug. 97) we have a detailed account of this movement. The baggage was placed in the centre, and the soldiers, facing the enemy, formed a circle round it. In cases of extreme danger this movement was resorted to: cp. B. v., 33, where Ambiorix attacked Cotta and Sabinus.

celeriter: note the emphatic position. What would be the usual position?
ad clamorem: "at the shouts": ad either means "in answer to," "in accordance with," or goes with convenerunt.

suis auxilio: "as a help to his men": F. L. 134, i; P. L. III., 82, (c).

paucis vulneribus: "having sustained a trifling loss."
postea vero quam = posteaquam vero.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

Morinos: see note B. iv., Chapter xxI.
siccitates: the plural may mean either the continued dryness or the dryness in many different marshes. Compare this statement with what Caesar says in B. iv., Chap. xxxiv. These two statements hardly agree.

quo se reciperent non haberent: "did not know where to retreat to." With habeo: cp. δεχω. The subjunctive would represent a subjunctive in the direct narrative: quo me recipiam? "Where am I to retreat to?" So with a past tense: quo me reciperem non habebam.
quo—perfugio: “which as a refuge.” It is best to make perfugio an example of an antecedent attracted into the case of the relative since it is in the same clause, or make the object of haberent, locum and perfugio a dative of purpose. Caesar probably refers to the marshes on the Scheldt: cp. B. II., Chap. XVI., for similar conduct on the part of the Aedui.

superiore anno: B.C. 56; B. III., Chap. XXVIII.

quod—abdiderant: “because the Menapii had all concealed themselves by taking refuge in the thickest woods.” What would be the meaning if in silvis had been the reading? Cp. B. II., Chap. XVI: qui in silvis abditi latebant.

neglexerunt: scil. hoc facere: cp. B. III., Chap. XXVII: ultimae nationes hoc facere neglexerunt. Dion Cassius gives this as a reason for Caesar’s second invasion of Britain.

his rebus gestis: “owing to these exploits”: causal abl. abs.

ex: “in accordance with” — dierum viginti: genitive of description: F.L. 130, 7, 8; P.L. III., 156, 115.

supplicatio: the word may be either day of thanksgiving for national success, or a day of humiliation for national disaster. When a general gained a victory he sent a letter wreathed in laurels (litterae laureatae) to the Senate. If the victor deserved it, a thanksgiving (supplicatio) was usually appointed, which generally lasted several days. The thanksgiving for Caesar’s victory over the Belgae was held for fifteen days, an honour which Caesar says no one had obtained before: B. II., Chapter XXXVII. The thanksgiving for his victory over Vercingetorix also lasted twenty days: B. VII., Chap. XC.
SHORT EXERCISES
BASED ON CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, B. IV.

For Oral Translation into Latin.

I.

1. During the succeeding year a great number of the Tenchtheri crossed the river Rhine. 2. They cross this river not far from the place where the river flows into the sea. 3. For several years the Suevi had harassed the Tenchtheri, and had kept them from tilling their land. 4. The Suevi have a hundred cantons, from each of which a thousand armed men are lead out to war every year. 5. The rest of the nation stay at home and maintain those who are in arms. 6. During the next year, those who are in arms now will remain at home. 7. Thus the one class (hi) stay at home and subsist on milk and flesh, while the other class (illi) are under arms. 8. Since the boys are not trained to any duty, they do nothing against their will. 9. On account of their daily exercise, they become men of extraordinary power. 10. The hides with which they are clothed are so scant that a great part of the body is exposed.

II.

1. They sell to the merchants what they take in war, for they do not import anything. 2. The Gauls take special delight in their horses, and often obtain them at extravagant prices; The Germans, on the other hand, (autem) often use small and ill-shaped ones. 3. Caesar says that the Germans by daily training, make their horses capable of undergoing the greatest fatigue. 4. They often train themselves to leap down from their horses and to fight on foot. 5. It is necessary to train their horses to remain in the same spot, so that they may be able to withdraw to them. 6. They think that nothing is a greater disgrace than to use housings. 7. However few they are, they dare to attack any number whatever of effeminate Gauls. 8. They think that wine should not be imported, because by it men become effeminate.

III.

1. It is supposed to be especial glory that the lands of their enemies should lie waste. 2. A large number of states could not withstand their power. 3. As German ideas go, that state is very large and flourishing.
4. The Ubii are the most civilized of all the states of that district. 5. They have been habituated to the customs of the Gauls because they border on the Rhine. 6. Merchants, too, often have intercourse with them. 7. The Suevi often attempted to drive them out of their territories. 8. They could not be driven out of their lands by the Suevi. 9. The Suevi made them tributaries and reduced them to a state of less importance. 10. They were rendered weaker by the Suevi.

IV.

1. The two nations were said to have withstood the power of the Suevi for several years. 2. The Menapii, alarmed at the approach of the Usipetes and Tenchtheri, stationed garrisons on this side of the Rhine. 3. These nations wandered about Germany for three years after they were expelled from their territories. 4. They were so terrified by the approach of this host that they left their lands which they possessed. 5. Having tried every resource they pretended to return to their own abodes. 6. They were unable to cross the Rhine on account of their want of vessels. 7. Before crossing the river they seized all the vessels of the Menapii. 8. They crossed the Rhine before the Menapii, who dwelt on this side of the river, were informed of their arrival. 9. When they crossed the river and seized all the houses of the Menapii, they maintained themselves for the greater part of that winter.

V.

1. No confidence ought to be placed in the Gauls on account of their fickleness. 2. They often aim at a change of government and are unstable in forming plans. 3. Travellers are often compelled against their will to disclose to them what they have heard about everything. 4. From what district do you come and what news have you heard? 5. They often repent immediately of schemes they enter into. 6. They are such slaves to idle stories that often the merchants invent news. 7. They often compelled the merchants to tell them where they were going and what they intended to do. 8. The merchants generally gave them fictitious news.

VI.

1. Caesar set out to the Roman army sooner than he was accustomed to do in previous years. 2. The things he suspected would happen had happened. 3. Several states sent ambassadors to the Germans and invited them to set out against the Gauls. 4. Everything has been done which you requested. 5. The Germans were led on by the hope that they would
defeat the Romans. 6. When Caesar came to the chiefs of the Gauls, he pretended that he had not heard what they were doing. 7. He quieted their feelings by his speech and resolved to cheer them. 8. He levied from the Gauls a large number of cavalry. 9. In that year he resolved to carry on war against the Germans.

VII.

1. He began to collect a supply of corn and to select cavalry for the war. 2. He set out against those places where he heard the Germans were. 3. When the ambassadors came to him, he was distant a long journey from their camp. 4. We neither refuse to fight, if we are provoked, nor are we the first to make war upon others. 5. We resist everybody that makes war upon us, and we ask for no quarter. 6. This custom has been handed down to us from our ancestors, not to refuse a battle, if we are provoked in war. 7. Let not the Romans allow us to be driven from the lands we possess. 8. We yield to the immortal gods alone, to whom not even the Suevi can be equal.

VIII.

1. Caesar thought it best to reply to their speech thus. 2. I can have no friendship with you, if you remain long in Gaul. 3. It is not right that men who cannot defend their own territories should settle down in the lands of others. 4. So great a number of people cannot seize lands without doing harm to others. 5. We shall allow you to settle, if you wish, in the lands of the Ubii. 6. In my camp there are ambassadors who complain of the wrongs done by the Suevi. 7. These ambassadors asked aid from Caesar. 8. He granted this request to those who were asking aid from him.

IX.—X.

1. We shall return to you and report what our country men decide. 2. We ask you not to advance near our camp. 3. "I," said Caesar, "am not able to grant you this request." 4. A large portion of the cavalry of the Germans had been sent across the river Rhine for the purpose of foraging. 5. When they asked Caesar not to move his camp nearer he thought it was for the purpose of causing delay. 6. I know that Caesar will move his camp nearer if he wishes. 7. Barbarous natives inhabit the large islands made by the Rhine where it approaches the ocean. 8. There are some of these natives that subsist on fish and birds' eggs. 9. The river Rhine, in the days of Caesar, flowed into the ocean by many mouths.
XI.

1. The Roman General on that day was not distant more than ten miles from the camp of the enemy. 2. On the next day the ambassadors of the enemy returned to the camp of Caesar. 3. We earnestly entreat you not to advance further. 4. We beg you to send forward some horsemen to keep your men from fighting. 5. If the Ubii will give us security on oath, we will accept the terms that you propose. 6. Here they assembled on the next day in great numbers to learn about Caesar’s demands. 7. Tell the prefects not to harass the enemy. 8. Caesar meanwhile sent forward men to order the soldiers not to contend in battle. 9. On the next day the enemy assembled in as large bands as possible to withstand the attack of our army. 10. Caesar advanced not more than four miles to obtain water. 11. Do not harass the army in battle, but stand your ground until they advance to your van.

XII.

1. Though the number of our cavalry was more than five thousand, the enemy made an attack on them. 2. Our men feared nothing because the enemy had not more than five thousand in their army. 3. The enemy made a quick attack on our men. 4. As soon as they had dismounted they stabbed our horses underneath. 5. They did not cease from fighting till they had killed sixty-five of our men. 6. Piso, who had rescued his brother from danger, was himself surrounded and slain. 7. Piso himself fought against the enemy as long as he could, but at length (denique) he fell pierced with wounds. 8. His brother, who observed that Piso had fallen from his horse, rushed to his aid, but was slain.

XIII.

1. We must not listen to the ambassadors of the enemy, nor must we receive conditions from those who treacherously carry on war. 2. It was the height of folly to wait till the enemy had formed their plans. 3. Men who have treacherously sued for peace, and then made war without provocation, ought not to be listened to. 4. Caesar knew how great was the fickleness of the Gauls, and he gave them no time to form their plains. 5. The next day in the morning they came to Caesar to clear themselves for having deceived him. 6. It is the height of folly to let go by a single day suitable for battles. 7. I am glad that Caesar retained those elders who had come to sue for peace. 8. All his forces were led out of the camp on that day. 9. He ordered all of the cavalry to follow closely the enemy, so that no time should be allowed them to form their plans.
BOOK IV.

XIV.

1. He drew up his army in a triple line and quickly completed a journey of eight hours. 2. The rapidity of our advance and the defection of their countrymen threw the enemy into great confusion. 3. Caesar will arrive at the camp before we can tell what is going on. 4. Whether is it better to lead our soldiers against the enemy or to seek safety in flight? 5. The fear of the enemy was shown by their noise and bustling. 6. A battle was fought in this place by the enemy who boldly on that day withstood our troops. 7. All the children and women who crossed the Rhine began to flee in all directions. 8. The cavalry was sent by Caesar to overtake the rest of the enemy who had crossed the river. 9. Caesar sent forward his cavalry to pursue the women and children. 10. Among the waggons and baggage a fierce battle was fought by the enemy.

XV.

1. The Germans threw away their arms, abandoned their military standards and rushed out of camp. 2. When they reached the confluence of the Meuse and Rhine, they gave up hope of further flight. 3. There a great number was slain by Caesar's soldiers who pursued them to the banks of the river. 4. Overcome with fear they cast themselves into the river and perished. 5. We were all safe to a man, only a very few being wounded. 6. Many of the Germans were killed in that battle; but some few escaped in safety to their own land. 7. When our men withdrew to the camp, nearly all were found to be unhurt. 8. Caesar retained some of the Germans in his camp who were unwilling to go home. 9. They said that they wished to remain rather in the Roman camp than to go back to their own land.

XVI.

1. For many reasons Caesar determined that the war should be finished. 2. He saw that the Germans were easily influenced to come into Gaul. 3. When you find that we have both the ability and the courage to cross the Rhine, you will fear for your own possessions. 4. Some of the cavalry of the enemy had crossed the Rhine for the purpose of foraging. 5. These had crossed over the Rhine into the territory of the enemy and had united their forces with them. 6. Caesar sent envoys to ask them why they carried on war against him. 7. These who had crossed the Rhine, as I have mentioned above, were not in the battle. 8. We earnestly beg of you to send us aid unless you are prevented by public duties from doing so. 9. Caesar had such a reputation for valour in consequence of the defeat of
the Germans that the army of the Roman people was safe from all attacks. 10. They promised that they would give a large number of ships for the army.

XVII.

1. To cross the river in boats is neither safe nor consistent with the dignity of the Roman people. 2. There was the greatest difficulty in crossing the river, because the Rhine, as I have mentioned, is very deep. 3. Therefore, a bridge must be built or else the army must not be taken over. 4. The piles sharpened a little at the lower end were driven in, not vertically, but sloping. 5. The greater the violence of the water, the more tightly are these logs held together. 6. If the barbarians send down trees or boards to knock down the bridge, these things cannot harm it. 7. Such was the strength of the material employed that the bridge resisted the strong current of the river. 8. The greater the force of the current, the more firmly did the materials resist it.

XVIII.

1. Within ten days Caesar built the bridge over the Rhine. 2. All the material was brought together within a few days. 3. The army was led over and a guard was posted at each end of the bridge. 4. After building the bridge he sets out into the territory of the enemy. 5. Ambassadors came to him from several states to ask peace from him. 6. He ordered them to bring hostages to him within a few days. 7. From the time that he began to build the bridge the enemy prepared for flight. 8. They left their lands and hid themselves in the woods to which they carried all their goods. 9. When the enemy asked for peace he told them that he would give it if they would obey him.

XIX.

1. The enemy burned all the villages and houses, and cut down all their corn. 2. Caesar promised that he would aid them in battle. 3. After the Suevi had learned that Caesar was building a bridge, a council was held. 4. They sent envoys in all directions and ordered their people (cives) to assemble in one place. 5. They placed all their wives and children in the woods and all who were unable to bear arms. 6. Let all who can bear arms assemble in one place. 7. The place where they were ordered to assemble was about the centre of the country of the Suevi. 8. After Caesar had plundered the Sigambri and relieved the Ubii, he withdrew into Gaul. 9. He spent in all seventeen days on the other side of the Rhine. 10. After this the bridge which he had built was cut down.
XX.

1. A short period of time was left to carry on a regular war. 2. In almost all the Gallic wars, the Britons furnished auxiliaries to our enemies. 3. It will be of great assistance to us if only we are able to ascertain what nation inhabits Britain. 4. If we cannot find out how great the island is, still, it will be of great advantage to examine the character of the people. 5. We know very little of the island, for very few persons except merchants go to it. 6. He thought if he should summon to himself the traders from all quarters, he might find out what harbours were suitable for war ships. 7. The sea coast and the districts opposite Gaul were known to the merchants. 8. The time of the year was so short that it was impossible to carry on a regular campaign. 9. When he called the merchants to him, they could not tell the size of the island.

XXI.

1. Caius Volusenus, a tribune in his army, was sent forward with a war ship. 2. Before ordering the fleet to assemble, he directed Volusenus to explore the sea coast. 3. Before sending the ambassadors home again, he made them liberal promises. 4. All his plans were reported by merchants to the Britons. 5. Several states of Britain sent envoys to promise him that they would do all his orders. 6. Commius, whose influence among the Atrebates he regarded of great value, was ordered to go to them. 7. Visit what states you can and tell them that I shall shortly come. 8. I will examine all the places as far as opportunity offers, seeing that I dare not go ashore. 9. He returned and reported to Caesar all that he had seen.

XXII.

1. While ships were being got ready in that district for the purpose of carrying on a war against Britain, ambassadors came to Caesar. 2. The Morini who had made war on the Roman people excused themselves on the ground that they were barbarians. 3. We are unacquainted with your custom, but we promise to do all that you order. 4. Caesar levied a large number of hostages from the Morini, because he thought that an enemy who had given hostages would obey his commands. 5. About forty transports will be enough to convey our legions across the sea. 7. To these are to be added the eighteen transports which are detained by the wind from coming into the harbour. 7. What galleys we had besides, we shall leave on the coast of Gaul. 8. Many ships were prevented by the storm from reaching the island. 9. We ordered the lieutenant to send troops against the enemy.
XXIII.

1. These things were arranged by Caesar on that day. 2. At the third watch of the following night he went on board his vessel. 3. He waited at anchor till the weather should be suitable for sailing. 4. It is by no means a suitable place for disembarking, when weapons can be thrown from the cliffs to the shore. 5. Both military science and especially seamanship demand that all commands be executed promptly. 6. After weighing anchor they advanced at a given signal about five miles from that place. 7. They obtained fair weather and moored the ships on an open beach. 8. He collected his officers and told them what he had learned from Volusenus. 9. In that spot they saw on all the hills the forces of the enemy.

XXIV.

1. The barbarians generally employed cavalry and charioteers in battle. 2. They followed our men with all their forces, after they learned of the arrival of the Romans. 3. It was not possible to moor ships of such size in that place. 4. The Romans could not moor their ships except in deep water. 5. The soldiers could not jump out of the ships, keep their footing amid the waves, and fight with the enemy all at once. 6. The enemy, on the other hand, with all their limbs free, could hurl weapons from dry ground. 7. Wholly unacquainted with this sort of fighting, our men were greatly terrified by the enemy. 8. The enemy boldly hurled their darts against our men, and spurred on their horses. 9. All those places were unknown to our troops who were oppressed with their heavy armour.

XXV.

1. The galleys were removed a little from the transports and put in motion with oars. 2. The enemy were dislodged by arrows and heavy missiles hurled from the ships of war. 3. If you do not wish to be frightened by the heavy missiles, fall back just a little. 4. The figure of our ships, the motion of the oars and the unusual kind of engines terrified the barbarians. 5. He at least who carried the eagle of the tenth legion did his duty to the state and to the commander. 6. If you do not jump down out of your ship, you will betray the eagle to the enemy. 7. Let no such disgrace be done; let us all leap down from the ships. 8. They leaped down from the ships and began to approach the enemy. 9. We pray the gods that this battle may turn out successfully for our legion.

XXVI.

1. The enemy fought fiercely for many hours. 2. We could not follow our own standards, but we flocked to any we met. 3. The enemy would
surround some as they came out of the ships in scattered groups. 4. The enemy knew all the shoals where our men landed. 5. Darts were thrown from the shore by the enemy. 6. When Caesar observed this he sent up some skiffs and spy boats filled with soldiers as a relief to those in distress. 7. Our men put the enemy to flight, but did not follow them up because they had no cavalry. 8. A fierce attack was made on the enemy by our men. 9. When Caesar saw his soldiers in danger he sent his reserves to aid them. 10. When all the spy boats were filled with soldiers, the Romans soon reached the island.

XXVII.

1. As soon as the Romans defeated the enemy in battle, the Britons gave hostages to Caesar. 2. When the Britons recovered from the flight they promised to do all that Caesar ordered. 3. Caesar sent forward Commius to Britain, but the Britons seized him after he disembarked. 4. They put him in chains although he had come to them in the character of an envoy. 5. After the battle was fought and peace made, he was sent back to Caesar. 6. The inhabitants asked the Romans to pardon their thoughtlessness. 7. Though you have made war on the Romans, I am willing to pardon your thoughtlessness, if you give hostages. 8. Caesar levied hostages from all the states of the island. 9. Within a few days we shall give some hostages to you; others will be summoned from the more distant parts. 10. If you lay all the blame upon the multitude you cannot be pardoned by me.

XXVIII.

1. The eighteen ships did not reach the land till four days afterwards. 2. They were seen from the camp of the Romans, but some were carried down to the lower part of the island and others were driven back to the continent. 3. No ship was able to keep on its course owing to the great storm that arose. 4. Some of the vessels were driven back to the same place from which they had started and some cast ashore. 5. On the lower part of the island very many of the vessels were wrecked with great loss to themselves. 6. They started for the continent with night before them, even though the storm was great. 7. When the ships started for the continent, many of them were filling with waves. 8. They set sail at daybreak and landed at sunset. 9. A great storm arose at sea when the ships were sailing to Britain.

XXIX.

1. It happened that Caesar did not know that the full moon caused very high tides in the ocean. 2. He had the galleys drawn up on shore and the
transports anchored. 3. The Romans had no opportunity to lend aid to the ships. 4. On that night many ships were wrecked by the storm. 5. The rest of the ships lost their cables, anchors, and the rest of their rigging. 6. Throughout the whole army such a commotion took place that Caesar did not know what to do. 7. The Romans had no corn in the camp, for Caesar had not provided a supply since he intended to winter in Gaul. 8. All things necessary for building ships would have to be brought from the continent. 9. His ships were nearly all unseaworthy, and could not be repaired at this time.

XXX.
1. After this battle, the chiefs of Britain held conferences among themselves. 2. They learned that the Romans had few soldiers owing to the small size of our camp. 3. The camp of the Romans was very small because Caesar had no baggage in the army. 4. They thought that their best policy was to renew the war. 5. Since the Romans lack horsemen, ships and grain, the best thing to do is to keep them from supplies and prevent their return. 6. If our men were prevented from a return, the war would be prolonged to the winter. 7. They began again to form a conspiracy after they learned that our men had no cavalry. 8. No one will cross over to Britain for the purpose of carrying on war. 9. All the Britons left the camp, and a league began to be formed.

XXXI.
1. When the Britons learned what had happened to Caesar’s ships they did not send hostages to him. 2. He suspected that they would not send hostages. 3. From the fact that many of the ships were severely disabled, he suspected that he should have to use the timber of these vessels for repairing the others. 4. Corn was collected by Caesar from that district because the Romans had not brought a supply of it from Gaul. 5. All things which were of need for repairing the vessels which had been wrecked were brought from the continent. 6. These matters were carried out by the soldiers with the greatest zeal. 7. He lost twelve ships at that time; still he was able to sail to the continent with the rest. 8. Many of the ships were very severely damaged at that time by the storm which suddenly arose. 9. Building material was collected by Caesar for repairing ships.

XXXII.
1. The seventh legion had been sent to forage when Caesar saw a larger cloud of dust than usual in the direction in which the legion marched. 2. In front of the gates of the camp the soldiers on guard saw a great cloud
of dust. 3. The cohorts which were on guard at once set out in that direction in which the enemy was marching. 4. Our men were hard pressed by the enemy and with difficulty kept their ground. 5. "Do you see," says he, "a larger cloud of dust than usual in that direction in which the enemy's forces are?" 6. When the forces which were on guard before the gates of the camp had set out, in that direction the other cohorts immediately followed them. 7. While our men were engaged in reaping, the enemy who were skulking in the woods suddenly attacked them. 8. Our ranks were thrown into great confusion because the enemy suddenly attacked our men. 9. The enemy suddenly surrounded our men with many forces. 10. The enemy suspected that our forces would come to that spot to reap the corn.

XXXIII.

1. At first they ride around everywhere and then work their way in among the horsemen when they leap down from their chariots and the drivers withdraw from the battle. 2. Darts are hurled from all sides by the enemy against our troops, and when once they have thrown our men into disorder they fight on foot. 3. The Britons exhibited in battle the activity of cavalry and the steadiness of foot soldiers. 4. They even on a downward slope rein in their horses when at full gallop. 5. In a moment they are able to check their horses even when running at full gallop. 6. They are accustomed to run along the whole length of the pole, and to stand on the yoke. 7. Often have our men seen them on a steep slope rein their steeds. 8. When they were hard pressed by the Romans they had a safe retreat to their chariots. 9. The sheer terror caused by the horses and the rumbling of the wheels generally threw the ranks of our men into confusion.

XXXIV.

1. When our men had recovered from their fear, they thought it was time to provoke a battle. 2. For several successive days the enemy were prevented by a storm from offering battle. 3. There is a great opportunity to free our country for ever, if we drive the enemy out of the island. 4. We thought this a most important time for engaging in battle. 5. Our men were not able to leave the camp on account of the severe storms which followed for several days. 6. He collected all his infantry and cavalry together into one place. 7. What a fine opportunity you will have of driving the Romans from their camp, if only you collected all your forces against them. 8. Our men were greatly disconcerted by the Britons, but at the arrival of Caesar they recovered from fear. 9. They told their
countrymen that it would be an easy matter to drive out the Romans, if they would attack them with all their forces.

XXXV.

1. If the enemy are repulsed in battle, they easily escape danger in consequence of their speed. 2. Caesar said that the enemy would escape by flight, as they had done on the days previous. 3. Caesar obtained about thirty horses from Commius Atrebas, and pursued the enemy. 4. The legions were drawn up in battle array in front of the camp. 5. The onset of our men could not be withstood by the enemy who turned their backs in flight. 6. Several of the enemy were slain when they were overtaken by our men. 7. Our men followed the enemy on that day as far as they could. 8. Before the Romans withdrew to their camp they burnt all the houses of the enemy. 9. The thirty horsemen (of whom mention has been made before), pursued the enemy and killed several of them.

XXXVI.

1. The enemy sent ambassadors on the same day to the Roman camp to treat for peace. 2. "I demand," says Caesar, "double the number of hostages I formerly demanded, and I order you to bring them to the continent." 3. "I must not," says he, "expose my ships to an equinoctial storm." 4. Though they set sail at midnight, they nevertheless reached the port in safety. 5. He was not able to reach port with two merchantmen. 6. These two merchantmen were carried down to a lower part of the island. 7. At midnight he set sail for Britain with all the ships. 8. Although they set sail at midnight they nevertheless reached the port in safety. 9. Caesar will obtain favourable weather at daybreak.

XXXVII.

1. Caesar disembarked about three hundred soldiers on that day. 2. He set out to Britain after he subdued the Morini. 3. This people was induced by the hope of booty to attack our camp. 4. If you do not wish to be killed, lay down your arms. 5. When they had formed themselves into a circle, hastily they rushed with a shout against the foe. 6. All the cavalry was sent by Caesar to aid the Roman foot. 7. The battle lasted for more than four hours and several of our troops fell in battle. 8. Our men slew a great number of the enemy in battle, who threw away their arms. 9. Many of our friends received wounds in that battle.
XXXVIII.

1. These legions were led back from Britain against the Morini.
2. About six thousand men assembled for the defence of the three hundred whom the Morini had surrendered.
3. After our cavalry came in sight the enemy threw down their arms and fled.
4. We have no place to retreat to.
5. The year before, the Morini had used the swamps as a place for refuge.
6. They hid themselves in the swamps; but all the rest fell into the hands of the lieutenant.
7. They cut down all the corn which was in the fields.
8. Caesar decreed a thanksgiving of twenty days.
9. Caesar said that all the enemy withdrew to the thick woods, where they pitched their camp.
10. The houses of the enemy were all burned down by the soldiers of the Roman army after the battle was fought.
PROPER NAMES.

ABBREVIATIONS.

adj. = adjective; f. = fem.; m. = masc.; N. = noun; n. = neuter; pl. = plural; sing. = singular.

A.

A = Aulus, -i; N. m.: a Roman praenomen.

Adūātūci, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the Aduatuci, a people of Gallia Belgica. According to Caesar they were descended from the Cimbri and Teutones, who had been left behind to guard the baggage and cattle when these two nations made a descent on Italy: B. ii., Chap. xxix. This is, however, contradicted when he says that the Belgae were the only Gallic tribe who kept the Cimbri and Teutones out of their territory. They lived about the confluence of the Sabis (Sambre) and the Mosa (Meuse).

Adcantūannus, -i; N. m.: Adcantuannus, a chief of the Sotiates. He endeavoured together with six hundred devoted partisans (sordurii) to escape from the town of the Sotiates when it was attacked by Crassus, one of the lieutenants of Caesar. He was unsuccessful in his attempt and was driven back into the town and forced to surrender: B. iii., Chap. xxi.

Aedūus, -a, -um; adj.: an Aeduan. The Aedui were a powerful nation of Gaul. Their confederacy embraced all the tract of country between the Allier, the middle Loire, and the Saône, and extended a little below this river to the south. Their capital was Bibracte. When Caesar came into Gaul he found the Aedui had been overcome by their rivals, the Arverni and the Sequani, who had called in the aid of Ariovistus, a German prince. Caesar espoused the cause of the Aedui, and restored them to their former place of power.

Aemilius, -i; N. m.: L. Aemilius, a Roman officer in command of a decuria of Gallic cavalry: B. i., Chap. xxiii.

Afrīcus, -i; m.: the south-west wind. Still called by the modern Italians Africa.

Agedincum, -i; n.: capital of the Senones, on the Yonne, a tributary of the Seine, now called Sens.

Aldūasbis, -is; N. m.: also called the Dubis (now Doubs), a river on which Vesontio (now Besançon), the chief town of the Aedui, was situated. The word Dubis meant the black river: cp. Keltic dhu, “black,” as in the modern names Dulas, Doulas, Dowlas, Digges, Dublin. Alduasbis means, “the river of black rocks.”

[1]
PROPER NAMES.

Allobroges, -um; N. pl. m.: the Allobroges, a people of Gaul between the Isara (Isere) and the Rhodannus (Rhone) in the country occupied by Dauphine, Savoy, and Piedmont. Their chief city was Vienna (Vienne), about thirteen miles below Lugdunum (Lyons). The name means "highlanders," from al, "high"; broga, "land."

Alpes, -ium; N. pl. f.: the Alps derive their name from the Keltic alp, meaning "lofty." Their length is about 600 English miles. The following are the divisions generally given to this chain: Alpes Maritinae, from Nice to Mt. Viso; Alpes Cottiae, from Mt. Viso to Mt. Cenis; Alpes Graiae, from Mt. Iseran to Little St. Bernard; Alpes Penninae, from the Great St. Bernard to the sources of the Rhine and Rhone; Alpes Raeticae, from the St. Gothard to Mt. Brenner in the Tyrol; Alpes Norieae, from Mt. Brenner to the head of the river Plavis; Alpes Carnicae vel Juliae, extending to the confines of Illyricum.

Ambarri, -orum; N. pl. m.: a people of Gallia Celtica, situated between the Aedui and the Allobroges, along either bank of the Arar (Saône).

Ambiani, -orum; N. m. pl.: the Ambiani, a tribe of Gallia Belgica, to the north of the Bellovaci, and the river Samara (Somme). They had as their capital Samarobriva, on the Samara. This town was afterwards called Ambiani (now Amiens). They occupied that part of modern Picardie, now called Department de la Somme.

Ambiliati, -orum; N. pl. m.: the Ambiliati, a people of Ancient Gaul, in the neighbourhood of the modern Abbeville.

Ambiorix, -igis; m.: Ambiorix, king of the Eburones.

Ambiväriti, -orum; N. pl. m.: the Ambiväriti, a people of Ancient Gaul, near the Mosa (Meuse).

Anartes, -ium; m.: a Dacian tribe of the Theiss.

Ancaletes, -ium; m. pl.: a British tribe, near Oxford, that surrendered to Caesar.

Andes, -ium; N. m. pl.: the Andes, a Gallic tribe that occupied the modern Anjou, or what is now called Department de la Mayenne. They occupied the north bank of the Liger (Loire), not far from its mouth. Tacitus and Pliny called them Andecavi or Andegavi. Caesar says that they were near the sea, but in this statement he is inaccurate, as the Nannetes intervened: B. ii., Chap. xxxv.; B. iii., Chap. vii.; B. viii., Chap. iv.

Andocumborius, -i; N. m.: a colleague of Icicius in the embassy which the Remi sent to announce their submission to Caesar.

Antistius, -i; m.: Caius Antistius Regius, one of Caesar’s lieutenants.

Aquileia, -ae: N. f.: a celebrated city in Northern Italy, in the territory of Venetia, between the Alsa and Natiso, and about seven miles from the sea.

Aquitania, -ae; N. f.: a district of Gaul between the Garumna (Garonne) and the Pyrenees. According to Strabo, the Aquitani differed from the Gauls both in physical features and in language. They resembled the Iberians.

Aquitani, -orum; N. m. pl.: the Aquitanians, one of the three great divisions of Gaul inhabiting Aquitania, the district between the Garumna (Garonne) and the Pyrenees. They resembled the Iberi rather than the Gauls.
Arar, -āris; N. m.: *the Arar* (now the *Saône*), a river of Gaul, rising in Mons Vosegus (now *Vosges*) and after a southern course falling into the Rhodanus (Rhone). The city of Lugdunum (now *Lyons*) stands at the junction of the two rivers: B. 1, Chap. xii.

Arduenna, -ae; f.: *the Ardennes* forest of Gaul. According to Caesar, it reached from the Rhine and the territories of the Treveri to those of the Nervii, being upwards of fifty miles in length. The origin of the word is either from ar *denn*, i.e., "the profound," "the deep" forest; or from arer, "hard"; venaa, "pasture."

Ariovistus, -i; N. m.: a king of the Germans who invaded Gaul, conquered the greater portion of the kingdom and subjected the inhabitants to the most cruel and oppressive treatment. Caesar marched against him and defeated him in battle. He died of wounds or through chagrin at his defeat. His name is by some derived from the German *Heer*, an army: Först, a leader; or from *Aar*, an eagle; and vistus, a Latinized form of *first* = hurst, a nest, . . the word = eury.

Armorícus, -a, -um; adj.: *Armorican*. The ancient Armorica comprised Brittany and part of Normandy. The word is from ar, "on," and mor, "the sea."

Arunculeius, -i; N. m.: *Lucius Arunculeius Cotta*, one of the legati in Caesar's army in Gaul. When Ambiorix, a king of the Eburones was seeking to withdraw him and his colleague Sabinus from winter quarters, Colta was opposed to leaving the encampment, but finally yielded. The Roman army was drawn into an ambuscade, and both he and his colleague fell.

Arverni, -ōrum; N. pl.: a powerful tribe of Gaul, whose territories lay between the sources of the Allier and Dordogne, branches of the Loire and Garonne. The district is now Auvergne. The name is from ar or al, "high"; and veran (fearan), "country" or "region."

Ätēbas, -ātis; adj.: an Atrebatian.

Atrébátēs, -um; N. m. pl.: *the Atrebatés*, a native of Gallia Belgica of high renown for valour. Their territory lay s.e. from that of the Morini and s.w. from that of the Nervii, answering to the modern Artois in the *Département du Pas de Calais*. Their chief town was Nemetacum (now Arras, or as the Flemings call it, *Atrecht*).

Atrius, -i; m.: *Quintus Atrius*, an officer in Caesar's army, left to look after the fleet when Caesar invaded Britain.

Aulerci, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: *the Aulerci*, a general term applied to four different tribes in Gaul:

1. *Aulerci Brannovices*, clients of the Aedui, whose territory lay between the latter and the Sequani, and corresponded to the modern Briennonais.

2. *Aulerci Cenomanni*: N.W. from the former, above the Andes and Turones; and west of the Carnutes, their country corresponded to the modern *Department de la Sarthe*. Their capital was Suindinum, afterwards Canomanni, now Maus.

3. *Aulerci Eburones*: often called simply Eburones, N.W. of the Carnutes, along the west bank of the Sequana (Seine), above Lutetia (Paris). Their chief town was Mediolanum, afterwards Eburovices, now Evreux.

4. *Aulerci Diablintes*, north-west of the Cenomanni, their chief town was Neodunum, afterward Diablintes (now *Jableins*).
Ausci, -orum; N. pl. m.: *the Ausci*, a people of Aquitania in ancient Gaul.

Aurunculeius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

Axona, -ae; N. m.: *Axona*, a river of Gaul, passing through the country of the Remi. It is now called Aisne. It flows s.w., joins the Isara (*Isère*), and both fall into the Sequana (*Seine*).

Bacēnis, -is (scil. *silva*); adj.: a forest in Germany separating the Suevi from the Cherusci. It corresponds to the western portion of the Thuringian Forest, and formed part of the Hercynia Silva or Black Forest.

Bācūlus, -i; N. m.: *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a centurion of the first rank in the army of Caesar, who on several occasions distinguished himself by his valour: B. ii., Chap. xxv.; B. iii., Chap. v.; B. vi., Chap. xxxviii.

Bālēāres, -ium; N. m., pl.: a name given to the people of the islands of Majorca and Minorca off the coast of Spain. The name was also applied to the islands themselves. The word is probably from *βαλλειν* = "to throw," or "shoot," and referred to the skill of the people in the use of the sling or the arrow.

Bātāvōrum Insula: that portion of Holland bounded on two sides by the northern and southern branches of the Rhine and on the third by the sea. It corresponds at the present day to a part of the Duchy of Gueldres and a large portion of Southern Holland: B. iv., Chap. x.

Balventius, -i; m.: *Titus Balventius*, a brave centurion of Caesar: v., 25.

Bāsīlus, -i; m.: *L. Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar’s officers; afterwards one of his conspirators.

Belgae, -ārum; N. m., pl.: a people of Ancient Gaul, separated from the Celtae in the time of Caesar by the rivers Matrona (*Marne*) and Sequana (*Seine*).

Belgium, -i; n.: the land of the Belgae; the modern Belgium.

Bellōvāci, -orum; N. m., pl.: *the Bellovaci*, a powerful nation of the Belgae, to the north of the Parisii. Their capital was Caesaromagus, afterwards Bellovaci, now Beauvais.

Bibracte, -is; N. n.: a large town of the Aedui in Gaul on the Arroux, one of the tributaries of the Loire. It was afterwards called Augustodunum, which name still remains in the modern Autun.

Bibrax, -actis; N. n.: *Bibrax*, a town of the Remi, eight miles from the Axona, (now Aisne). Some say it corresponds to the modern Bray, others to Brains to Bèvre.

Bigerriones, -orum; N. pl. m.: *the Bigerriones*, a people of Aquitania, at the foot of the Pyrenees, to the west of the Garumni.

Bibrōci, -ōrum; m. pl.: a tribe in the s.e. of Britain (*Bray* ?).
Bitūriges, -um; N. m. pl.: a name given to two nations of Gaul:

(1) Bitūriges Cubi, a people of Gallia Celtica, west of the Aedui, their chief city was Avaricum, afterwards Bitūriges, (now Bourges) and their territory corresponded to a part of the modern Berry and Bourbonnais, in the Department of the Cher and de l’Indre.

(2) Bitūriges Vivisci were situated near the mouth of the Garumna (Garonne) and their capital was Burdigala (now Bordeaux).

Boduognātus, -i; N. m.: a leader of the Nervii in the attack made by Caesar.

Boi, -orum; N. m. pl.: a people of Celtic Gaul, who dwelt on the waters of the Sollac. From Gaul they passed into Germany and settled in the present Bohemia, a corruption of Boierheim, i.e., the residence of the Boi. They afterwards went to Bavaria, a corruption of Boaria. Their name means “the terrible ones”; from Celtic bo, “fear.”

Bratuspantium, -i; N. n.: a town of the Bellovaci, near the village of Gratepeuche, between Breteuil and Montdidier.

Britannia, -ae; N. f.: the island of Great Britain.

Britannicus, -a, -um; adj.: British.

Brūtus, -i; N. sing. m.: Brutus, the commander of the Roman fleet in the war against the Veneti.

C.

Cabūrus, -i; N. m.: Caius Valerius Caburus, a Gallic chieftain who obtained the right of Roman citizenship (civitas). He is afterwards mentioned as holding the supreme power among the Helvii; B. vii., Chap. lxv.

Caerōesi, -orum; N. m. pl.: the Caerōesi, a people of Gallia Belgica, between the Treveri and the river Mosa (Meuse), who along with the Condrusi, Eburones, and Paemani went under the general term of the Germans. According to some the name still exists in the little river Chiers, between Mouzon and Sedan: B. ii., Chap. iv.

Caesar, -āris; N. m.: Caius Julius Caesar: see Introduction.

Cāius, -i; N. m.: a Roman praenomen.

Calēti, -orum, also Calētes, -iūm; N. pl.: the Caleti or Caletes, a people of Gallia Belgica. They probably occupied the district not far from the neighbourhood of the modern Rouen.

Cantabri, -orum; N. pl. m.: the Cantabri, a warlike people of the N.E. of Spain, along the shores of the Sinus Cantabricus (Bay of Biscay). Their country corresponded to the modern Biscay and part of Asturias.

Carcaso, -onis; N. sing. m.: Carcasso, a city of the Volcae Tectosages, in the Roman Province. It was situated on the river Atax (Aude) and lay inland in a western direction from Narbo Martius (Narbonne). It is now called Carcassonne.
Proper Names.

Carnutes, -um; N. pl.: the Carnutes, a nation of Gaul, between the Sequana (Seine) and the Liger (Loire) and west of the Parisii. They were clients of the Remi. Their territory was the chief seat of the Druids, who held here their courts of justice. Their chief town was Autricum (now Chartres); B. ii., Chap. xxxv.; B. v., Chap. xxv., xxix., liv., etc.

Carvilius, -i; m.: a British King of Kent.

Cassi, -orum; m. pl.: a tribe of Britain that surrendered to Caesar.

Cassianus, -a, -um; adj.: of or belonging to Cassius.

Cassius, L.; N. m.: Lucius Cassius was consul 107 B.C. In that year a coalition was formed of the Cimbri and Teutones. After devastating Gaul, they united with the Helvetii and resolved to attack the Roman Provincia at several points. The Helvetian tribe Tigurini under Divico attacked the territory of the Allobroges by the bridge of Geneva and the fords of the Rhone. The rest of the Helvetii moved south. The Romans divided their forces. Cassius, the consul, hastened to Geneva, while his legatus, Scaurus, moved against the combined horde of Cimbri and Teutones. Both commanders were unfortunate. Cassius and his army were cut to pieces on the borders of Lake Lemannus (Geneva), while Scaurus was defeated and taken prisoner.

Casticus, -i; N. m.: a chief of the Sequani, on whom Orgetorix prevailed to seize the supreme power in his native State.

Cassivellaunus, -i; m.: Cassivellaunus; Casswallen, commander-in-chief of the British army against Caesar.

Catamantoloedis, -is; N. m.: the father of Casticus.

Caturiges, -um; N. m. pl.: a Gallic nation dwelling among the Cottian Alps. Their capital was Caturiges, traces of which are still to be found at Chourges, between Gap and Embrun in the department of des Hautes-Alpes.

Catuvolcus, -i; m.: Catuvolcus, chief of the Eburones, who poisoned himself after the failure of an insurrection he had promoted.

Cavarinus, -i; m.: chief of the Senones.

Carvillus, -i; m.: a petty British chief.

Celtae, also Keltae, -arum; N. m. pl.: one of the tribes that inhabited Ancient Gaul. The word is derived either from ceitt or ceiltach, "an inhabitant of the forest," or from the root cel, "high"; (cp. celsus, columna), hence Celtae means "highlanders."

Cenimagni, -orum; m. pl.: a British tribe in Suffolk, which surrendered to Caesar.

Centrones, -um; N. pl. m.: a people of Gaul who dwelt among the Alpes Graeae. They were defeated by Caesar in several battles. Their chief town was Forum Claudii Centronum (now Cenron).

Cherusci, -orum; m. pl.: a German tribe between the Weser, the Elbe, and the Horz Mountains,
Cicero, -ōnis; m.: Quintus Tullius Cicero, brother of the celebrated orator, M. Tullius Cicero. He was one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul.

Cimbérius, -i; N. m.: Cimberius, a brother of Nasua, who along with the latter was joint commander of the Suevi when they were endeavouring to cross the Rhine and form a junction with Ariovistus. When the German princes were overthrown they retreated: B. i., Chap. xxxvii.

Cimbri, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a people of Central Europe who invaded the Roman empire in the time of Marius. They were a branch of the Celtic tribe. They are supposed to have had their origin in the Cimbric Chersonese (Jutland).

Cingetorix, -īgis; m.: (1) a Gaul, attached to Caesar, and the rival of Indutiorinus for the chief power among the Treviri; (2) a British chief of Kent.

Cisrhenan-us, -a, -um; adj. [cis, "on this side"; Rhenus, "Rhone"]: "lying on this" (i.e. the Italian) "side of the Rhine."

Claudius, -i; n.: Appius Claudius, consul with L. Domitius B.c. 54.

Cneius, -i; N. m.: Cneius, a Roman praenomen.

Cneius, -i; m.: a Roman praenomen.

Cocósates, -īum; N. pl. m.: the Cocosates, a people of Aquitania, lying along the coast of the Sinus Cantabricus (Bay of Biscay). Their chief city was Cocossa on the coast, some distance above Aquae Augustae (now Aeqs or Dun): B. iii., Chap. xxvii.

Commius; m.: a leader of the Atrebates.

Commius, -i; N. sing. m.: Commius, a chief of the Atrebatians.

Condrusi, -ōrum; m. pl.: the Condrusi, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the right bank of the Mosa (Meuse), in the district of the modern Namur and Liège.

Considius, -i; N. m.: Publius Considius was an officer in Caesar's army. He was employed in the war against the Helvetii.

Cotta, -ae; N. m.: Lucius Arunculeius Cotta: see Arunculeius.

Corus, -i; m.: Corus or Caurus, the North-west wind.

Crassus, -i; N. m.: M. Licinius Crassus, surnamed Dives, was a member of the first triumvirate. He was noted for his enormous wealth. At Carrhae he fell in battle against the Parthians.

Crêtes, -īum; N. m. pl.: the Cretans: the inhabitants of Crete (now Candia), an island in the eastern part of the Mediterranean Sea, celebrated for their skill in archery.

Curiosolitae, -ārum; N. m. pl.: the Curiosolitae, an Armoric nation in Gaul, north of the Veneti and northwest of the Redones. They occupied the district of the modern St. Malo, between Dinant and Lamballe, in Brittany: B. ii., Chap. xxxiv.

D.

Dacus, -i; m.: a Dacian. The Dacians occupied the s.e. provinces of the modern Kingdom of Austria.

Danūbius, -i; m.: the Danube, the great river of Central Europe.

Dēcimus, -i; N. sing. m.: Decimus, a Roman praenomen.
Décumānus, -a, -um; adj.: Decuman, a name given to one of the gates of a Roman camp.

Diāblintes, -iūm; N. pl. m.: the Diāblintes, a branch of the Aulerci (see Aulerci).

Dis, Ditis; m.: Pluto, the god of the lower world.

Dīvico, -ōnis; N. m.: an influential noble among the Helvetii. He was the leader of the embassy sent to Caesar by the Helvetii after their defeat.

Divitiācus, -i; N. m.: a leading nobleman of the Aedui, who possessed great influence with Caesar in consequence of his fidelity and attachment to the Romans.

Dubis, -is; N. m.: the Dubīs (now the Doubs), was a river of Gaul, rising in the chain of Jura, and falling after a course of sixty leagues into the Arar (now Saône), near Cabilloum (now Chalon): B. l., Chap. xxxviii.

Domitius, -i; m.: L. Domitius Abenobarbus, consul with Appius Claudius Pulche, B.C. 54.

Druīdes, -um; m. pl.: the Druīds or priests of the ancient Britons and other Keltic tribes. The probable derivation is from the Keltic drē, "an oak"; wydd, "mistletoe," and dyn, "a man"; hence "the man who gains supernatural information from the mistletoe on the oak."

Dumnörīx, -īgis; N. m.: a powerful and ambitious chieftain of the Aedui, and brother of Divitiācus. He was disaffected towards Caesar and the Romans, and when the former was on the point of setting out to Britain, and had ordered Dumnorix to accompany him, the Aeduan on a sudden marched away with his cavalry. He was overtaken and slain.

Durocortorum, -i; n.: capital of the Remi, now Rheini, situated on the Vele, a branch of the Aisné.

E.

Eburōnes, -um; N. pl. m.: the Eburōnes, a nation of Gallia Belgica, to the s.w. of the Ubi. Caesar mentions them as Germans. Their territory lay on both sides of the Mosa (Meuse), from the modern Liege to Aix-la-Chapelle. Their chief town was Aduatucu: B. ii., Chap. iv.

Eburōvices, -um; N. pl. m.: the Eburōvices, a branch of the Aulerci; (see Aulerci).

Elūsātes, -iūm; N. pl. m.: the Elūsātes, a people of Aquitania, to the northwest of the Volcae Tectosages. Their chief town was Elūsa (now Éuse): B. iii., Chap. xxvii.

Eratosthēnes, -is; m.: a Greek born at Cyrene, in Africa, B.C. 276; appointed librarian to the Alexandrian library and died in 282 B.C. of starvation because he was tired of life. He acquired fame as a geographer, mathematician and critic.

Esūbīi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the Esūbīi, a people in the Alpes Maritimae, north of the Edenates. They are sometimes called Esubiani. The river Ubaye runs through what was formerly their territory: B. iii., Chap. vii.

Essui, -orum; m. pl.: a people of Gaul, supposed to be the same as the Saii, and lying on the north side of the Diāblintes and Cenomani. Their chief city was Saii (now Seez), on the River Olina (now Orne).
Galba, N. the Gallic: now Fabius, Galba, Gabinius, Flaccus, Galli, Gallia, Garites, Gallus, Gallicus, Garumni, Graioceli, Germani, Geiduni, Genava, Garumna, Graecus, Germania, {montes} of or sea and Cisaipiiia, of man, Lemmanus According to Caesar, the Garumna separated Aquitania from Gallia Celtica.

Galli, -orum; N. m. pl.: the inhabitants of Gallia; the Gauls.

Gallia, -ae; N. f.: Gaul, corresponding to France and the northern Italian provinces of Piedmont, Venetia, and Lombardy. Gaul was divided in Gallia Transalpina, or Ulterior, or Gaul beyond the Alps, comprising nearly all France; and Gallia, Cisalpina, or Citerior, or Gaul, this side of the Alps, i.e., Northern Italy.

Gallicus, -a ·um; adj.: Gallic: of or belonging to Gallia.

Gallus, -i; N. sing. m.: a Gaul.

Garites, -ium; N. pl. m.: the Garites, a people of Aquitania, between the Elusates and Ausci, in part of Gascony, or the more modern department of du Gers.

Garumni, -orum; N. pl. m.: the Garumni, a Gallic tribe, near the head waters of the Garumna (Garonne), in the department of de la Haute-Garonne.

Gārumna, -ae; N. f.: now the Garonne, a river of Gaul. It runs from the Pyrenees (montes Pyrennae) and empties into the Bay of Biscay (Oceanus Cantabrius). According to Caesar, the Garumna separated Aquitania from Gallia Celtica.

Gēnāva, -ae; N. f.: a city of the Allobroges, at the western extremity of Lake Lemmanus (Geneva) on the south bank of the river Rhodanus (Rhone).

Geiduni, -orum; m. pl.: the Geiduni or Gorduni, a people of Belgic Gaul on the sea coast, above the Morini.

Germanī, -orum; N. pl. m.: Germans.

Germanānia, -ae; N. f.: a district of Central Europe inhabited by the Germans. The word is probably from either (1) wer, "war" (the Romans softening the w to y) and mann, "a man," so the Germani means "warriors," or (2) from the Celtic gerr, "war," and mann, "a man." Other derivations are given.

Graecus, -a, -um; adj.: Grecian, a name given to an inhabitant of Greece, a country of Southern Europe.

Graiocēli, -orum; N. pl. m.: a tribe of Gaul dwelling near the Alps.
Grudii, -orum; m. pl.: a Belgic tribe, subject to the Nervii, whose territories lay between the Scaldis (Scheldt) and the ocean. Their name still survives in the modern land van Graëde (district of Graëde), above l'Ecluse on the north.

H.

Harūdes, -um; N. pl. m.: a German tribe, in the vicinity of the Marcomanni, between the Rhine and the head waters of the river Danube. This district was in the vicinity of the present cities of Rothweil and Fürsternberg.

Helvētius, -a, -um; adj.: Helvetic.

Helvētii, -orum; N. pl. m.: a nation of Gaul conquered by Caesar. It is generally supposed that Helvetia corresponded to modern Switzerland, but the boundaries of the ancient province were of less extent than the modern Switzerland, being bounded on the north by the Rhenus and Lake Brigantinus (Constance); on the south by the Rhodanus (Rhone) and Lake Lemannus (Geneva), and on the west by Mt. Jura.

Hercynia (sciil. Silva): an extensive forest in Germania. According to Caesar, the breadth was a nine days' journey, while the length exceeded sixty. It extended from the territories of the Helvetii, Nemates and Rauraci, along the Danube to the country of the Daci and Anartes. It included the present Black Forest, which separates Alsace from Suabia; the Steyger in Franconia; the Spissard and Odenwald on the borders of Hesse Darmstadt; the Thuringer in Thuringia; the Bohemerdal, forming the boundary of Bohemia, and the Hartz mountains in Lunenburg. The word is said to be from the German word hartz, "resin," and still remains in the present Hartz, or from hart, "high."

Hibernia, -ae, f.: Ireland; for the derivation see note on B. v., Chap. xiii.

Hispānia, -ae; N. f.: Spain. The name is derived from a corrupt form of Hesperia (ἕσπεριa) "the western land": cp. ἑσπέρος, "the evening star"; vesper, "evening." From Hesperia comes Latin Hispania, Spanish Espàña, English Spain.

I.

Iccoli, -i; N. m.: Iccius, a nobleman of the Remi, sent along with Andocumborius on an embassy to acknowledge the submission of their nation to Caesar.

Indutiomārus, -i; m.: a leading man among the Treveri and rival of Cingetorix, who sided with the Romans.

Illyricum, -i; N. n.: Illyricum, the modern district occupied by Dalmatia, Bosnia, Herzegovina.

Itália, -ae; N. f.: Italy; a country of Southern Europe.

Itius, -i; m.; a harbour of Gaul, said to be the modern Boulogne.

Iūnius, -i; m.: Quintus Iunius, one of Caesar's officers.

Iuppiter, Iūvis; m.: Iuppiter, son of Saturn, chief of the Roman gods.

Iúra, -ae; N. f.: a range of mountains extending from the Rhodanus (Rhone) to the Rhenus (Rhine) and separating the territory of the Helvetii from that of the Sequani. The word is from the Celtic, Jū-rog, "the domain of God" or "Juppiter."
L.

Laberius, -i; m.: Quintus Laberius Durcus, a military tribune in Caesar’s army.

Lābīēnus, -i; N. m.: Titus Labienus was one of Caesar’s lieutenants in the Gallic war. In the beginning of the civil wars he left Caesar for Pompey. He escaped at Pharsalia, but fell at Munda.

Lātōbriges, -um; or Latobrigi, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: a people of Belgic Gaul. They extended along the banks of the Rhine, about ninety miles west of Lake Brigantinus (Constance).

Lemannus, -i; N. m.: now Lake of Geneva, separating the territory of the Helvetii from that of Gaul. It is about 45 miles long by 11 wide.

Lēōpontīī, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the Leopontii, a Gallic tribe dwelling near the sources of the Rhine among the Leopontine Alps, which separated Italy from Helvetia. Their district corresponded to the Val Levantina, that part of the Alps.

Lexovii, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the Lexovii, a nation of Keltic Gaul, on the coast below the mouth of the Sequana. Their capital was Noviomagus, afterwards called Lexovii (now Lèsieux): B. III, Chap. IX, XVII; B. VII, Chap. LXXV.

Levoci, -ōrum; m. pl.: a nation of Belgic Gaul on the river Scaldis (Scheldt) and northwest of the Nervii, lying between these and the Grudii. Their territory in part forms the present Louvainie.

Lēucī, -ōrum; the Leuci, a people of Gallia Belgica.

Lingōnes, -ium; N. m. pl.: a people of Gaul, whose territories included Mons Vosgesus (Vosges), and consequently, the source of the Mosa (Meuse) and Matrona (Marne). They had a town named also Lingones (now Langres) and their territory corresponded to the modern department of de la Haute-Marne.

Līger, -eris; N. sing. m.: the Loire, the largest river in Gaul. It rises in Mons Cebennus (now Cévennes), and for the one half of its course was directly north, then turns to the west and falls into the Atlantic between the territories of the Pictones and the Nannetes. The Liger receives numerous tributaries, the most remarkable of which are the Elaver (now Allier), Carus (now Cher), Andria (now Indre) and Vincennia (now Vienne).

Liscus, -i; m.: the chief magistrate or Vergobret of the Aedui, who gave information to Caesar of the conduct and designs of Dumnorix.

Liscus, -i; N. m.: Liscus was chief magistrate or Vergobret of the Aedui, who gave to Caesar information of the conduct and designs of Dumnorix.

Lucanius, -i; m.: Quintus Lucanius, a brave centurion.

Lucīus: Lucius, a Roman praenomen.

Lugotorix, -igis; m.: a British chief who was captured in an attack on Caesar’s camp.

Lutētia, -ae; f.: the capital of the Parisii, on an island of the Sequana (Seine), now Paris. The city first began to be of importance under the first French Kings and was extended to both banks of the river, the island being connected with them by bridges.
M. = Marcus: a Roman praenomen.

Māgetōbria, -ae; N. f.: a town, near which Ariovistus defeated the combined forces of the Gauls. Some say it corresponds to the modern Moigde de Broie, near the village of Pontailler: others to Bingium, now Bingen.

Mandrubatius, -i; m.: the chief of the Trinobantes in Britain, who attached himself to Caesar.

Marcomāni, -orum: the Marcomani, a German people. The word is from German mark; English march: hence the name means march, or, border men.

Marcus: a Roman praenomen.

Mārius, -i; N. m.: Caius Marius, a celebrated Roman general, opponent of Sulla. (See Roman History.)

Mars, Martis; m.: Mars, the Roman god of war.

Matrōna, -ae; N. f.: a river of Gaul, now the Marne, which formed part of the old boundary between Gallia Belgica and Gallia Celtica.

Meldi, -orum; m. pl.: a nation of Gallia Belgica occupying both sides of the river Rhine; their chief town was Menapiorum Castellum, now Kessel.

Mēnāpīi, -orum; N. pl. m.: the Menapii, a nation of Gallia Belgica, occupying both sides of the lower Rhine. Their fortress was called Castellum Menapiorum (now Kessel) on the Mosa (Meuse); B. i., Chap. iv.

Mercurius, -i; m.: Mercury, the Roman god, patron of traders thieves; and also the god of eloquence and messenger of Jupiter. The name is from mercēs, "gain."

Municius, -i; m.: L. Municius Rufus, one of Caesar's officers in the war against Ambiorix, and afterwards stationed in winter quarters among the Remi. He sided with Caesar in the civil war, but afterwards became one of Caesar's assassins. The year after Caesar's death, B.C. 43, he was killed by his own slaves.

Mona, -ae; f.: the isle of Anglesey. See note B. v., Chap. xiii.

Moritāsgus, -i; m.: chief of the Senones, brother of Cavarinus.

Munatius, -i; m.: L. Munatius Plancus, a lieutenant of Caesar's, appointed with M. Crassus and C. Trebonius to the command of the three legions that wintered in Gaul.

Messāla, -ae; N. m.: Marcus Valerius Messala was consul along with Marcus Piso B.C. 61.

Mettius, -i; N. m.: Mettius, a Roman officer in Caesar's army.

Mōrini, -ōrum; L. m. pl.: the Morini, a tribe of Gallia Belgica, whose territory lay in the district of Calais and Dunkirk, a part of their territory bordering on the sea. The name means "sea people": being derived from the Celtic mor, "the sea": cp. Lat. mare.

Mōsa, -ae; N. sing. m.: the Meuse, a river of Gaul, rising among the Lingones, a little west of Mt. Vosgesesus, and falling into the Vahali: (now Waal); B. iv., Chap. x.
N.

Namēius, -i; N. m.: a chieftain of the Helvetii, sent along with Verudoctius at the head of an embassy to Caesar.

Nannētes, -ium; N. pl. m.: the Nannetes, a people of Gallia Celtica who dwelt about the district of the modern Nantes.

Nantŭătes, -iūm; N. pl. m.: the Nantuates, a people who dwelt in the neighbourhood of Geneva.

Narbo, -onis; N. sing. m.: Narbo, an important city of Gaul on the river Atax (now Aude). It was subsequently the capital of the province of Gallia Narbonensis: B. iii., Chap. xx.; B. vii., Chap. vii.; B. viii., Chap. xl., vi.

Nasūa, -ae; N. m.: Nasua, a chief of the Suevi.

Nemētes, -um; N. pl. m.: the Nemetes, a German tribe, along the west bank of the river Rhine occupying part of the Grand Duchy of Baden. Their chief town was Noviomagus (now Spires).

Nervicūs, -a, -um; adj.: of or belonging to the Nervii.

Nervīii, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the Nervii, a powerful nation of Gallia Belgica, whose territory was s.e. of that of the Atrebates. The river Scaldis (now Scheldt) passed through part of their territories. Their chief town was Bagaecum (now Baray), which was afterwards supplanted by Cameracum (now Cambray) and Turnacum (now Tourney).

Noreia, -ae; N. f.: the capital of Noricum.

Noricum: see Noricum.

Nōricum, -i; N. n.: a province of the Roman empire, bounded on the north by the Danube, on the west by Vindexia and Raetia, on the east by Pannonia and on the south by Illyricum and Gallia Cisalpina. The chief town was Noreia, the capital of Norica or the Norici. It was in days of Caesar besieged by the Boii.

Noricus, -a, -um; adj.: of or belonging to Noricum.

Nōviōdūnum, -i; N. n.: Noviodunum. There were three towns of this name in Gaul: (1) Noviodunum Suessionum, a town of the Suessiones, now Soissons; (2) Noviodunum Aeduarum, belonging to the Aedui, on the banks of Liger (Loire), now Nevers; (3) Noviodunum Biturigum, a city of the Bituriges, now Neury-sur-Baranjon.

Nūmīdae, -ārum; N. pl. m.: the Numidians, a people of Northern Africa, employed in the Roman armies as light skirmishers.

O.

Ocēānus, -i; N. m.: the Atlantic Ocean.

Ocēlum, -i; N. m.: a city among the Cottian Alps; now Usseau in Piedmont.

Octodūrus, -i; N. sing. m.: now Martigny or Martinach, the chief town of the Veragri: B. iii., Chap. 1.
Orgētōrīx, -īgis; N. m.: a nobleman among the Helvetii, ranking first, according to Caesar, in birth and riches. Full of ambition, he formed a conspiracy among the nobles and prevailed on his people to seek a country other than their native land. He was chosen to carry out the plans of the conspirators. His conduct fell under suspicion and he was put on trial. By the aid of his retainers he managed to rescue himself, but shortly afterwards died, as was suspected, by his own hand.

Osismīi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the Osismii, a people of Gallia Celtica, in the n. w. of Gaul. They occupied the part of modern Brittany, around Cape Finisterre. In their country was Privates Portus (now Brest).

P = Publius: a Roman praenomen.

Pā dus, -i; m.: the Po, the largest river of Italy. It rises in Mons Vesulus (Mt. Viso), near the source of the Druentia (now Drunove), runs in an easterly direction for more than 500 miles and discharges its waters into the Adriatic about 30 miles south of the Portus Venetus (modern Venice).

Paemānī, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the Paemani, a people of Gallia Belgica, their territory lay on the eastern side of the Mosa (Meuse), not far from the modern Liège: B. ii., Chap. iv.

Parisīi, -ōrum; n. pl.: the Parisii, a Gallic tribe, south of the Carnutes and Senones, their chief city was Lutetia Parisiorum, now Paris.

Pedīus, -i; N. m.: Quintus Pedius, a nephew or great-nephew of Caesar. He is spoken of as one of the legati of Caesar: B. ii., Chap. ii.

Petrosīdīus, -i; m.: Lucius Petrosidius, a standard bearer in Caesar’s army.

Pictōnes, -um; N. pl. m.: the Pictones, a Gallic tribe along the southern bank of the Liger (Loire). Their chief town was Lominum, afterwarus Pictones (now Poitiers), in the department de la Vienne. They occupied the district of the modern Poitou.

Pirustae, -ārum; m. pl.: a tribe in Illyricum.

Piso, -onis; N. sing. m.: an Aquitanian. See B. iv., C. xii.

Piso, -onis; N. m.: Lucius Piso, consul 61 b.c., with M. Messala.

Piso, -onis; N. m.: Lucius Piso was consul 112 B.C. Five years after he served as lieutenant under the consul Cassius, but was slain, together with him, by the Tugurini. He was ancestor of L. Piso, Caesar’s father-in-law.

Plancus, -i; m.: L. Munatius Plancus, a lieutenant of Caesar’s army.

Pleumonii, -ōrum; m. pl.: a Gallic tribe n.e. of the Atrebates, dependents of the Nervii in West Flanders, west of the Suessiones.

Pompeius, -i; N. sing. m.: Cneius Pompeius, the Roman triumvir. (See Roman history.)

Praecōninus, -i; N. sing. m.: Praeconius, a Roman cognomen.
Provincia, -ae; N. sing. t.: the Provincia, the southern part of Gaul, called afterwards Gallia Braccata and Gallia Narbonensis.

Publius, -i; N. sing. m.: a Roman praenomen.

Pulio, -onis; m.: a centurion of Caesar's, rival of Vorenus.

Pyrennaei (scil. montes): the Pyrenees, a range of mountains separating Gaul from Spain. The derivation of the word is from the Celtic pyren or pyrin, "a high mountain." From this root may be derived Brenner in the Tyrol; Pyern, in Austria; Fernor, in the Tyrol.

Q = Quintus: a Roman praenomen.

R.

Rauraci, -orum; N. m.: a Gallic tribe above the Helvetii and between the Sequani and the Rhine. Their chief town was Rauracum, afterwards called Augusta Rauracorum, and now Aigst, a small village near Basle.

Redones, -um; N. pl. m.: the Redones, a tribe of Gallia Lugdunensis, occupying the district near the modern Rennes.

Remi, -orum; N. pl. m.: the Remi, a powerful Gallic nation whose capital was Düroröortorum, the modern Rheims.

Rhénus, -i; N. m.: the Rhine, rising in the Leopontine Alps, a little above Mt. St. Gothard, in the country of the Grisons. It passes through Lake Brigantinus (Constance), afterwards through Lake Acromius (Tell), nearly west to Basilia (Basle). At this point it flows northerly, receiving various tributary streams, till it enters the North Sea. The derivation is from the Aryan root sru, "to flow."

Rhódanus, -i; N. m.: the Rhone, a river rising in the Leopontine Alps, not more than two leagues from the sources of the Rhine. It passes through Lake Leman-nus (Geneva), and flows in a swift current to the Sinus Gallicus (Gulf of Lyons). The word is derived also from the Aryan root sru, to flow."

Róma, -ae; N. i.: Rome: (derived from sru, "to flow," properly Srouma, "the stream town").

Rómanus, -a, -um: Roman.

Roscius, -i; m.: Lucius Roscius, one of Caesar's officers sent to winter with a legion in the territory of the Esubi.

Rutèni, -orum; N. pl.: the Ruteni, a people of Gallia Aquitania.

S.

Sabinus, -i; N. m.: Quintus Titurius Sabinus, one of the legati of Caesar.

Sabius, -is; N. m.: the Sabius (now Sambre), a river of Gallia Belgica, rising among the Nervii, and joining the Mosa (Meuse) in the territory of the Aduatuci.

Samarobriva, -ae; f.: a town of the Ambiani on the Samara (Somme), hence called Ambiani (now Amiens).
Santōni, -ōrum; or Santōnes, -um: N. m. pl.: a people of Gallia Celtica, whose territories lay between the Pictones on the north and the Garumna on the south. Their chief town was Mediolanum, called Santones, now Saintes.

Scaldis, -is; m.: now the Scheldt, a river of Belgium, rising about 15 miles south of Camaracum (now Cambray) and falling into the German Ocean near the modern island of Walcheren.

Sedūni, -ōrum; pl. m.: a people of Helvetia, to the s.e. of Lacus Lemannus (lake of Geneva), and occupying the head waters of the Rhine. Their chief town was Sedūnum (now Sion or Sitten).

Segontiāci, -ōrum; pl. m.: a people of Britain, living probably in Hampshire.

Segonax, -ācis; m.: one of the four rulers of Kent at the time of Caesar's invasion.

Senōnes, -um; pl. m.: a powerful nation of Gallia Celtica, to the northwest of the Aedui.

Sedusii, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the Sedusii: a German tribe, forming part of the army of Ariovistus.

Segusānī, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: a people of Gallia Celtica to the south of the Aedui and in whose territory lay the city of Lugdunum (Lyons). The chief town of their tribe was Forum Segusianorum (now Feurs).

Sēnōnēs, -um; N. pl.: the Senones, a people of Gallia Lugdunensis, whose capital was Agendicum (now Lens).

Sēquāna, -ae; N. f.: a river of Gaul, rising in the extreme northern part of the territory of the Aedui and falling into the Oceanus Britannicus (English Channel).

Sēquānus, -a, -um; adj.: a Sequanian. The Sequani were a people of Gallia Celtica. They called in the aid of Ariovistus to aid them against the Aedui. After the defeat of their German allies, they severely felt the power of the Aedui. Caesar, however, restored them to their former power. Their chief town was Vesontio (now Besançon).

Sesūvil, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the Sesuvii, a people of Gallia Celtica, who occupied the modern diocese of Séez.

Sextius, -i; N. sing. m.: Sextius, a Roman name.

Sibuzates, -iūm; N. pl. m.: the Sibuzates, a people, Gallia Aquitanica.

Silanus, -i; m.: Marcus Silanus, a lieutenant of Caesar.

Silius, -i; N. sing. m.: Silius, a Roman name.

Sotīātes, -um; N. pl. m.: the Sotiates, a people of Gallia Aquitanica.

Sulpitius, -i; N. sing. m.: Sulpitius, a Roman name.

Suēvi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the Suevi, a powerful tribe of northern and eastern Germany. Their name still exists in Suabia.

Sugambri, -ōrum; m. pl.: a German nation, in Caesar's time dwelling near the Rhine, but whose earlier settlements appear to have been further inland.
Suessiones, -um.; N. pl. m.: *the Suessiones*, a Gallic people who occupied the district around the modern town of Soissons.

Suëvus, -a, -um; adj.: of, or belonging to the *Suevi*, a powerful tribe in North-eastern Germany.

Sulla, -ae; N. m.: Lucius Cornelius Sulla, a celebrated Roman. He served as quaestor to Marius in Africa and afterwards was the great political opponent of his old commander. After gaining the highest offices of the State, he gave up the dictatorship, and died B.C. 79.

**T.**

T. = Titus: a Roman *praenomen*.

Tamésis, -is; m.: the Thames.

Tarbelli, -orum; N. pl. m.: *the Tarbelli*, a people of Aquitanian Gaul.

Tarúsätes, -ium; N. pl. m.: *the Tarusates*, a people of Aquitanian Gaul.

Tasgetius, -i; m.: the chief of the Carnutes, whom Caesar restored to supreme power.

Taximagulus, -i; m.: a British prince, one of the four kings of Kent.

Tectosäges, -um; m. pl.: a division of the Volcae, who lived in the western part of the province. Their capital was Tolosa (now Toulouse).

Tenchtheri, -orum; N. pl. m.: *the Tenchtheri*, a German city on the Rhine.

Terrasidius, -i; N. sing. m.: Titus Terrasidius, a Roman officer in Caesar's army.

Teutônes, -um; also Teutôni, -orum; N. pl. m.: a name given to a branch of the great Germanic family. Along with the Cimбри they devastated northern Italy and Gaul from 113 to 102 B.C.

Tibrocci, -orum; N. pl. m.: *the Tibrocci*, a people of Germanic origin. Their capital was Brocomagus (now Bruml).

Tigûrinus, -a, -um; adj.: a canton of the Helvetii, near Lake Zürich.

Titûrius: see Sabinus.

Titûrius, -ii; N. sing. m.: Titurius, a Roman name.

Tolôsa, -ae; N. sing. f.: Tolosa (now Toulouse), a tribe in southern Gaul.

Tölösätes, -um; N. pl.: a people of Aquitania. Their chief town was Tolosa (now Toulouse).

Transrhénâni, -a, -um; see Transrhemenanus.

Transrhênanus, -a, -um; *[trans, "across"; Rhênus, "the Rhine"];* a dweller across the Rhine, that which is across the Rhine.

Trebonius, -i; m.: Caius Trebonius, a Roman knight.

Trévéri (also Tréviri), -orum; N. pl. m.: *the Treveri*, a nation of Gallia Belgica N.E. of the Rhine, between the Mosa (Meuse) and the Rhenus (Rhine); their chief city was Augusta Treverorum (now Treves).
Tribroci, ðorum; N. pl. m.: the Tribroci, a German tribe on the left bank of the Rhine, in the modern Alsace.

Tulingi, -orum; N. pl.: a German tribe, whose territories lay to the north of the Helvetii. The modern Stuhlingen marks the site of the ancient capital.

Turones, -um; N. pl. m.: the Turones, a powerful nation of Gallia Celtica, which lay along the banks of the Liger (Loire). Their capital was Caesarodunum, afterwards Turones now (Tours).

Ubii, -ium, m. pl.: a German nation on the right bank of the Rhine. During the reign of Augustus they were removed by Agrippa to the opposite or left bank in Gaul. At a subsequent period Agrippina, the mother of Nero, established a colony of veterans in their territory, called by her Colonia Agrippinae (now Cologne).

Unelli, -orum; N. pl. m.: the Unelli, a people to the n.w. of what is now Normandy. Their chief town was Coriallum (now Gouril).

Usipetes, -um; N. pl. m.: the Usipetes, a German tribe near the Tenchtheri, originally in Saxony.

Valerius, -i; m.: Valerius, a Roman nomen.

Vahalis, -is; N. sing. m.: the Vahalis (now Waal) forming the left arm of the Rhine.

Vâlerius, -i; N. m.: Valerius: a Roman praenomen.

Vangiones, -um; N. pl. m.: the Vangiones, a German people on the Rhine in the neighbourhood of the modern Worms.

Velanius, -i; N. sing. m.: Velanius, an officer in Caesar's army.

Velocasses, -lum; N. pl. m.: the Velocasses, also called Bellocasii, a people of Gallia Belgica. Their chief town was Rotomagus (now Rouen) on the north bank of the Sequana (Seine).

Vênêti, ðorum; N.pl. m.: th Veneti, a people of Gallia Cisalpina, in the district of modern Venetia.

Vênêti, -orum; N. pl. m.: the Veneti, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the western extremity, above Nannetes, and the mouth of the Liger (Loire), and bordering on the Atlantic. They were the most powerful among the Armorice states, and were conspicuous for their skill in navigation. Their chief town was Darioigum, afterwards called Veneti (now Vannes).

Vênêtia, -ae; N. sing.f.: see Veneti.

Vênêticus, -a, -um; adj.: see Veneti.

Véragri, -orum; N. pl. m.: the Veragri, a tribe who dwelt amid the Alps. Their chief town was Octodurus (now Martigny or Martinach).

Veromandûi, -orum; N. pl. m.: the Veromandui, a people of Gallia Belgica. Their chief town was Augusta Veromanduorum (now St. Quentin), in the old division of France called Veromandois.
Verudoctius, -i; N.m.: a chief of the Helvetii, sent along with Nameius was at the head of an embassy to Caesar. Their object was to request permission to march through the Roman province.

Veromandui, -orum; pl. m.: a people of Gallia Belgica. Their chief town was Augusta Veromanduorum (now St. Quetin), in the old division of France, Veromandois.

Vertico, -onis; m.: a Nervian nobleman, friendly to the Romans.

Viridovix, -icis; N. sing. m.: Viridovix, a chief of the Unelli.

Vocates, -ium; N. pl. m.: the Vocates, a people of Aquitanian Gaul.

Voctio, -onis; m.: a king of Noricum: whose sister was wife of Ariovistus.

Vocontii, -orum: a tribe of Southern Gaul, lying to the east of the Rhine. Their chief town was Dea (now Die).

Völüsénus, -i; N. sing. m.: Volusenus, a military tribune in Caesar's army.

Vorenus, -i; m.: a Roman centurion, rival of Palis.

Volcatius, -i; m.: Caius Volcatius Tullus, one of Caesar's officers left in charge of the bridge over the Rhine, while Caesar went in pursuit of the Suebi.

Vösegus (also Vosgésus), -i; N. sing. m.: Vosegus (now Vosges), a mountain chain in Gaul.
ABBREVIATIONS.

a. . . . . . . . . active.
abl. . . . . . . ablative.
acc. . . . . . . accusative
adv. . . . . . . adverb.
card. . . . . . . cardinal.
cf. . . . . . . confer, i.e., compare.
comm. . . . . . common gender.
comp. . . . . . comparative.
conj. . . . . . . conjunction.
demonstr. . . . demonstrative.
dep. . . . . . . deponent.
dim. . . . . . . diminutive.
distrib. . . . distributive.
e. g. . . . . . . exempli gratiâ (for instance).
= . . . . . . . . meaning the same as.
f. . . . . . . . feminine gender.
freq. . . . . . . frequentative.
impers. . . . . impersonal, -ly.
inecip. . . . . . inceptive.
indecl. . . . . . indeclinable.
terrog. . . . . . interrogative.
irreg. . . . . . . irregular.
m. . . . . . . . masculine gender.
n. . . . . . . . neuter, neuter gender
num. . . . . . numeral.
opp. . . . . . . opposed to in meaning
ord. . . . . . . ordinal.
p. . . . . . . . page.
part. . . . . . . participle.
pass. . . . . . . passive.
pl., or plur. . . . plural.
prep. . . . . . . preposition.
pron. . . . . . . pronoun.
rel. . . . . . . . relative.
sc. . . . . . . . scilicet (one must understand).
sq. . . . . . . . sequens (and the following).

sing. . . . . . . singular.
subst. . . . . . substantive.
sup. . . . . . . superlative.
usn. . . . . . . usually.
v. . . . . . . . verb.
v. or V. . . . . vide (look at).
VOCABULARY.

A.

a. d.=ante diem, a phrase used in reckoning the days of the month.

a, ab, abs, prep. w. abl., by, from, at, etc.; a dextro cornu, on the right wing: a tergo, in the rear; sometimes a, ab, is used as an adv.: ab millibus passuum octo = eight miles off.

ab-do, ère, abdidi, abditum, to hide.

ab-duco, ducere, du.xi, ductum, lead away.

ab-eo, ire, ivi or ii, itum, to go away.

ab-futurus, fut. part. of ab-sum.

abs-cido, 6re, cidi, cisdum, cut off, cut away. [caedo.]

abs-cido, ère, cidi, cisdum, to cut into. [ad-caedo.]

accipio, ère, ceo,ceptum, to receive; to learn. [ad-capio.]

acclivis, e, adj., sloping upwards; ascending. [clivus.]

acclivitas tatis, an upward slope; an ascent.

accommodatus, a, um, pf. pass. part. of accommodate, suited, adapted.

accommodo, are, avi, atum, fit, adapt, adjust.

accurate, adv., comp. -tius, carefully, exactly.

ac-curro, ère, cucurri or curri, cut off, cut away. [caedo.]

ac-cusare, are, avi, atum, accusare, blame or reproach. [ad, causa.]

ac-cusare, are, avi, atum, accusare, blame reproach. [ad, causa.]

acer, acris, acré, adj., sharp, keen, energetic, violent.

acerbé, adv., sharply, bitterly, harshly.

acerbítas, tatis, sharpness, bitterness, sorrow, trouble, hardship.

acerbus, a, um, harsh, bitter, cruel, severe, disagreeable.

acerrime. V. acriter.

acervus, i, m, a heap, pile.
**VOCABULARY.**

“acies, ɒi, f., a sharp point or edge; keenness or fierceness of the eye; line of battle, battle array. [root ɒ sharp; “a thin line.”]

acquiro, ɒre, quisivi, quisitum, to gain, obtain, procure.

acrīter, adv., fiercely, sharply, comp. acrius: sup. acerrime. [acer.]

actuarius, a, um, adj „impeled by oars. [ago.]

actus, pf. part. of ago.

acuo, ac-uere, -ui, utum, sharpen.

acutus, a, um, pf. part. of acuo, as adj., sharp, pointed.

ad, prep. w. acc., to, towards, up to; by, near to.

adactus. V. adigo.

ad-aequo, ɒre, ávi, átum, to make equal to; to equal, rival.

ad-ámo, ɒre, ávi, átum, conceive an affection for, love, covet.

ad-augo, ɒre, auxi, auctum, to increase.

ad-do, ɒre, didi, ditum, to add.

ad-duco, ɒre, xi, ctum, to lead to, bring to, induce.

ademptus. V. adimo.

ad-éo, ɒre, íi, itum, to go to, approach.

adéo, adv., to this degree, thus, thus far, so.

adeptus, pf. part. of adipiscor.

adéquito, are, avi, atum, ride up to; ride towards. [eques.]

adfectus. V. adificio.

adfero. V. affero.

ad-ficio. V. afficio.

adflictus. V. adfligo.

ad-fligo, fligère, flixi, fictum, to cast or throw down.

ad-grégō, are, avi, atum, to add to a flock; adgregare se, to attach oneself. [ad, greg, gregō.]

ad-haereo, ɒre, haesi, haesum, to stick to.

ad-haeresco, ɒre, haesi, haesum, stick to; to adhere to.

ad-hibeo, ɒre, ni, itum, bring in, call in, invite, to have (one up) to, to summon, employ, consult. [ad, habeo.]

ad-hortor, abri, atus, to encourage, urge on.

adhuc, adv., as yet; hitherto; still; up to this time.

ad-láceo, ɒre, iacui, no sup., to lie near to; with dat.

adicio (adjicio), ɒre, iēci, iectum, throw to, throw upon, add. [iacio.]

ad-igo, ɒre, ēgi, actum, to bring or drive to; drive home. [ad, ago.]

ad-imo, ɒre, ēmi, emptum, to take away, deprive of. [ad, emo.]

ad-ipiscor, i, eptus, to gain, obtain.

aditus, ús, m., a going to, access, approach. [ad, eo.]

adiūdico, are, avi, atum, adjudge, award, assign.

ad-lungo, ɒre, nxi, nctum, to join to.

ad-iūtor, ōris, m., a helper.

ad-iūvo, are, iūvi, iütum, to aid.

admátturo, are, avi, atum, ripen, mature; hasten.

ad-mínister, tri, m., an attendant, agent.

ad-ministro, are, avi, atum, to manage.

admirandus, a, um, gerundive of admiror, wonderful.

ad-miror, abri, atus, to wonder at, to admire.

ad-mitto, ɒre, mísi. m., to admit; commit.

ad-módum, adv., up to the limit, much, very.

ad-móneo, ɒre, ùi, itum, to advise, warn.
adolescens, entis, part. of adolesco: as adj., young; as subst., comm., a young man, youth.

adolesco, ēre, olĕvi, ultum, grow up; reach adult age.

ād-ōrior, ēri, ortus, s (but with some 3rd conj. forms) to attack.

appeto (app.), ēre, īvi, or ī, ītum, to draw near, approach.

applico (app.), āre, ūī, ītum, to put against.

app-porto, āre, āvi, ītum, to convey.

app-prōpinquō (app.), āre, āvi, ītum, to come or draw near to.

ascendo. V. ascendō.

ascisco, ēre, scīvi, scītum, approach; admit, receive, adopt.

as-sesto, (ass.) ēre, astiti, no sup., to stand by.

as-suēfācio, (ass.) ēre, fēcī, factum, to accustom, to habituate; in pass., to get used (to anything).

as-suēisco, (ass.) ēre, ēvi, ētum, to grow used to, get accustomed to.

as-sum, -esse, -fui, to be present, be at hand.

as-tingo, (att.) ēre, tīgi, tactum, to touch, border upon.

as-tribuo. See attribuo.

adulescens. v. adolescens.

adulescentia (or adolescentia), ae, f, youth; age of youth.

adulescentulus, i, m, dimin., a lad, stripling.

adventus, ēs, m., a coming, approach.

adversarius, i, m, an adversary, opponent; foe.

adversus, a, um, adj., turned towards, facing.

adversus, prep. w. acc., opposite to, against.

adverto, ēre, verti, versum, turn to; animum advertere, direct the mind to, observe, notice, perceive.

advōco, are, avi, atum, call to, summon.

ad-vōlo, āre, āvi, ītum, to fly to; to hasten off to.

aedificium, i, n., a building. [aedes, facio.]

aedifico, āre, āvi, ītum, to make a building, to build. [aedes, facio.]

aeger, gra, grum, adj., ill, sick.

aegre, adv., with difficulty.

aequaliter, adv., evenly, regularly, uniformly.

aequinoctium, i, n, the equinox. [aequus, nox.]

aequitas, atis, f., equality, justice, evenness; animi aequitas, contentment.

aequo, āre, āvi, ītum, to make equal.

aequus, a, um, adj., equal, level, advantageous.

aeraria, ae, a copper mine. [aes.]

aerarius, a, um, belonging to, pertaining to copper or bronze.

aereus, a, um, made of copper or bronze.

aes, aeris, n., bronze; money. aes

alienum, debt (other people's money).

aestās, atis, f., summer.

aestimātio, ōnis, f., a valuation.

aestimo, are, avi, atum, to estimate. reckon.

aestivus, a, um, adj., pertaining to summer; of summer.

aestuārium, i, n, a marshy arm of the sea.

aestus, ūs, m., heat; tide; current.

aetās, atis, t., age, time of life.

aeternus, a, um, adj., eternal, unbroken, perpetual.

Africus ventus, the south-west wind.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>affiero</td>
<td>bring forward, bring forward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afficio</td>
<td>affect, affect, to affect, influence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>affigo</td>
<td>attach, attach, to attach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>affing</td>
<td>affect, affect, to affect, influence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>affinitas</td>
<td>relationship, kinship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>affirmatio</td>
<td>declaration, assurance, assurance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>affixus</td>
<td>part, part of affigo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afflicto</td>
<td>trouble, trouble, to trouble, vex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aggredior</td>
<td>attack, attack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aggredo</td>
<td>advance, advance, to advance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agito</td>
<td>propell, propell, to propell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agmen</td>
<td>army, army, to army, to march</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ago</td>
<td>do, do, to do, act, drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agricultura</td>
<td>farming, husbandry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alacer</td>
<td>brisk, eager, eager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alacritas</td>
<td>eagerness, ardor, zeal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alarius</td>
<td>the allies, the allies, to belong to the wings of an army</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>albus</td>
<td>white, white</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alces</td>
<td>elk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allus</td>
<td>at another time, at another time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alius</td>
<td>another, another, at another time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alienus</td>
<td>that belongs to another, foreign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliio</td>
<td>elsewhere, to another place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquamdiu</td>
<td>for a considerable time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquando</td>
<td>at some time, at length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquanto</td>
<td>of degree, somewhat, considerably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquanum</td>
<td>used as subs, a certain amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliqui</td>
<td>some, any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alicua</td>
<td>liquid, liquid, indef. pron.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquot</td>
<td>some one, something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alter</td>
<td>otherwise, in a different way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allatus</td>
<td>to, to attract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alo</td>
<td>to, to attract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alterius</td>
<td>of, of, of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alternus</td>
<td>alternate, one after another, mutual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>altitudo</td>
<td>height or depth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>altus</td>
<td>deep, deep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allata</td>
<td>high, deep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ambactus</td>
<td>retainer, vassal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ambo</td>
<td>both</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amem</td>
<td>madness, folly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VOCABULARY.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amictia</td>
<td>friendship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amicus</td>
<td>friendly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amito</td>
<td>to lose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amores</td>
<td>love, affection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amplifico</td>
<td>to enlarge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amplior</td>
<td>more, better</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amplius</td>
<td>larger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an</td>
<td>whether; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ancesps</td>
<td>two headed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angusta</td>
<td>narrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angota</td>
<td>narrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anima</td>
<td>soul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animadverto</td>
<td>to turn the mind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>annoticus</td>
<td>of last year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>annus</td>
<td>year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>annuus</td>
<td>annual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anser</td>
<td>a goose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ante</td>
<td>before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antecedo</td>
<td>to go before; take the lead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antecursor</td>
<td>forerunner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antepone</td>
<td>to prefer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antennae or antenna</td>
<td>yard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antequam</td>
<td>before; before that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anteverto</td>
<td>to open, uncover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apertet</td>
<td>openly, manifestly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apertus</td>
<td>open, unprotected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appareo</td>
<td>to prepare, equip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appello</td>
<td>to call upon; call upon by name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apparo</td>
<td>provide, equip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appettet</td>
<td>petive or ii, petite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>applico</td>
<td>attach; lean against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approbo</td>
<td>approve of, consent to, favor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appropinquou v. ad-propinquou</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appulsus v. appello</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aptus</td>
<td>fit, suitable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aqua</td>
<td>water</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Vocabulary:**

- **amentum**: a strap or thong.
- **amfractus**: a winding path.
- **amicé**: kindly, in a friendly manner.
- **amicitia**: friendship.
- **amicus**: friendly.
- **amitio**: to lose.
- **amor**: love, affection.
- **amplé**: largely, liberally, abundantly.
- **amplifico**: to enlarge.
- **amplior**: more, better.
- **amplus**: larger.
- **an**: whether; or.
- **anceps**: two headed.
- **angustiae**: narrowness.
- **angustius**: within more narrow limits.
- **angustus**: narrow.
- **animae**: the soul.
- **animadvertio**: give heed to, notice.
- **annoticus**: year old.
- **annus**: year.
- **annuus**: annual.
- **anter**: before; take the lead.
- **anter-cedo**: to go before; take the lead.
- **anter-cursor**: forerunner.
- **anterfo**: ferre, to prefer.
- **anterpone**: to prefer.
- **antequam**: before; before that.
- **anteverto**: to open, uncover.
- **apertet**: openly, manifestly.
- **apertus**: open, unprotected.
- **appareo**: to prepare, equip.
- **appello**: to call upon; call upon by name.
- **appettet**: petive or ii, petite.
- **applico**: attach; lean against.
- **approbo**: approve of, consent to, favor.
- **appropinquou v. ad-propinquou**:
- **appulsus v. appello**:
- **aptus**: fit, suitable.
- **aquae**: water.
äquátio, ōnis, f., getting water.

äquilla, ae, f., on eagle. The eagle, the principal standard of a Roman legion, carried on the top of a staff, originally of silver, later of gold.

äquilifer, ēri, m., eagle bearer, the officer who carried the chief standard of a Roman legion. (“The eagle-bearer was aquilifer, chosen by the centurions among the hardiest and bravest soldiers, and distingushed by a bearskin which covered his helmet and shoulders.” Bond and Walpole.)

arbiter, tri, m., a witness, judge, umpire.

arbítrium, li, n., a decision, judgment. [arbiter, an umpire.]

arbítror, āri, ātus, to judge, think, consider. [arbiter.]

arbó, ōris, f., a tree.

arcesso, ēre, cessivi, cessitum, send for, summon, fetch.

ardeo, ēre, arsi, arsum, to be on fire, to burn: Gallia ardet, is aflame, burning with wrath.

arduus, a, um, adj., steep, high, difficult.

argentum, i, n., silver.

argilla, ae, f., clay.

aridus, a, um, adj., dry. aridum, dry land, the shore.

aríes, aríétis, m., battering ram; also a prop, buttress, support.

arma, ōrum, n. plur., arms, weapons of war.

armamenta, orum, n. pl., implements, fittings, tackle, rigging.

armatura, ae, f., armor, equipment. levis armaturae, light-armed (soldiers).

armātus, a, um, part. armo: as adj., armed, wearing arms.

armo, are, avi, atum, to furnish with weapons, arm, equip.

arripio, ēre, ripīi, reptum, to seize, snatch up. [ad, rapiō.]

arroganter, adv., insolently, arrogantly, haughtily.

arrogantia, ae, f., insolence, arrogance, haughtiness.

ars, tis, f., art, handicraft, skill.

artē, adv., closely, tightly. [artus.]

articulus, i, m., dim. of artus, a joint of an animal body.

artificium, li, n., skilled labour, handicraft, a trade.

artus, a, um, adj., close, tight fitting. [arceo, shut up.]

arx, arcis, f., fortress, stronghold, citadel.

ascendo, (ads.), ēre, scendi, sensum, to climb, mount up, ascend. [ad, scando.]

ascensus, (ads.) ūs, m., a going up, look, ascent.

aspectus, (ads.) ūs, m., appearance, sight.

asper, ēra, ērum, adj., rough: oppugnatio, fierce, severe.

assiduus, v. adsiduus.

assisto, v. adsisto.

assuefacio, v. adsuefacio.

assuesco, v. adsuesco,

at, conj., but, yet.

atre (ac) conj., and, and also; with words meaning difference, than.

attexo, ēre, texui, textum, weave to; add, join.

atingo, ēre, tīgi, tactum, to reach, touch.

attribuo, ēre, ūi, ētum, to add to; assign, give.

auctor, ōris, m., an adviser, instigator.

auctōritās, ātis, f., influence; seldom translated authority.

auctus, a, um, pl. part. of augeo, increased; as adj., distinguished.

audācia, ae, f., boldness, daring.

audācter, adv., boldly; audacius, audacissime. [audax.]
audax, ăcis, adj., bold, spirited, fearless; audacious.
audéō, ĕre, ausus sum, semi-dep., to dare.
audiens, -ntis, pres. part. of audio; as adj., obedient to.
audio, ĕre, ĕvi, ĕtum, to hear, to hearken unto, obey.
auditio, ōnis, f., report, rumor, hearsay.
augēo, ĕre, auxi, auctum, to enlarge.
auriga, ae, m., chariut driver, charioteer.
auris, is, f., an ear.
aut, conj., or: aut...aut, either...or.
autem, conj., introducing a thought, either entirely opposed to the previous train of thought or simply different; (1) but, (2) moreover, now (transitional).
autumnus, i, m., autumn. [augeo.]
auxiliaris, ĕ, adj., auxiliary.
auxilior, āri, atus sum, assist, help.
auxilium, ĕli, n., aid, help.
avāritia, ae, f., greed, avarice, covetousness.
āvēho, ĕre, vexi, vectum, carry away.
āversus, ā, um, part of avertō, turned away; behind, in the rear.
āverto, ĕre, ĕti, sum, to turn (anything) away.
āvis, is, f., a bird.
āvus, i, m., a grandfather.
bēnē, adv., well.
bēnē-fīciōn, a kindness, favor. [bene-facio.]
bēnē-vōlentia, ae, f., good will, friendship, kindness. [bene, volo.]
bīdūum, i, n., a space of two days. [bis, dies.]
biennium, i, n., a space of two years. [bis, annus.]
bīni, ae, a, distrib. num. adj., two at a time, two each, in groups of two.
bipedālis, e, adj., two feet long, wide, thick, etc.
bipertito, adv., in two divisions.
bīs, num. adv., twice.
boṇitas, ātis, f., goodness, excellence.
boṇus, a, um, adj., good; as subst., bona, orum, n. plur., wealth, goods, property.
boṇum, i, n., profit, good, advantage.
bōs, bōvis, comm., an ox, a cow.
brachium, i, n., an arm.
brēvis, e, adj., short, brief.
brēvitās, ātis, f., shortness, smallness, smallness of stature.
brēviter, adv., briefly, shortly.
brūma, ae, f., winter; the winter solstice. [brevis.]
C. = Caius.
cacūmen. īnis, n., a point, peak, summit.
cadāver, eris, n., a corpse, dead body.
cādo, ĕre, cēcidi, cāsum, to fall; to fall (i.e. be killed) in battle.
caedes, is, f., a cutting down, slaughter. [caedo.]
cælestis, e, adj., belonging to the sky, heavenly; as subst., a deity.
cærimonium, ae, f., a religious ceremony or rite.
caerulēus, a, um, adj., blue.
călămităș, ātis, f., mishap, disaster.
callidus, a, um, adj., crafty, cunning, expert, skilful.
călo, ōnis, m., camp-follower.
campester, tris, tre, adj., on level ground, flat, level.
campus, i, m., a plain.
căno, canère, cécini, cantum, sing., sound a musical instrument.
căper, pri, m., a he-goat, goat.
căpillus, i, m., hair, lock of hair.
căpio, ĕre, cēpi, captum, to take, make (in the nautical sense of reach).
căpřēa, ae, ē, a wild she-goat.
captivus, a, um, adj., taken prisoner: as subst., captivus, i, m., a prisoner of war, captive. [capio.]
căptus, p. part. of capio; capta, orum, n, pl. subst., plunder.
căptus, ūs, m., capacity, comprehension, notion, idea. [capio.]
căpūt, ītis, n., the head.
cărēo, ĕre, ūi, itum, to be without; govs. abl.
carina, ae, ē, the keel of a ship.
căro, carnis, f., flesh.
carlo, ĕre, carpsi, carptum, pluck; censures, criticise, slander, revile.
carrus, ūs, m., a cart, waggon.
cărus, a, um, adj., dear, valued.
cása, ae, ē, a hut.
căsēus, i, m., cheese.
cassis, idis, f., a helmet.
castellum, i, n., a fort, redoubt. [dimin. of castrum.]
castigo, are, avi, atum, punish, reprove, censure.
castrum, i, n., a fort; more usual in plur., castra, ōrum, n, a camp.
căsus, ūs, m., accident, chance, event. [cado.]
cătēna, ae, ē, a chain.
causa, ae, ē, a reason, causă, abl. sing. with gen., for the sake of, on account of.
cătē. adv., cautiously. [cæveo.]
cătēs, is, ē, a jagged rock, crag, cliff.
cătus, pl. part. pass. of cæveo.
căveo, ĕre, cāvi, cautum, to take care; be on one's guard.
cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum (of troops), to retire, fall back.
cēlēritās, atis, ē, quickness, speed, swiftness. [cēler.]
celeriter, adv., quickly.
cēlo, are, avi, atum, conceal, keep in the dark, hide.
censēo, ĕre, censūi, censum, to be of opinion, to think.
census, ĕs, m., a census, count. [cessio.]
centēni, ae, a, distrib. num. adj., a hundred each.
centum, a hundred.
centūrio, ōnis, m., a captain of a hundred men, a centurion.
cernō, ĕre, crēvi, crētum, to distinguish by the senses, to see, perceive.
certāmen, īnis, n., a contest, rivalry.
cērtē, adv., certainly, surely: certīus (cognoscere) more exactly, more in detail.
certus, a, um, adj., assured, fixed, settled: (aliquem) certiorem facere, to inform, let anyone know; in pass., certior fieri, to be informed.
cervus, i, m., a stag, deer.
cespēs, ītis, m., a cut sod or turf.
cētréus, a, um, adj., the rest; usually in plur., the rest, the others.
cibāria, ōrum, n, plur., provisions.
cibus, i, m., food.
cingo, ĕre, xi, ctum, to surround, encompass.
Cippus, i, m., a stake, post, palisade.
Circâ, adv., round about, around.
Circinus, i, m., a pair of compasses.
Circiter, prep. gov. acc. and adv., about; mostly of numbers or time.
Circueo, v., circumeo.
Circuitus, part. V. circumeo.
Circuitus, iis, m., a going round, compass. [circum, eo].
Circum, prep. and adv., around, about.
Circumcido, ēre, cīdi, ēsum, to cut around, cut.
Circumcisus, a, um, pl. part. of circumcido, cut off, inaccessible, steep.
Circumclūdu, ēre, sī, sum, to shut in all around, to surround.
Circum-do, dāre, dēdi, dātum, to surround, inclose; place round.
Circum-ēo, ēre, ii, and ivi, circumtuin, to go round, visit.
Circum-fundo, ēre, fūdi, fūsum, to pour around; with se, to crowd around, gather around.
Circumicio, icēre, icēci, ictum, throw around, place around.
Circumieactus, pl. part. of circumicio, surrounding.
Circum-mitto, ēre, mīsi, missum, to send around.
Circum-mūnio, īre, ivī, ītum, to surround with walls, fortify round about.
Circummunītio, ēnis, f., a fortifying round about; an investment of a town by siege.
Circumplector, plecti, plexus, embrace, surround, encompass.
Circum-sisto, ēre, stēti, to stand around, surround.
Circumspicio, ēre, exi, ectum, to look around.
Circumsto, stare, steti, stand around.
Circumvallo, are, avi, atum, surround with a rampart, blockade.
Circumvēhor, vēhi, vectus, ride or sail around.
Circum-vēnio, ōre, vēni, ventum, to come round (esp. in a hostile way), to surround, entrap.
Circumventus, a, um, p. part. circumvenio.
Cis, prep. with acc., on this side of.
Citatus, a, um, hurried, moved or spurred on quickly. [pl. part. of cito].
Citērior, adj., formed from citra; on the nearer side, nearer.
Citissimē, superl. of adv. cito, most quickly.
Citā, prep. w. acc., on this side of.
Citro, adv. hither.
Civis, is, c., a citizen.
Civitās, ātis, f., citizenship; a state (i.e. the body of citizens). [civis].
Clam, adv. secretly [celo.]
Clāmito, are, avi, atum, freq., to keep calling out, to cry aloud. [clamo.]
Clāmor, āris, m., a shout, shouting.
Clandestīinus, a, um, adj., secret, hidden.
Clārus, a, um, adj., clear; vox, loud, distinct, clear.
Classis, is, f., a fleet.
Claudo, ēre, clausi, clausum, shut, close; claudere agmen, bring up the rear.
Clāvus, i, m., a nail, spike.
Clēmentia, ae, f., kindness, mercy, clemency.
Cliens, tis, m., a dependant; of nations, vassals.
Clientēla, ae, f., the condition of being dependent, vassalage.
Clīvus, i, m., a slope, hill [clino, to lean.]
Cōacervo, are, avi, atum, heap up, collect.
Cōactus, īus, m., a forcing, compulsion.
VOCABULARY.

cogradento, are, avi, atum, fasten together, connect.

coardto, are, avi, atum, to press, or squeeze together [arto, make tight.]

cobgi. v. cogo.

co-emo, émère, émi, emptum, buy up, purchase.

cé-éo, ire, ivi or i, itum, to come together, meet, assemble.

coclere, émantine, coequus, cultivate; to worship, honor.

colonia, ae, f., a colony, a body of emigrants, colonists. [colonus, colo.]

color, oris, m., colour.

combro, ére, ussi, ustum, burn up, consume.

cómés, itis, m., a companion.

comitium, i, n., the place in the Roman Forum where the elections were held; hence the assembly, the elections.

cómitor, ari, atus sum, to accompany.

combeátus, us, m., journey, voyage, convoy; provisions, supplies. [cum, meo.]

com-mémoro, are, avi, atum, to call to mind, recount, relate.

commindo, are, avi, atum, commit or entrust to for protection.

commentarius, i, m., memoir, commentary.

commeo, -meare, -meavi, -meatum, to go to and fro, visit, resort to.

commilito, ónis, a fellow soldier, comrade.

com-minus, adv., hand to hand. [con, manus.]

commissúra, ae, f., a joint, juncture.

com-mitto, ére, misi, missum, to send or bring together; pugnam or proelium, to join battle; to do, commit (esp. any bad or unworthy action).

commódé, adv., -ius, -issime, conveniently, advantageously, suitably.

com-módus, a, um, adj., suitable; subst. commodum, i, n, advantage, profit.

commonefacio, facere, feci, factum, remind, impress upon.

com-móror, ari, atus, to delay, stay.

commóveo, ére, móvi, motum, agitate, disturb, alarm, excite, influence.
Commune, are, avi, atum, to make common, share (with anyone), to consult. [communis.]

Communio, are, avi or ili, itum, to fortify strongly, intrench.

Communis, e, adj. common, general.

Communitio, onis, t., change, alteration.

Commuto, are, avi, atum, to change wholly, to exchange, replace.

1. Comparo, (conparo), are, avi, atum, to repair, get together, secure, collect. [com, paro.]

2. Comparo, are, avi, atum, to compare, like.

Compello, ere, puli, pulsum, drive together, collect; force, compel.

Compendium, i, n., a saving, gain, profit.

Comperio, are, peri, pertum, to find out for certain, learn, ascertain.

Compertus, part. of compertio, known, certain.

Complector, i, plexus sum, embrace, surround, include.

Compleo, ere, evi, etum, to fill full, fill up.

Complures, a or ia, several.

Comporto, are, avi, atum, to carry together, collect.

Comprehendo, ere, di, sum, to catch or seize hold of.

Compobo, are, avi, atum, to confirm, establish, make good.

Conatatum, i, n., an attempt.

Conatus, us, m., an attempt.

Conatus, a, um, pf. part. of conor.

Condido, ere, cedi, cissum, cut up, cut to pieces, cut into sections [caedo.]

Concilio, are, avi, atum, to reconcile.

Concilium, ii, n., an assembly, meeting, council.

Concito, are, avi, atum, freq., to rouse up, stir up, excite. [con, cieo.]

Conclamo, are, avi, atum, to call or cry out together, to shout.

Codiundo, ere, elusi, elsum, shut up, enclose, confine [clando.]

Concrepo, are, ui, itum, rattle, crash.

Concurro, ere, curri, cursum, to run together, flock.

Concurso, are, freq., to run to and fro, rush about.

Concursus, us, m., a running or flocking together, a concourse, collision.

Condemno, are, avi, atum, condemn, sentence [damus.]

Condicio, onis, f., a condition (of a bargain), terms; condition (= state, circumstances.)

Condono, are, avi, atum, give up, forgive, excuse, pardon.

Conduco, ere, xi, ctum, to lead or bring together; to hire.

Confectus, v. conficio.

Confercio, ire, no, peri, pertum, to cram, stuff or press close together. [farcio.]

Confero, -ferre, collati, collatum, to bring or gather together.

Confestim, adv., forthwith.

Conficio, ere, feci, fecatum, to finish, accomplish, perform; to wear out (with wounds), exhaust.

Configo, figere, fixi, fixum, fasten together, join.
confinis, e, adj., bordering on, adjoining.

confinium, l, n., limit, border, (of lands); district.

confio, fiéri, irreg. pass. of conficio, = regular form conficior, vii., 58.

confirmatio, ōnis, f., assurance, assertion, encouragement.

confirmit, arc, avi, atum, to make firm, encourage; 2. to assert, protest or pledge one’s self to (a thing.)

confirmus, pf. part. of confido, relying on, trusting to.

confitēor, čri, fessus, to acknowledge, confess.

conflixus, part. of conficio.

confławgo, āre, āvi, ātum, to burn, be consumed.

conflictatus, a, um, part. conflictio, harassed, distressed.

conflictio, are, avi, atum, dash against or together, struggle with—pass. be harassed.

confligo, čre, fiixi, fiectum, to clash with, dash together, engage with.

confluens, entis, m., meeting of two streams; confluence.

confluo, čre, fluxi, no supine, flow together; flock together.

confugio, čre, fūgi, to flee for refuge.

confundo, čre, fūdī, fūsum, pour together, mix, blend, unite.

congerio, čre, gessi, gestum, bear, bring; or carry together, collect, heap or pile up.

congrēdior, i, gressus sum, to meet, to engage in fight: congrédi cum, to make common cause with.

congressus, a, um, part. of congedior.

congressus, ūs, m., a coming together, encounter, engagement.

conicio, čre, iēci, iectum, to cast, fling, hurl.

conjectūra, ae, f., a conjecture, inference.

coniunctim adv., jointly, in common.

coniungo, čre, nxi, etum, to join, unite.

coniunx, coniūgis, e., a husband or wife, spouse [coniungo.]

coniūrūtio, ōnis, f., a conspiracy. [coniuro.]

coniūro, arc, avi, atum, take oath together, league together, conspire.

con-laudo, v. col-laudo.

con-lōco, v. col-lōco.

con-lōquiūm, v. col-lōquiūm.

con-lōquor, v. col-lōquor.

conors, ari, atus, to attempt, try.

con-paro, v. comparo.

con-pello, v. compello.

con-plūres, v. complures.

conquiesco, čre, quiēvi, quiētum, rest, repose.

con-quirō, čre, quīsivi, quīsitum, to search out, seek after. [con-quaero.]

consanguineus, a, um, adj., of the same blood; as subst., m., relative, kinsman.

con scendo, čre, ndi, nsum, to climb, mount, go on board.

con-scientia, ae, f., consciousness.

conciscisco, čre, scivi, scitum, decree, appoint—sibi mortem consciscere, commit suicide.

conscius, a, um, adj., conscious, accessory to.

con-scribo, čre, psi, ptum, to write; to enlist, enrol.

consecratūs, a, um, part. consecro.

consecro, čre, āvi, ātum, to make sacred, consecrate.

con-sector, ari, atus sum, to chase, pursue.

con-sēdi, pf. of consido.
consensio, ōnis, f., agreement, unanimity.

consensus, ōs, m., consent, assent, united opinion.

con-sentio, sentire, sensi, sensum, to agree, make common cause.

con-sèquor, séquì, secūtus, to follow up, follow; obtain, attain, acquire.

conservo, are, avi, atum, save, spare.

con-sido, ēre, sēdi, sessum, to take a seat, sit down; pitch a camp.

consilium, ūi, n., plan, counsel; council of war.

con-símilis, e, adj., very like.

con-sisto, ere, stíti, stítum, to place one's self, stand; 2. to consist in or of.

consobrinus, i, born of another's.

con-s61or, ari, atus sum, to cheer, comfort.

con-spectus, ūs, m., sight, view.

con-spício, ēre, spexi, spectum, to behold, deseryl, observe.

consícñor, ēri, atus, to get sight of, see, perceive.

conspiro, are, avi, atum, agree, conspire [spiro, breathe].

constantere, adv., steadily, uniformly, resolutely.

constantia, ae, f., firmness; constancy, resolution.

con-sat, stāre, impers. v., it is agreed, well known, it is clear.

consterno, are, avi, atum, alarm, terrify.

consterno, ēre, stravi, stratum, streu over; cover.

con-stípio, ēre, āvi, ātum, to crowd or press closely together.

con-stittuio, ēre, ĩi, ātum, to draw up, arrange; to appoint; to decide, settle, determine; to resolve.

consto, stāre, stiti, stātum, stand still, remain; consist in, depend on; cost. See constat.

constatus. See consterno.

consūesco, ēre, suēvi, suētum, to grow accustomed; in perf. tenses, to be accustomed, to be wont.

consūetúdo, Inis, f., custom, usage. [consuesco]

consuētus. See consuesco.

consul, ūlis, m., consul. Two consuls were chosen annually as the chief magistrates of Rome.

consulātus, ūs, n., the consulship, office of consul.

consulo, ēre, lūi, ītum, to take counsel; with dat., to have regard to, consult the interests of.

consulto, adv., intentionally. [consulto]

consulto, are, avi, atum, to consult.

consultum, i, n., a resolution, decree.

con-sūmo, ēre, sumpsi, sumptum, to take up, use up, consume, waste, spend.

consumptus. V. consumo.

con-surgo, ēre, surre-xi, surrectum, to arise, rise up.

con-tābulo, ēre, āvi, ātum, to line with planks.

contāgio, ōnis, f., a touching, contact, contamination.

contāmino, are, avi, atum, taint, pollute.

con-temno, ēre, tempsi, temptum, to despise, hold cheap.

contemptio, ōnis, f., contempt, scorn.

contemptus, ūs, m., contempt, scorn.

con-tendo, ēre, di, ātum, to contend (as rivals); to fight; strive, make an effort.

contentio, ōnis, f., contest, rivalry.

contestor, ari, ātus sum, call to witness, supplicate, appeal to.

contexo, ēre, texui, textum, weave, bind together, join.
continens, entis, f., the mainland; also adj., unbroken, continuous.
continenter, adv., constantly, incessantly.
contíneó, ére, úni, tentum, to keep, keep in, restrain; (of space) to contain [con, teneo.]
contíngo, ére, tigi, tactum, to touch, reach.
continuatio, ónis, f., continuation, succession.
continuo, adv., forthwith, immediately.
continuus, a, um, adj., unbroken, continuous.
contio, ónis, f., an assembly; a speech, harangue.
contionor, ari, atus sum, address, harangue.
contra, prep. w. acc. and adv., against; in opposition, in reply.
con-tráho, ére, xi, ctum, to draw together, draw in, lessen.
contrarius, a, um, opposite, contrary.
contróversia, ae, f., contention, dispute.
contúmélia, ae, f., affront, insult; buffeting, rough usage; c. verborum, insulting language, scôfis, taunts.
convalesco, ére, valui, no sup., to get well, recover strength.
convallis, is, f., a valley enclosed on all sides.
convého, vehère, vexi, vectum, bring together, collect, convey.
con-vénio, ére, vêni, ventum, to come together, assemble, muster.
 conventus, ûs, m., an assembly; a court of justice; plur., the assizes; (of soldiers) parade.
con-vento, ére, ti, sum, to turn, direct; face about.
convincó, ére, vici, victum, conquer utterly; convict, prove.

convóco, are, avi, atum, call together, summon.
co-órior, iri, ortus, to arise.
cópiá, ae, f., abundance, a sufficient supply; in plur., forces.
cópiósus, a, um, well supplied, wealthy, rich.
cópula, ae, f., band: grappling iron.
cor, cordis, n., the heart.
córam, adv. and prep. w. abl., in the presence of; face to face.
corium, i. n., thick skin, hide.
cornu, ûs, n., a horn.
coróna, ae, f., crown; circle.
corpus, óris, n., a body.
corripio, ére, ripui, reptiun, seize violently; carry off.
corrumpo, ére, rûpi, ruptum, break to pieces; spoil, destroy, ruin.
cortex, õcis, m. and f., bark of a tree.
córus ventus, m., the north-west wind.
côtidiánus, a, um, adj., daily.
côt Método, adv., daily.
crassitudo, inis, f., thickness.
crâtis, is, f., wicker-work, hurdle.
creber, bra, um, adj., frequent.
crebro, adv., frequently, often.
credo, ére, didi, ditum, to believe.
crêmo, õre, âvi, âtum, to burn.
creo, are, avi, atum, create, make; choose, elect, appoint.
cresco, ére, crêvi, crêtum, grow, increase; become great or powerful.
crîmen, inis, n., charge, accusation; less commonly, fault, crime.
crûciátus, ûs, m., torture. [crucio, crux.]
crudélis, é, adj., cruel.
crudélitas, átis, f., cruelty.
crudéliter, adv., cruelty.
crûs, ûris, n., a leg.
cúbile, is, n., a place of rest, couch, lair. [cubio.]

culpa, ae, f., fault.
cultus, ùs, m., way of living, civilization. [colo.]
cum, prep. w. abl., with.
cum, (quam), conj., when; since; although.
cunctatio, ònis, f., delay, hesitation, tardiness.
cunctor, arí, atus sum, dclay, hesitate.
cunctus, a, um, adj., all together, all. [co-ïunctus.]
cúneátim, adv., in the form of a wedge.
cúneus, i, m., a wedge; a wedge-formation, military term.
cuniculus, i, m., literally, rabbit; burrow; in military sense, a mine.
cúpide, lus, issime, adv., eagerly.
cúpíditás, átis, f., covetousness, desire, greed. [cupidus, cupio.]
cúpidus, a, um, adj., eager for, desirous of. [cupio.]
cúpío, ëre, ivi or ùi, ítum, to wish; with dat., to be well inclined to, =faveo.
cúr, adv., why.
cúra, ae, f., care, attention, anxiety, trouble.
cúro, ëre, ávi, átum, to care for; w. acc. of gerundive, to cause or order anything to be done.
curro, ëre, cucurri, cursum, run.
currus, ùs, m., chariot.
cursus, ùs, m., speed; course. [curro.]
custódia, ae, f., a guard, watch.
custódio, ëre, ivi, ítum, guard, defend.
custóis, odis, c., a guard, keeper, watch.

c.ubile, is, n., a place of rest, couch, lair. [cubio.]

culpa, ae, f., fault.
cultus, ùs, m., way of living, civilization. [colo.]
cum, prep. w. abl., with.
cum, (quam), conj., when; since; although.
cunctatio, ònis, f., delay, hesitation, tardiness.
cunctor, arí, atus sum, dclay, hesitate.
cunctus, a, um, adj., all together, all. [co-ïunctus.]
cúneátim, adv., in the form of a wedge.
cúneus, i, m., a wedge; a wedge-formation, military term.
cuniculus, i, m., literally, rabbit; burrow; in military sense, a mine.
cúpide, lus, issime, adv., eagerly.
cúpíditás, átis, f., covetousness, desire, greed. [cupidus, cupio.]
cúpidus, a, um, adj., eager for, desirous of. [cupio.]
cúpío, ëre, ivi or ùi, ítum, to wish; with dat., to be well inclined to, =faveo.
cúr, adv., why.
cúra, ae, f., care, attention, anxiety, trouble.
cúro, ëre, ávi, átum, to care for; w. acc. of gerundive, to cause or order anything to be done.
curro, ëre, cucurri, cursum, run.
currus, ùs, m., chariot.
cursus, ùs, m., speed; course. [curro.]
custódia, ae, f., a guard, watch.
custódio, ëre, ivi, ítum, guard, defend.
custóis, odis, c., a guard, keeper, watch.

d.ubile, is, n., a place of rest, couch, lair. [cubio.]

culpa, ae, f., fault.
cultus, ùs, m., way of living, civilization. [colo.]
cum, prep. w. abl., with.
cum, (quam), conj., when; since; although.
cunctatio, ònis, f., delay, hesitation, tardiness.
cunctor, arí, atus sum, dclay, hesitate.
cunctus, a, um, adj., all together, all. [co-ïunctus.]
cúneátim, adv., in the form of a wedge.
cúneus, i, m., a wedge; a wedge-formation, military term.
cuniculus, i, m., literally, rabbit; burrow; in military sense, a mine.
cúpide, lus, issime, adv., eagerly.
cúpíditás, átis, f., covetousness, desire, greed. [cupidus, cupio.]
cúpidus, a, um, adj., eager for, desirous of. [cupio.]
cúpío, ëre, ivi or ùi, ítum, to wish; with dat., to be well inclined to, =faveo.
cúr, adv., why.
cúra, ae, f., care, attention, anxiety, trouble.
cúro, ëre, ávi, átum, to care for; w. acc. of gerundive, to cause or order anything to be done.
curro, ëre, cucurri, cursum, run.
currus, ùs, m., chariot.
cursus, ùs, m., speed; course. [curro.]
custódia, ae, f., a guard, watch.
custódio, ëre, ivi, ítum, guard, defend.
custóis, odis, c., a guard, keeper, watch.

d.ubile, is, n., a place of rest, couch, lair. [cubio.]

culpa, ae, f., fault.
cultus, ùs, m., way of living, civilization. [colo.]
cum, prep. w. abl., with.
cum, (quam), conj., when; since; although.
cunctatio, ònis, f., delay, hesitation, tardiness.
cunctor, arí, atus sum, dclay, hesitate.
cunctus, a, um, adj., all together, all. [co-ïunctus.]
cúneátim, adv., in the form of a wedge.
cúneus, i, m., a wedge; a wedge-formation, military term.
cuniculus, i, m., literally, rabbit; burrow; in military sense, a mine.
cúpide, lus, issime, adv., eagerly.
cúpíditás, átis, f., covetousness, desire, greed. [cupidus, cupio.]
cúpidus, a, um, adj., eager for, desirous of. [cupio.]

D.

d. = Decimus, a proper name.
damnátus, a, um, part. damno, condemned; as subst., damnati, orum, m., convicts, criminals.
damno, are, avi, atum, condemn, sentence.
damnum, i, n., hurt, injury, loss.
dé, prep. w. abl., from, down from; about, concerning.
débèo, ère, ùi, ítum, to owe.
dé-cédo, ëre, cessi, cessum, to go away, depart.
décem, num. adj., ten.
deceptus. See decipio.
dé-cerno, ëre, crèvi, crètum, to decide, settle.
décerto, are, avi, atum, fight, engage in battle.
décessus, ùs, m., retreat, withdrawal.
décido, ère, cidi, no supine, fall down.
décimus, a, um, ord. num, adj., tenth.
deipio, ëre, cèpi, ceptum, deceive.
décláro, are, avi, atum, make clear, declare, announce.
déclívis, e, adj., sloping, descending.
déclívitás, átis, f., declivity, descent.
décrétum, i, n. See decerno.
décúmainus, in the phrase decemína porta, the rear or main entrance of a Roman camp, placed farthest from the enemy, opposite to the porta praetoria, and named from the fact that the 10th cohort encamped near it.
décúrio, ònis, m., a decurion, a cavalry officer in charge of ten men.
décurro, ëre, cucurri or curri, cursum, run down, hasten, move off.
dédecus, òris, n., disgrace.
déediticius, a, um, one who has surrendered.
dédictio, onis, f., a surrender.

dé-do, -dère, -didi, -ditum, to deliver or give up, to devote.

dé-duxo, -dé, -duti, -ductum, to lead away, withdraw (troops); (of ships), to bring down, launch.

deductus. V. deduco.

défatigatio, onis, f., weariness, fatique, exhaustion.

défatigatus, part. of défatigo, wearied out, exhaustred.

défatigo, are, avi, atum, tire out, exhaust, fatigue.

défectio, onis, f., rebellion, revolt. [deficio.]

dé-fendo, -fere, -fim, sum, to repel, ward off.

defensio, onis, f., defence.

defensor, oris, m., a defender.

defero, ferre, tuli, latum, to announce, report; to bear down, carry down, bring.

defessus, a, um, pf. part. of déféscor, wearied, worn out.

defício, -fere, féci, lectum, to revolt; to fail, be wanting.

defigo, -fere, xi, xum, to fasten or fix down or in.

defínio, i, re, ivi, itum, set bounds to, limit, define, fix, assign.

defluo, -fere, fluxi, fluxum, flow down, flow away.

defóre, fut. inf. of desum, =defuturum esse.

deformis, -é, adj., ill-shaped, ugly.

defugio, -fere, fugi, to flee from, avoid, shun.

deficio, -fere, féci, lectum, to cast or throw down; to disappoint.

deféctus, a, um. See dé-icio.

deféctus, -üs, m., descent, slope, deformity. [iacio.]

defínceps, adv., one after the other, in succession, in turn. [deinde, capio].

déinde, adv., thereafter, afterwards, then, next. [de, inde].

dé-látus. See defero.

délecto, are, avi, atum, delight, please; in pass. take pleasure in.

délectus, a, um. See déligo.

délectus, -üs, selection; levy (of soldiers). [deligo.]

délleo, -lé, -lévi, -lum, to destroy.

délíbero, are, avi, atum, weigh (mentally), deliberate, ponder, consult. [libra, a balance].

délíbro, are, avi, atum, strip off the bark, peel. [liber, bark.]

defíctum, i, n., offense, fault, crime. [fr. pf. part. of delinquó.]

defígo, -fere, -fim, atum, to bind up, bind fast. [ligo, “to bind.”]

defígo, -fere, légii, lectum, to choose [lego, “choose.”]

defítesco, -fere, litui, no supine, hide, conceal one’s self, lie in wait. [lateo, lie hid].

deféntia, ae, f., madness, folly. [demens, de, mens]

demessus. See déméto.

deféto, -fere, messui, messum, cut down, reap, mow.

defígro, -fere, ávi, átum, to retire from, remove, emigrate.

defínuo minuére, minúi, minútum, lessen, take away from, impair. [minus.]

defímitto, -fere, misi, missum, to send or let down; se, to descend.

defem, -fere, dempsi, demptum, to take off, remove.

defímonstro, -fere, ávi, átum, to show, point out.

defimoror, -ari, atus sum, delay, linger; hinder.

defémum, adv., at last.

deféngo, -fere, ávi, atum, deny, refuse.

defini, ae, a, dis. adj., ten apiece, ten.
**VOCABULARY.**

dénique, adv., *at last, finally; in short, in a word.*
dé-nuntio, âre, avi, âtum, to declare.
dé-pello, âre, pâli, pulsum, to drive away, remove.
dé-perdo, âre, didi, ditum, to lose, lose utterly.
dé-péreo, âre, perû, to perish utterly.
dé-póno, âre, pôstû, pôsitum, to lay down.
dépópolor, âri, âtus sum, to ravage, lay waste.
déporto, are, avi, atum, carry off, remove.
déposco, âre, poposci, no supine, demand, require.
dépositus. See dépóno.
déprecâtor, òris, m., an intercessor.
déprécor, âri, âtus sum, to avert by entreaty, beg off.
dé-préhendo, âre, di, sum, to catch, seize upon.
déprimo, âre, pressi, pressum, press down, sink. [premo].
dépugno, are, avi, atum, fight (to an issue).
dépulsus. See depello.
dérivo, are, avi, atum, draw off (of a stream); turn aside. [rivus.]
dé-rôgo, âre, avi, âtum, to take away withdraw.
déscesso, âre, secendi, scensum, to descend.
déséco, are, secui, sectum, cut off. [seco, cut.]
dés-še ro, âre, rûi, rtum, to abandon, forsake.
désertor, òris, m., a runaway, deserter. [desero]
désertus, a, um, part. sero, deserted; adj., (of places) solitary, waste.
désidéro, âre, âvi, âtum, to wish.
désídía, ae, f., idleness, sloth.
désigno, are, avi, atum, mark out, point out, describe, appoint; mean, signify.
désilio, âre, silûi, sultum, to leap down.
desisto, âre, stiti, stitum, to cease from.
déspectus, a, um. See despicio.
déspectus, ûs, m., a looking down, a view from a height; pl. heights.
déspérâtio, ônis, f., despair.
dé-spéro, are, avi, atum, to despair.
despicio, âre, spexi, spectum, to despise, look down upon.
déspolio, iare, iavi, iatum, despoil, rob, plunder.
déstino, are, avi, atum, make fast, bind; determine, appoint.
destituo, uère, ui, ûtum, put aside, desert, abandon. [statuo].
destinctus. See destringo.
destringo, âre, strixi, strictum, strip off, unsheath, draw (a sword).
dé-sum, esse, fûi, to be wanting, fail.
désuper, adv., from above.
détérior, ius, compar. adj., inferior, worse; superl. deterrimus.
dé-terrêo, âre, terrûi, territum, to frighten thoroughly, deter.
deterritus. See deterreo.
detestor, âri, âtus sum, to curse, call down curses upon.
déttineo, âre, ui, tentum, keep back, delay, detain, stop.
detractus. See detraho.
détraho, âre, xi, etum, to withdraw from.
détrrecto, are, avi, atum, avoid, decline, escape. [tracto, handle].
détrementósus, a, um, injurious, hurtful.
détrimentum, i, n., damage, loss. ["a rubbing off," de, tero.]
detrudo, ēre, trūsī, trūsum, thrust off, remove.
deturbo, are, avi, atum, cast down, dislodge, drive away.
deūro, ēre, āssī, ūstum, burn up, consume.
dēus, i, m., a deity, a god.
dē-vēho, ēre, xi, crum, to carry down, convey.

dēvênio, ēre, vēni, ventum, come from; depart to, arrive at.
dēvexus, a, um, adj., sloping, steep.
dēvinco, ēre, avi, atum, conquer completely.

dēvōco, āre, āvi, ātum, to call down.
dēvōtus, pt. part. of devoveo; as adj., attached to, faithful to; as subst., devoted follower.

dē-vōvēo, ēre, vōvi, vōtum, to vow, devote.
dexter, dextra, dextrum, adj., on the right-hand side, right.
dextra, ae, f. (scil., manus) the right hand.

dicio, ōnis, f., sway, dominion, authority, lordship.
dico, ēre, xi, ctum, to say: dicere diem, to fix, name a day.
dico, are, avi, atum, devote, give up.
dictio, ōnis, f., speaking, pleading. [dico.]
dictum, i, n., word, command.
didūco ēre, duxi, ductum, lead in different directions, divide, separate, distribute, scatter.

dies, ēi, m. (sometimes f. in sing.), a day.
dif-fōro, ferre, distūli dilātum, to differ.
difficīlis, e, adj., difficult.
difficultās, ātis, f., difficulty.
difficultuer, adv., with difficulty, compar., difficiōlis.

diffido, ēre, fisus sum, to distrust, despair of.
diffisus, a, um, pt. part. of diffido; as adj., distrusting, doubtful.
diffundo, ēre, fūdl, fūsum, to spread out.
dīgitus, i, m., finger; as a measure, the 16th part of a Roman foot, an inch, finger's breadth. —dīgitus pollex, the thumb.
dignitās, ātis, f., dignity.
dignus, a, um, adj., worthy, fitting.
diūdīco, are, avi, atum, to decide, determine.
dilectus, a, um, part, diligō.
diligenter, -iус, -issime, adv., attentively, carefully.
diligentia, ae, f., carefulness.
diligo, ēre, lexi, lectum, to esteem highly, to love.
dimensus. See dimetior.
dimētior, iri, mensus sum, measure off.
dimicātio, ōnis, f., fierce combat, hot engagement.
dimīco, āre, āvi, ātum, to fight.
dimidius, a, um, adj., half; dimidium, n., the half. [medius.]
di-mitto, ēre, misi, missum, to send out in various directions; to forego, let slip, relinquish, abandon.
directe, adv., straight, directly.
directus, a, um, part. dirigo; also adj., straight.
dirigo, ēre, rexi, rectum, to form into a straight line; draw up troops in battle array.
dirimo, ēre, ēmi, emptum, take apart, break up; break off, put an end to. [dis, emo.]
diripio, ēre, ripui, reptum, tear asunder, plunder, ravage, pillage. [dis, rapio.]
dis- or di- adverbial prefix, apart, asunder.
VOCABULARY.

dis-ce-do, ēre, cessi, cessum, to go away, depart.

disceptátor, óris, m., arbitrator, umpire, judge.

discerno, ēre, crévi, crétum, distinguish between.

discessus, ús, m., departure.

disciplina, ae, f., training, discipline.

disclúdo, ēre, clúsi, clúsum, keep apart, hold apart, separate, divide.

disco, discère, didi, ctum, to learn by study.

discrimen, inis, n., risk, danger; difference.

discútio, ere, cussi, cussum, shatter, disperse, clear away.

disconteo, ēre, su5si, suasimi, dissuade, advise against, oppose.

distúne, ēre, ui, tentum, keep apart; hold off; separate.

disto, stare, no pf. or supine, stand apart, be separated.

distráho, ēre, traxi, tractum, drag asunder, pull apart, divide.

dis-tríbúo, ēre, úi, útum, to divide, distribute.

ditosissimus, see dives.

dítu, -tius, -tissime, adv., for a long time, long.

diurnus, a, um, adj., of the day, by day. [dies.]

diútinus, a, um, adj., enduring for a long time, lasting, long.

diutissime, see diu.

diuturnitás, atis, f., length of time, long duration.

diuturnus, a, um, adj., long in time. [diu.]

diversus, a, um, part. diverto; adj., in different directions, apart, remote.

divés, vítis, comp. divitior or ditior, superl. divitissimus or ditissimus, rich, wealthy.

divide, ēre, visi, visum, to divide, separate.

divinus, a, um, divine.

do, däre, dēdi, dātum, to give.

dōceo, ēre, úi, ctum, to teach, instruct, tell.

dóceo, ēre, suái, suásum, dissuade, advise against, oppose.

dólor, óris, m., pain (of body or mind), grief, chagrin.

dolus, i, m., craft, fraud, deceit, stratagem.

dóminicus, a, um, adj., domestic; bellum domesticum, intestine, civil war.

dómicilium, i, n., dwelling.
VOCABULARY.

dominor, āri, atus sum, be master, have dominion.
dominus, i, m., master, lord, owner.
dōmus, ās, f., house, home; domi, loc. case, at home.
dōno, are, avi, atum, give, present.
dōnum, i, n., a gift.
dōs, őtis, f., dowry, marriage portion.
dūbitatio, ōnis, f., doubt, hesitation.
dūbito, are, avi, atum, to doubt, hesitate.
dūbius, a, um, adj., doubtful.
dūbium, i, n., subst., uncertainty, risk.
dūcenti, ae, a, adj., plur., two hundred.
dūco, ēre, xi, ctum, to lead; to hold, consider.
ductus, ūs, m., leadership, the lead, command.
dūm, conj., while, until.
dūo, ae, o, card. num. adj., two.
duōdecim, card. num. adj., twelve.
duōdecimus, a, um, ord. num., twelfth.
duōdēni, ae, a, dis. adj., twelve a-piece, twelve.
duplico, āre, āvi, ātum, to double.
dūritā, ae, t., hardness, hardness of life.
dūro, āre, āvi, ātum, to harden, make hardy.
dūrus, a, um, adj., hard.
dux, dūcis, m. and f., a leader.

e. 
ē or ex, (e before consonants, ex before vowels) prep. with abl., out of, from the inside of; in accordance with; in consequence of; following after, on; ex una parte, on one side; ex usu, of advantage.

ēā, (sc. parte or viā), adv., on that side, by that way, there. [is.]
edico, ēre, dixi, dictum, make known, command.
edisco, ēre, didici, to learn off by heart.
editus, a, um, elevated, high, [ēdo].
edō, dēre, didi, ditum, put forth, exhibit; elevate.
edōceo, ēre, dōcui, doctum, teach, instruct, inform, tell.
edūco, ēre, xi, ctum, to lead forth, draw out.
effarcio, īre, farsi, fartum, stop up, stuff, fill.
effēmino, are, avi, atum, make womanish, weaken, enervate.
effēro, ferre, exūli, elatum, to bring out; to set forth, publish; in pass., to be puffed up, elated, inspired.
efficicio, ēre, fēci, lectum, to bring to pass, accomplish, effect, produce.
effōdio, ēre, fōdi, fossum, dig out, tear out.
effossus. See effodio.
effūgio, ēre, fūgi, to escape.
egens, ntis, pres. part. of egeo, wanting, needy.
egēo, ēre, ūi, to lack, need, be in want of.
egestās, ātis, f., neediness, extreme poverty.
egō, mei, personal pron., I; pl. nōs, nostrum.
egōmet, pl. nosmet, emphatic form of ego.
egredior, i, gressus, to come or go out.
egregiē, adv., remarkably, splendidly.
egregius, a, um, adj., distinguished, remarkable. [e, grege, i.e. out of the (common) herd.]
egressus, a, um, part. egredior.
egressus, ās, m., going out, the way out, departure.
eicio, ēre, ieci, lectum, to turn out, cast out, cast up.
VOCABULARY.

éius-modi, of that kind, of such a kind. [is, modus]
élabor, i, elapsus, to slip away, escape.
elapsus, a, um, part. elabor.
elátus. See effero.
élatus. See elego.
eléphantus, i, and éléphas, antis, m., an elephant.
elicícius, e, licúi and lexúi, licítum, to entice or draw out.
elígo, e, légi, lectúm, choose out, select, pick.
émigro, are, avi, atum, move out, emigrate.
émíneo, e, minui, no supine, project, stand forth.
émínus, at a distance, from afar, [e, manus.]
émittto, e, mísí, missúm, send forth, let go, hurl, let slip.
émo, ère, èmi, emptum, buy, purchase.
enascor, nasci, nátus sum, grow out, shoot out (of branches.)
ënimo, conj. for.
enitor, i, nixus or nísus sum, struggle, strive.
énuntio, are, avi, atum, to disclose, tell.
èo, adv., 1. an old dat. or acc., thither, to that place; 2. abl. of is used as adv. in phrase: eo quod, for the reason that; 3. abl. used as adv. of degree, the, by that much.
eo, e, ivi or ii, itum, to go.
eódem, adv., to the same place.
ephippium, i, saddle-cloth.
ephippiatus, a, um, adj., furnished with saddle-cloths, saddle-using.
epistóla, ae, f., a letter.
épúlāe, arum, f. (irreg. plur. of epulum), banquets, feasts.
équés, itis, m., a horseman, rider; a (Roman) knight; in plur., equites, cav-
alry; used also of the “Knights” of Gaul. [equus.]
équester, tris, tre, adj., belonging to cavalry, cavalry.
équítátes, ús, m., cavalry.
équus, i, m., a horse.
érectus, a, um, (pf. part. of érgo) adj., high.
éreptus, v. éripio.
ergá, prep. with acc., towards.
érgo, adv., therefore, then.
é-rigo, e, réxi, rectum, to raise or set up.
eřipio, ère, ripúi, reptum, to snatch away; with se, to escape, flee.
erro, ère, ávi, átum, to stray, wander; to wander from the truth, be mistaken.
erumpo, ère, rúpi, ruptum, burst forth, sally, make a sortie.
eruptio, ónis, f., a breaking out; (of troops) a sally.
esédá, ae, f., war-chariot.
esédárius, i, m., charioteer, chariot warrior.
èt, conj., and, also; et...et, both...and.
etiam, conj., also, even, furthermore.
etiamási, conj., even if, although.
etsi, conj., although.
évado, ère, vási, vásum, escape.
évello, ère, velli, vulsum, pull out.
événio, ire, věni, ventum, turn out, happen.
eventus, ús, m., issue, consequence, result. [e-venio.]
evocatus, a um, pf. part. of évoco; as subst. a veteran serving voluntarily after his time was out.
év̄o, ère, ávi, átum, to call out, summon.
évolo, ère, ávi, átum, fly or rush forth.
ex, prep., w. abl., see e.
exactus, see exigo.
exagito, are, avi, atum, drive out, annoy, harass.
exámíno, are, avi, atum, to weigh in the balance, examine, test. [examen, the tongue of the balance.]
exánimátus, a, um, part. examimo.
ex-ánímo, are, avi, atum, to kill. [examino, are, a, avum, to kill, order, apply, attack.]
ex-ardesco, are, arsi, argum, to burst into a blaze, take fire.
ex-audio, are, avi, atum, to hear distinctly.
ex-cédó, are, cessi, cessum, to go forth or out; to go out from; leave.
ex-cello, are, celluí, celsum, to be eminent, excel.
ex-celsus, a, um, pf. part. of excello; adj., tall, lofty.
excepto, are, avi, atum, catch up, pick up with the hands [excipio.]
exceptus, a, um, pf. part. of excipio.
ex-cipio, are, cépi, cep tum, to catch, take, capture; take in turn, relieve (of sentinels, etc.).
excíto, are, avi, atum, to raise, erect, build; to arouse, incite.
exclúdo, are, clúsi, clúsum, to shut out, cut off.
ex-cógito, are, avi, atum, to think out, contrive.
ex-crúcio, are, avi, atum, to torture.
excúbitótor, òris, m., sentinel [''one who lies out,'" ex, cubo.]
excúbó, are, cubuí, cubitum, lie out, keep watch.
exculco, are, avi, atum, tread down, [ex, calx, the heel.]
excursio, ònis, f., a running out, a sally, sortie.
excúsatío, ònis, f., excuse-making, apology, defence.
excúsó, are, avi, atum, excuse, defend.
exemplum, i, n., example; warning, punishment.
ex éo, ire, hi, itum, to go forth or out.
ex-erçéo, ére, hi, itum, to employ, keep busy; drill, exercise (troops).
exercitatio, ònis, f., exercise, training, practice. [exerceso.]
exercitatus, a, um, skilled, trained.
exercitus, ûs, m., an army. [exerceso.]
ex-haurio, ire, hausi, haustum, to draw out, take out.
exigo, are, égi, actum, to bring to an end, complete.
exigué, adv., barely, hardly
exiguitas, atis, smallness, shortness, small number, scantiness.
exígûus, a, um, adj., small.
eximius, a, um, eminent, distinguished, excellent.
exístimátio, ònis, f., judgment, opinion.
existimo, are, avi, atum, to consider, judge, think.
existo, (ex-sisto), are, stiti, stitum, to come forth, arise.
exitus, ûs, m., an issue, end, result. [exeo.]
expecto, v. exspecto.
expedio, ire, ivi, or ii, itum, set free, disengage, get ready.
expeditio, ònis, f., a foray, incursion, expedition.
expeditus, part., from expedio, unimpeded, ready, easy, lightly equipped.
ex-pello, are, pûli, pulsum, to drive out, banish, expel.
ex-périor, iri, pertus, to try.
ex-pío, are, avi, atum, to atone for, make good.
expleo, are, plëvi, plëtum, fill up, complete.
explórátor, òris, m., a scout, spy.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vocabulary</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>exploratus</td>
<td>pt. part. of exploror, ascertained for certain; pro explorato, as a fact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explóro</td>
<td>are, avi, átum, to search out, reconnoitre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex-pôno</td>
<td>ére, pósui, pósitum, to land (troops), to set on shore (nautical).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exporto</td>
<td>are, avi, átum, carry out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exposco</td>
<td>ére, poposci, no supine, demand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expósitus</td>
<td>See expono.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exprimo</td>
<td>ére, pressi, pressum, press out; extort; raise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expugnátiō</td>
<td>ónis, f., attack, assault.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expugno</td>
<td>are, avi, átum, take by storm, capture, attack.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expulsus</td>
<td>a, um, part. expello.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exquirō</td>
<td>ére, quisivit, quisitum, seek out, enquire, ask for.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exquisitus</td>
<td>See exquiro.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extorquendo</td>
<td>ére, torsi, tortum, twist out, extort, force from.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extrá</td>
<td>prep. w. acc., beyond, outside of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extráho</td>
<td>ére, tráxi, tractum, to drag out, waste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extrémus</td>
<td>a, um, adj., super. of exterior, furthest, extreme; as subst., extremum, i, n., the end.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extrúdo</td>
<td>ére, trási, trásum, push out, force out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exúl</td>
<td>is, m., an exile, outlaw.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exúo</td>
<td>ére, ui, útum, to despoil, strip.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exúro</td>
<td>ére, ûssí, ústum, burn up.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**F.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vocabulary</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fáber</td>
<td>i, m., a smith, workman, mechanic [root fa, in facio].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facílē</td>
<td>adv., easily.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facílis</td>
<td>e, adj., easy. [facio].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facínus</td>
<td>óris, n., a crime. [facio].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fació</td>
<td>ére, fécí, factum, to do, make: aliquem certiorem, to inform, let one know.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factio</td>
<td>ónis, f., a faction, party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factu</td>
<td>abl., supine of facio.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factum</td>
<td>i, n., a deed, action, achievement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factus</td>
<td>a, um, part. flo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fácultās</td>
<td>átis, f., means, opportunity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāgus</td>
<td>i, f., a beech-tree.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fallo</td>
<td>ére, fefelli, falsum, deceive, disappont.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>falsus</td>
<td>a, um, part. fallo; adj., false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>falx</td>
<td>cis, f., a grappling hook, used in attacking fortifications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāna</td>
<td>ae, f., report, rumor, tradition; tidings. [for, fari.].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
fāmēs, is, f., hunger, famine.

fāmilia, ae, f., household; servants; family: paterfamiliae, master of a house.

fāmiliāris, e, adj.; usu. as subst., family:

familiaritas, iatis, f., intimacy, close friendship.

fās, n., indecl., what is right, lawful, permitted by Heaven.

fastigātē, adv., sloping.

fastigatus, a, um, adj., sloping.

fastigium, i, n., top of a roof or hill; sloping side, descent, declivity.

fātum, i, n., fate.

fāveo, ere, favi, fātum, to favor.

fax, facis, f., torch, firebrand.

felicitas, atis, f., success.

felicitātis, ātis, f., successfully.

femina, ae, f., a woman.

fēmur, āris or īnis, n., a thigh.

fērā, ae, f., a wild animal.

fērāx, acis, adj., fertile. [fero.]

fērē, adv., almost, nearly.

fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum, to bear, bring; to bear, endure; to assert, say.

ferramentum, i, n., an iron tool.

ferraria, ae, f., iron-mine.

ferrarius, a, um, adj., made of iron.

ferrēus, a, um, adj., made of iron. [ferrum.]

ferrum, i, n., iron.

fertilis, e, adj., fertile, fruitful.

fertilitātis, ātis, f., fertility.

fērus, a, um, adj., wild; fēra, ae, f., subst., wild beast.

fervefactus, a, um, part., heated, made red-hot. [ferveo, facio].

ferveō, ēre, ēri, to be a-glow: ferventes glandes, red-hot bullets.

fibula, ae, f., brace. [figo, fasten.]

fīdelis, ē, adj., faithful, trustworthy, true.

fīdes, ē, f., faith, confidence; assurance, word of honor.

fiducia, ae, f., trust, confidence.

figūra, ae, f., form, shape.

fīlia, ae, f., dat. and abl. pl. fīliābus, daughter.

fīlius, ii, m., a son.

fingo, ēre, finxi, fictum, to form, devise, frame.

finio, ire, īvi or īi, ītum, to end; to determine or fix the limits of; to describe the extent of. [finis.]

finis, is, m., a boundary, border; limit; fines, plur., territory.

finitīmus, a, um, adj., bordering, adjoining, neighboring; plur. subst., limits.

flimite, adv., steadily, firmly, strongly.

flimitūdo, īnis, f., firmness, strength.

fīrmo, āre, āvi, ītum, to make strong, secure.

fīrmus, a, um, adj., strong, powerful.

fīstūca, ae, f., rammer, pile-driver.

flāgīto, are, āvi, ītum, ask earnestly, importune, demand.

flamma, ae, f., blaze, flame.

flecto, ēre, xi, xum, to bend, curve.

fleō, fēre, flēvi, flētum, weep.

flētus, ūs, m., weeping.

flō, flāre, flāvi, flātum, to blow.

flōrens, ņtis, pres. part. of flreo, blooming, flourishing, prosperous, influential.

flōs, flōris, m., flower.

fluctus, ūs, m., wave.

flūmen, inis, n., a river.
VOCABULARY.

fluō, ēre, fluxi, fluxum, flow.
fōdio, ēre, fōdi, fossum, dig.
foedus, ēris, n., a compact, treaty.
fōrō = futurum esse, fut. infin. of sum.
fōrem = essem. See sum.
fōris, adv., out of doors, outside, abroad. [old abl.]
forma, ae, t., shape.
fors, fortis, t., chance, luck.
fōrtē, adv., per chance, peradventure.
fōrtis, e, adj., brave.
fōrtīter, -tius, -tissimē, adv., bravely.
fōtītūdo, inis, t., bravery, courage.
fōrtītūo, adv., by chance.
fōtūna, ae, t., fortune: in plur., possessions, property.
fōtūnātus, a, um, adj., successful, wealthy.
fōrūm, i, n., forum, market-place.
fossa, ae, t., a ditch, trench. [fōdio.]
fōvéa, ae, t., a pit, pitfall (for catching wild animals).
franγo, ēre, frēgi, fractum, break, wreck, dash in pieces (of ships); break down, wear out (of men).
frāter, tris, m., a brother.
frāternus, a, um, of a brother, brotherly.
frāus, fraudis, t., deceit, deception.
frēmitus, ūs, m., din, noise.
frēquens, entis, adj., crowded, thronging, in large numbers.
frētus, a, um, adj., relying upon (govern mens abl.).
frigidus, a, um, adj., cold.
frigus, ōris, n., cold.
frons, tis, t., the forehead.
fructuōsus, a, um, fruitful, fertile.
fructus, ūs, m., produce, fruit: of money, interest.
frūmentārius, a, um, adj., pertaining to corn; res frumentaria, corn supply.
frūmentātio, ōnis, t., foraging; obtaining corn.
frūmentor, āri, atus sum, to forage.
frūmentum, i, n., corn, grain.
fruor, frui, fruitus, or fructus sum, enjoy, gov's abl.
frustrā, adv., in vain, without effect.
fūga, ae, t., flight, rout, running away.
fūgō, ēre, fūgi, fūgitum, to flee.
fūgītivus, a, um, adj., fleeing; as subst., a runaway, deserter.
fūgo, are, avi, atum, put to flight, rout.
fūmo, are, avi, atum, smoke.
fūmus, i, m., smoke.
funda, ae, t., a sling.
fungor, fungē, functus sum, perform a duty, discharge; gov's abl.
fūnis, is, m., a rope.
fūnebris, e, adj., pertaining to a funeral; funeral (adj.).
fūnus, ēris, n., burial, funeral rites.
fūrō, ēris, m., fury, rage, madness.
furtum, i, n., theft. [fur.]
fūsīlis, e, adj. [fundo.] strictly molten, fluid, liquid; at Bk. v, 43, fūsīlis argilla, softened clay.
fūtūrus, a, um, future part. of sum.

G. 
galea, ae, t., a helmet (of leather.)
Gallicus, a, um, adj., Gaulish, Gallic.
gallina, ae, t., a hen. [gallus.]
gaudeo, ēre, gāvisus sum, semidepon. rejoice.
gāvisus. See gaudeo.
gēner, ēri, m., a son-in-law.
gēnerātim, adv., by tribes.
gens, tis, t., a clan, nation.
VOCABULARY.

gēnus, ēris, n., a class, sort.
géro, ēre, gessi, gestum, to carry on: ger. bellum, to wage war: res gestae, what has happened, events, achievements.

glādīus, ii, m., a sword.

glans, dis, f., an acorn; an acorn-shaped missile.

glēba, ae, f., a clod (of earth.)
glōria, ae, f., glory, renown, praise.
grātia, ae, f., favor; thanks, return; requital.

gratulatio,onis, f., rejoicing, congratulation.
gratus, a, um., adj., acceptable, agreeable, pleasing.

gravis, e, adj., heavy, severe.

gravitas, atis, f., weight, authority, gravity, importance. [gravis.]
graviter, -ius, issime, adv., heavily; deeply, severely: graviter ferre, to be indignant at, take amiss.
gravo, are, avi, atum, load heavily, weigh down; passive, feel displeasure, hesitate, be unwilling.

gubernātor, ōris, m., a helmsman. [guberno.]
gusto, āre, āvi, ātum, to taste, eat.

H.

hābēo. ēre, ūi, ītum, to have; to deem, hold, consider; orationem or contionem habère, to deliver a speech or harangue.

haesito, are, avi, atum, stick, stick fast, remain fixed [haereo.]

hāmus, i, m., hook.
harpago, ōnis, m., grappling-hook.

haust, adv., not.

hērēditas, ātis, f., heirship, inheritance. [heres.]
hibēna, orum, n., winter-quarters.
hibērnāculum, i, n., winter abode.

hic, haec, hōc, demonstr., pron., this.

hīemo, āre, āvi, ātum, to pass the winter; to winter. [hiems.]

hiems, is, f., winter.
hinc, adv., hence.
hōdiē, adv., to-day [hoc-die.]
hōmo, ōnis, comm., a human being, a man.

hōnestus, a, um, adj., distinguished, honorable, noble. [honor.]
hōnor, ōris, m., honor, esteem.
honōrificus, a, um, honor-producing, honorable, full of honor [facis.]

hōra, ae, f., an hour.

horreo, ēre, horruī, no supine, shudder, shudder at, dread.

horridus, a, um, adj., rough, uncouth, savage.

hortor, āri, ātus, to exhort, urge.
hospes, itis, m., a guest.
hospītium, ii, n., hospitality; at V. 27, it means, hospitable relations.

hostis, is, comm., an enemy.

hūc, adv., to this place, hither; accedit huc, to this is added.

hulūsmōdi, of this sort.

hūmānus, a, um, adj., refined, civilized. [homo.]

hūmerus, i, m., shoulder.

hūmilis, e, adj., lowly; insignificant. [humus.]

hūmilitās, ātis, f., lowliness, weakness.

I.

N.B.—No distinction is made between I and J.

iaceo, ēre, iacui, no supine, lie down, lie; iacens, as subst., one fallen.

iācio, ēre, iēci, iactum, to cast, hurl, fling, throw.

iacto, are, avi, atum, fling, toss about; discuss.
iactūra, ae, f. (a throwing), expense, cost.

iācūlum, i, n., a dart, javelin.

iam, adv., now, already.

ibi, adv., in that place, there. [is.]

ictus, ās, m., a blow, stab, stroke [ico.]

idcirco, adv., for that reason.

identidem, adv., from time to time, repeatedly, again and again, [idem, doubled.]

idem, ēdēm, ēdem, pron., the same.

idōnēus, a, um, adj., convenient, suitable, adapted.

Idās, uum, f. pl., the Ides, the 13th day of the month, except in March, May, July, October, when it was the 15th.

ignis, is, m., fire.

ignōbilis, e, adj., unknown to fame, obscure.

ignōmīnia, ae, f., disgrace, dishonor.

ignōro, āre, āvi, ātum, to be ignorant of. [in gnarus.]

ignōsco, ēre, gnōvi, gnōtum, (not to know), to pardon, overlook, forgive

ignotus, a, um, pf. part. of ignosco; as adj., unknown.

illatus, v. inlatus.

ille, a, ud, pron. dem., that; he, she, it.

illic, adv., there, in that place.

illigatus, v. inligatus.

illigo, v. inligo.

illo, adv., thither, to that place; to that end.

illustris, v. inlustris.

imbēcillitās, ātis, weakness, feebleness.

imber, imbris, m., rain, rainstorm.

imītōr, ari, ātus sum, to imitate.

immānis, e, adj., enormous, huge.

immīnēo, ēre, no perf. or sup., to impend, be close at hand.

immitto, ēre, misi, missum, to send against, cast, hurl, let loose. [immitto.]

immōlo, āre, āvi, ātum, to offer up, sacrifice. [in, mola.]

immortālis, e, adj., undying, immortal. [in, mortalis, mors.]

immūnis, ē, adj., free from taxes; free from public duty; exempt.

immūnitās, ātis, f., exemption or freedom from public charges and services.

imparātus, a, um, adj., unprepared.

impēdimentum, i, n., a hindrance; plur., impedimenta, orum, the baggage (train) of an army. [impedio.]

impēdio, ēre, ivi or ii, ītum, to entangle, hamper, hinder. [in, pes.]

impēditus, a, um, part. impedio.

impello, ēre, pāli, pulsum, to drive on, urge; impel; instigate.

impendeo, ēre, no pf. or supine, hang over, overhang.

impensus, a, um, dear (in price). [impendo.]

impērātor, ōris, m., a commander (in chief).

impērātum, i, n., that which is commanded; a command, order. [impero.]

imperfectus, a, um, adj., unfinished, incomplete.

impēritis, a, um, adj., inexperienced, ignorant.

impērium, ū, n., a command, order; authority, control, power.

impēro, ēre, āvi, ātum, to command, order.

impetro, ēre, āvi, ātum, to obtain a wish.

impētus, ūs, m., assault, attack, onset.

impius, a, um, adj., without reverence for the gods, one's country, or parents; impious, wicked. [in-pius.]

implīco, are, avi, or ui, ātum or ītum, enfold, entangle, involve. [plīco, fold.]
implóro, are, avi, atum, to entreat, appeal to.

impóno, ére, pósui, pósitum, place on; impose; mount.

importo, Ære, Ávi, Atum, to convey, import.

importatus, V. importo.

imprimis, adv., especially, particularly. [in, primus.]

imprébus, a, um, bad, shameless.

impróvisum, i, n., that which is unforeseen: usn. in abl. w. de, adverbially, de improviso suddenly, unexpectedly. [in, pro, video.]

imprévisus, a, um, adj., unforeseen.

imprudens, entis, adj., unwitting, taken unawares.

imprudentia, ae, f., ignorance, lack of foresight.

impúbes, éris, adj., unmarried, under age.

impugno, are, avi, atum, fight against, attack, assail, charge.

impulsus, a, um, part., impello.

impúne, adv., without punishment.

impúni, atis, freedom from punishment, impunity.

imus, superl. of inferus.

impulsus, ús, m., prompting, instigation. [impello.]

in, prep. w. acc., into, against, to, towards; w. abl., in, on, upon, among, within.

inánis, e, adj., empty, void.

incaute, adv., carelessly.

incautus, a, um, adj., heedless, off one's guard. [caveo.]

incédo, ère, cessi, cessum, advance, proceed; come upon, seize upon (as of grief, etc.)

incendium, Íi, n., a fire, camp-fire.

incendo, ère, cendi, censum, set on fire, burn; rouse, fire, excite. [candeo, shine.]

inceptus. See incipio.

incertus, a, um, adj., doubtful; iter incertum, taken at hazard or at a venture.

incido, ère, cidi, câsum, to happen, occur. [in, cadó.]

incido, ère, cidi, cîsum, cut into, lop off. [caedo, cut.]

incipio, ère, cèpi, ceptum, to begin.

incisus. See incido.

incito, are, avi, atum, rouse, urge, incite.

incognitus, a, um, unknown. [cognosco.]

incrèpito, are, avi, atum, reproach, blame, chide, taunt.

incumbo, ère, cúbui, cúbitum, (to lie or lean upon), devote one's self to, attend to.

incursus, ús, an assault, attack.

incôlo, ère, côנתי, cultum, to inhabit, dwell.

incôlûmis, e, adj., safe, unharmed.

incommôdé, adv., disastrously, unfortunately.

incommôdum, i, n., disadvantage, disaster, misfortune.

incrédibilis, e, adj., not to be believed, marvellous. [in, credo.]

incursio, Ònis, f., invasion, attack. [incurro.]

inde, adv., from that place, thence.

indicium, i, n., secret information.

in-dico, ère, xi, ctum, to appoint, proclaim.

indictus, perf. part. of indico.

indictus, a, um, adj., unsaid—causâ indictâ, without a hearing. [in, not, dico.]

indignè, adv., unworthily, shamefully.

indignitâs, atis, f., unworthiness, unbecoming conduct; disgrace, indignity, insult.
**VOCABULARY.**

indignor, ari, atus sum, *think unworthy, be indignant at.*

indignus, a, um, adj., *unworthy.*

indiligens, ntis, adj., *careless, heedless.*

indiligenter, adv., *carelessly.*

indiligentia, ae, f., *carelessness.*

induco, ere, duxi, ductum, *lead on or into, induce, influence; cover.*

indulgeo, ere, dulsi, dultum, *favor, indulge.*

induo, flgare, Qi, fitum, *put on—*

induere, to get tangled.

industrie, adv., *iiulustriously, dili- genthj.*

indutiae, animj pl., f., *a truce, armis-.*

in-eo, ire, Ivi, or iü, itum, *to go into, enter upon.*

inermis, e, adj., *unarmed. [in, arma.]*

iners, eértis, adj., *indolent, idle, un-

manly. [in, not; ars.]*

infamia, ae, f., *disgrace, dishonor.*

infans, ntis, c., *one who does not speak; an infant, child.* [in, not; fari, speak.]

infectus, a, um, adj., *unaccomplished. [facio.]*

inferior, us, comp. adj., *lower. [in-

ferrus, infra.]*

infero, -ferre, intuli, inlátum or illát-

tum, *to bring on or against: bellum, to

make, to wage, carry on against: vulnus, to

infect: in ignem, to throw (anything) into.

inferus, a, um, adj., *below, under-

neath; compar. inferior, lower; superl.

infimus, or imus, lowest; lowest part of.

infestus, a, um, adj., *hostile.*

inficio, ere, féeci,lectum, *to dye, stain.

infidélis, e, adj., *unfaithful.*

infigo, ere, fixi, fixum, *fasten in.

infimus. See *inferus.*

infinitus, a, um, adj., *endless, un-

limited. [in, finís.]*

infirmitás, atis, f., *weakness, fickle-

ness.*

in-firmus, a, um, adj., *weak.*

infecto, ére, flexi, flexum, *to bend.*

influo, ére, fluxi, fluxum, *to flow into.*

infódio, ére, födi, fossum, *bury, dig in.*

infra, prep. w. acc., below, under.

ingens, entis, adj., *large, vast, un-

mense.*

ingrátus, a, um, adj., *displeasing. [in, gratus.]*

ingrédior, grédi, gressus, *to advance, enter on.*

inicio, ére, ieci, iectum, *throw in, in-

fuse; lay on. [in, iacio.]*

iniecctus. See *inicio.*

inimicitia, ae, f., *enmity, hostility.*

inimicus, a, um, adj., *unfriendly; subst., inimicus, i, m., an enemy, foe. [in, amicus.]*

iniquitas, atis, unevenness; inequality; unfairness: bad character; unfavorable position.

iniquus, a, um, adj., *not level: locus, disadvantageous, unfavorable. [in, aequus.]*

inisitium, ii, n., *a beginning. [in, eo.]*

inítus, a, um, part. ineo.

iniungo, ére, iunxi, iunctum, *fix, fasten upon.*

iniuria, ae, f., *injury, wrong, oppres-

sion. [in, ius.]*

in-iussu, m., (only in abl.), without the command.

inlátus, (ill-), a, um, part. infero.

inligátus, (ill-), a, um, part. inligo.

in-ligo, (ill-), åre, aví, atum, *to bind

on, tie on.*

inlustris, (ill-), e, adj., *distinguished, high (of social rank). [in, lustro.]*
Vocabulary.

innascor, nasci, natus sum, be born in; spring up.
inmator, niti, nisus or nixus sum, lean on. [nitor.]
imnixus. See innitor.
in-nōcens, ntis, adj., harmless, guiltless, innocent.
innoctentia, ae, f., innocence, blamelessness, integrity.
inōpia, ae, f., want, lack, poverty.
inōpinans, ntis, adj., not expecting, unwares, off one's guard.
inpētro, v. impetro.
inquīt, v. defect., says he.
in-rumpo, (irr.), ere, rūpi, ruptum, to break, burst, or rush in, or into.
insciēns, entis, adj., not knowing, ignorant.
inscientia, ae, f., lack of knowledge, ignorance.
inscius, a, um, adj., not knowing, ignorant.
insēquor, i, quītus or cātus, to follow up, pursue.
insero, ēre, serui, sertum, fasten into.
[sero, join.]
insidiae, ārum, f., plur., an ambuscade, ambush. [insideo.]
insidiōr, āri, ātus sum, to lay an ambush.
insignē, is, n., sign, badge, distinction.
insignis, e, adj., noted, remarkable.
insilīo, ēre, silui, sultum, leap upon. [salio.]
insimūlo, are, avi, atum, charge, accuse.
insinuo, are, avi, atum, worm one's way into, thrust one's self into, penetrate.
insisto, ēre, stiti no sup., with in. and acc., to devote oneself to; press forward.
insölenter, adv., haughtily, insolently.
inspecto, are, avi, atum, look on.
instābilis, e, adj., unsteady. [in, not; sto.]
instans, pres. part. of insto, pressing, imminent.
instar, n, indecl., image of; like unto, govt's gen.
instigo, āre, āvi, ātum, to urge on, incite.
institūo, ēre, āi, ātum, to set up, build: to fabricate, fashion, make: sermonem, to arrange, keep up.
institūtum, i, n., mode or manner of life, custom, habits.
in-sto, stāre, stiti, stātum, to press forward.
instructus. See instruo.
instruēntum, i, n., furniture. [in-struo.]
instruō, ēre, struxi, structum, to build, construct; to draw up in array; fit out, equip.
insuefactus, a, um, adj., unaccustomed.
insuetus, a, um., adj., unaccustomed.
insula, ae, f., an island.
insuper, adv., above, overhead, on top.
tēgēr, gra, grum, adj., untouched, whole, new; unimpaired, undiminished.
tēgo, ēre, texi, tectum, cover, cover over.
tellēgo, ēre, exi, ectum, to understand, perceive: to be quite aware.
tendo, ēre, tendi, tentum, strive.
tentus, a, um, attentive, eager, bent on, intent.
ter, prep. w. acc., between, among, during.
ter-cēdo, ēre, cēsi, cessum, to come between, intervene; to interfere, occur, arise.
ter-cipio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum, to catch or seize on the way, to intercept. [inter, capio.]
VOCABULARY.

intercludo, ēre, clūsi, clūsum, shut off, cut off, block up, hinder.
inter-dico, ēre, xi, ctum, to forbid, prohibit, interdict.
interdiu, adv., in the day time, by day.
interdum, adv., in the meantime, meanwhile; sometimes.
interēō, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.
inter-ēō, īre, īī, ītum, to die, perish.
interficio, ēre, feci,fectum, to kill, slay.
intericio, ēre, iezi,iectum, to throw between, put between; in pass. of time, elapse, intervene.
interim, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.
interitus, us, m., destruction, death.
intermitto, ēre, msi, missum, to put or send between; to leave off, to allow to pass or elapse, to pause, to stop.
interventus, ūs, coming up; arrival on the scene, intervention.
texto, ēre, ui, textum, weave in, interlace.
terantur, adv., excessively, earnestly, vehemently.
intrā, prep. w. acc., within.
intritus, a, um, adj., unworn, un-fatigued. [tero.]
intro, are, avi, atum, enter, go in.
intrōduco, ēre, duxi, ductum, lead into.
intro-ēō, īre, īvi or īī, ītum, to go into, to enter.
intrōitus, ūs, m., entrance. [intro- eo.]
intrō-mitto, ēre, misi, missum, to send or let in.
introrsus, adv., towards the interior; inwards. [intro, versus.]
intrō-rumpo, ēre, rūpi, ruptum, to break in, enter by force.
intueor, tuēri, tuitus sum, look upon, gaze upon.
intrōli, v. infero.
intus, adv., on the inside, within.
imūsitātus, a, um, adj., strange, unfamiliar, novel.
inūtilis, e, adj., useless, unserviceable, disadvantageous.
inventor, ēris, m., an author, discoverer.
in-vēterasco, rascere, rāvi, incep., to grow old, to become established or fixed.
inēctus, a, um, unconquerable, invincible,
VOCABULARY.

invideo, ēre, vidi, visum, envy, be jealous of.

invīdia, ae, f., envy.

invīiolūtus, a. um, adj., sacred, inviolable.

invitātus, a, um, part. invitō.

invito, āre, āvi, ātum, to invite, allure.

invitus, a, um, adj., unwilling.

ipse, a, um, pron. demonstr., self; himself, herself, itself; for emphasis, very, just.

irācundia, ae, f., passion, anger.

irācundus, a, um, passionate, prone to anger.

irridicule, adv., without wit; non irridicule, irritantly.

irruptio,onis, f., a breaking into, attack, sortie, dash.

irrupto, ēre, rūpi, ruptum, break into, rush into.

iūvenis, e, adj., young; comp. iunior, superl., minimus natū.

iūventūs, ūtis, f., collective noun, the youth, the young persons of a community.

iūvo, āre, iūvi, iūtum, to help.

iuxtā, adv., near, next.

K.

Kal. = Kalendae.

Kalendae, arum, f., pl., the Calends or Kalends, the Roman name for the first day of the month. Kalendae Apriles, the April Kalends, or Kalends of April, April 1st.

L.

L. = Lucius.

lābor, lābi, lapsus, to slip, tumble down; hence, to slip or fall away from a thing, to be disappointed.

lābor, ėris, m., labor, toil.

lābōro, āre, āvi, ātum, to labor, to be in difficulties, to be hard pressed.

labrum, i, n., a lip; rim, brim.

lac, lactis, n., milk.

lācesso, ēre, essivi, essitum, to attack, provoke.
VOCABULARY.

lacrima, ae, f., a tear.
lacrimo, are, avi, atum, weep.
lacus, ës, m., a lake.
laedo, ére, laesi, laesum, hurt, violate.
laetátio, önís, f., exultation, rejoicing.
laetús, a, um, glad, joyous, joyful.
languidé, adv., feebly.
languor, örís, m., feebleness, weariness. [languo.]
lâpis, idís, m., a stone.
lâpsus, a, um, part. lâbor.
lâqueus, i, m., noose.
lâgíor, i, itus, to bestow, impart, yield. [largus.]
lâgíter, adv., greatly, much. largíter posse, to have great influence.
lârgitio, önís, f., liberality, bribery.
lâssitúdo, inís, f., faintness, weariness, exhaustion.
lâtè, adv., widely, broadly, extensively, comp. látius, sup. látissime.
lâtêbra, ae, f., hiding-place, covert.
lâteo, lâtère, lâtui, no supine, lie hid, be unnoticed.
lâtissime, sup. adv. [latus.]
lâtitúdo, inís, f., breadth, width. [latus.]
lâtius, compar. of lâtè.
lâtro, önís, robber, freebooter.
lâtrócîinium, ū, n., freebooting, robbery, high-way-robbery; in plur., freebooting expeditions, forays. [látrocinor, latro.]
lâtus, éris, n., a side.
lâtus, a, um, adj., wide, broad.
lauðo, are, avi, atum, praise.
lauús, laudís, f., praise, credit.
lâvo, are, lávi, lavátum, lantum or lótum, wash; pass. used reflexively, bathe.

laxo, are, avi, atum, spread out, open out, extend.
légátio, önís, f., an embassy. [lëgo, to send with a commission, to depute.]
légátus, i, m., a lieutenant-general; an envoy, ambassador, deputy. [lëgo.]
légio, önís, f., a legion. [lëgo, to choose.]
légionârius, a, um, adj., legionary (soldier).
lenis, e, adj., gentle, slack.
lenitás, âtis, f., smoothness, gentleness.
leníter, adv., gently, slightly, slowly.
leniús, adv., comp. of leníter, more feebly.
lepus, örís, m., a hare.
levís, e, adj., light (i.e. not heavy); hence, light-minded, frivolous.
levítás, âtis, f., lightness; fickleness. [levis.]
levó, are, avi, atum, to lighten, ease, relieve.
lex, lëgis, f., a law.
libenter, adv., freely, willingly, gladly.
liber, era, erum, adj., free.
liberâlitás, âtis, f., liberality, generosity, kindness.
liberâliter, adv., graciously, courteously, kindly.
libéré, adv., freely.
libéri, òrum, m., plur., children. [liber, free.]
libéro, are, avi, atum, to make or set free; to free, release. [liber.]
libertás, âtis, f., freedom, liberty.
librilis, e, adj., a pound in weight. [libra, a pound, a balance.]
lícentia, ae, f., lawlessness, presumption.
líceor, éri, licitus sum, bid.
lícet, ére, licít, and licítum est, impers. v. it is lawful; it is allowed, permitted.
lignatōri, ōnīs, f., felling or getting wood. [lignum.]
lignator, ōris, m., a woodcutter, one sent to get wood.
lilium, i, n., lily.
linea, ae, f., line. [linum, thread.]
lingua, ae, f., tongue, language.
lingula, ae, a tongue of land, point.
linter, tris, f., boat, skiff.
linum, i, n., flax.
līs, litis, f., dispute, lawsuit: lītem aēstimare, to settle the matter in dispute.
littera, ae, f., 1. singular, a letter of the alphabet; 2. plur., an epistle, letter, dispatch; writing, literature.
litum, ōris, n., shore of the sea, strand, beach.
lōcūs, i, m. (pl. loca, orum, n.), place, position, region; chance, opportunity.
lōcūtus. See lōquor.
longē, -īs, -issime, adv., far. [longus.]
longinquis, a, um, adj., distant; long, prolonged. [longus.]
longitūdō, inis, f., length. [longus.]
longūrius, i, m., a long pole.
longus, a, um, adj., long.
lōquor, loqui, loquūtus or locūtus sum, to speak, talk, say.
lōrica, ae, f. (a cuirass made of leather thongs: hence) a breastwork, mantlet, parapet. [lorum, a thong.]
Lūna, ae, f., the moon, the moon-goddess.
lux, lūcis, f., light: prima luce, at day break.
luxūria, ae, f., luxury.

M.
M. = Marcus.
M'. = Manius.
māceria, ae, f., wall, enclosure.
māchinātio, ōnīs, f., a contrivance, machine. [māchina.]

maestus, a, um, adj., sad, sorrowful.
māgis, adv., more, comp. of magnō-pere; superl. maximē.
māgistrātus, ūs, m., a magistrate.
magnificus, a, um, adj., grand, splendid, magnificent. [magnus, facio.]
magnitūdō, inis, f., greatness; great amount: venti, force, violence. [magnus.]
magnōpērē, magnō opere, adv., greatly, earnestly, strongly.
magnus, a, um, adj., (comp. mālor, us; sup. maximus, a, um), great: itinera, forced marches.
maiestās, ātis, f., greatness, dignity.
māiores, um, m., (v. magnus), plur. subst., ancestors, forefathers.
mālācia, ae, f., a calm, stillness.
mālēficium, i, n., an evil deed, crime, mischief, hurt.
mālo, malle, mālui, I prefer, I would rather.
mālus, a, um, adj., bad, evil.
mālus, i, m., upright pole; mast of a ship.
mandātum, i, n., order, injunction, instruction.
mando, āre, āvi, ātum, to commit (to any one's charge), to consign, entrust, enjoin upon; litteris, to commit to writing.
māne, adv., in the morning, early.
mānēō, ēre, mansi, mansum, to bide, to stay, remain.
manipulāris, e, belonging to a maniple or company.
manipūlus, i, m., a maniple, company of soldiers. See Introduction.
mansuēfācio, ēre, fēci, factum, to tame. [mansuetus (part. of mansuēscus=manus, suesco, to accustom to be handled), facio.]
mansuētudo, inis, f., gentleness, mercy, kindness, compassion.
mānus, ūs, f., a hand; a band, body, force (of soldiers).
mārē, is, n., the sea.
maris, v. mas.
māritūmus (also maritimus), a, um., adj., maritime, of the sea.
mās, māris, adj., male, of the male sex; subst., a male (opp. femina).
mātāra, ae, f., a Gaulish javelin, pike.
māter, tris, f., mother; matres familiae, matrons.
mātēria, ae, f., timber.
mātērior, iari, iatus sum, procure timber. [materia.]
mātrimōnum, i, n., marriage, wedlock.
mātūrē, adj., early, soon.
mātūresco, ēre, rui, no sup., to grow ripe.
mātūro, are, avi, atum, make haste, hasten.
mātūrus, a, um, ripe, early.
maximē, adv., most of all, chiefly, especially. [maximus, magnus.]
maximus, a, um, superl. of magnus.
mēdēor, ēri, to cure, heal, remedy.
mēdiocris, e, adj., middling, moderate. [medius.]
mēdiocriter, adv., moderately.
mēditerrāneus, a, um, adj., inland.
mēdīus, a, um, adj., mid, middle.
mēlior, ius, adj., better. [comp. of bonus.]
membrum, i. n., a limb, member of the body.
mēmīni, isse. defective verb (used only in perf. tenses), remember.
mēmōria, ae, f., memory, recollection.
mendāclium, i, n., falsehood, lie.
mens, mentis, f., the mind.
mensis, is, m., a mouth.
mensūra, ae, f., measure, extent. [metior.]
mentio, ōnis, f., mention.
mercātor, ōris, m., trader, merchant.
mercātūra, ae, f., commerce, trade. [mercēr, merx.]
mercēs, édis, f., pay, hire, reward.
mēreō, ēre, ui, itum, also mēreōr, ēri, itus sum, merit, deserve, earn; serve.
mēridiānus, a, um, adj., mid-day.
mēridēs, ei, m., mid-day; the south.
mēritum, i, n., good deed, service (to any one). [mēreo.]
-met, enclitic, suffix, used to emphasize pronouns, e.g., nosmet, ourselves.
mētior, iari, mensus sum, measure, measure out, distribute; used passively, be measured out, I, 16, 23.
mēto, ēre, messui, messum, reap, harvest.
mētus, ūs, m., fear.
meus, a, um, poss. adj., my, mine.
mile or mille, card. num. adj. (plur., as subst., milia or millia), a thousand.
miles, itis, m., a soldier.
militāris, e, adj., belonging to a soldier or soldiering; gloria rei militaris, military renown. [miles.]
militia, ae, f., military service. [miles.]
mīnīmē, superl. adv., least.
mīnimum, a, um, adj., superl. of parvus, least.
minor, us, adj., comp. of parvus, less.
mīnūo, ēre, ūi, ātum, to make smaller, lessen, diminish.
mīnus, adv., less, the less. [minor.]
mīrōr, āri, ātus, to wonder, wonder at.
mīrus, a, um, adj., wonderful, strange, marvellous.
miser, ēra, ērum, adj., wretched, miserable.
misericordia, ae, f., pity, compassion, mercy.

miseror, ari, atus sum, lament, deplore.

missus, a, um, pf. part. mitto.

missus, üs, m., a sending. [mitto.]

mitissimé, adv., superl. of mite, very gently, very kindly.

mitto, ère, misi, missum, to send, throw.

móbílis, e, adj., flick, changeable.

móbilitás, ātis, f., speed, rapid movement; fickleness. [moveo.]

móbiliter, adv., easily.

mőderor, ari, atus sum, check, manage, regulate.

mődestia, ae, f., self-control; subordination.

módo, adv., but, merely, only. [originally abl. of modus = a limit or measure.]

módis, i, m., a measure; a way, manner.

moenia, ium, n. pl., walls (of a city), fortifications.

móles, is, f., mass, mound, dam.

mólesté, adv., with trouble, annoyance.

mólimentum, i, n., great effort; exertion. [mórior.]

móllitus. See molo.

mollío, ire, ivi, ëtum, soften, make easy.

mollís, e, adj., gentle, gently sloping.

mollitia, ae, and mollitiés, ēi, f., softness, weakness, irresolution.

mólo, ère, ui, ëtum, grind.

mómentum, i, n., influence, weight, importance, account.

móneó, ère, ëi, ëtum, to advise, caution, warn, instruct.

mons, montis, m., a mountain.

móra, ae, f., delay.

móratús. See móror.

morbus, i, m., a disease.

mórior, mòri (or moriri) mortuus sum, die.

móror, ari, atus, to delay, tarry, remain, stay; to hinder, hamper. [mora.]

mors, tis, f., death.

mortúus, a, um, pf. part., dead. [morior.]

mó̄s, mòris, m., custom, fashion, manner, usage.

mó̄tus, üs, m., motion, movement; as political term, commotion, disturbance. [moveo.]

móvēo, ère, móvi, mórum, to move; castra movère, to break up camp.

mulier, ėris, f., a woman.

multitúdo, inis, f., a crowd, a large number of people; the multitude, i.e., the people in general, the masses or populace. [multus.]

multo, are, avi, atum, punish, fine, deprive of.

multó, adv., much, by far; used with comparatives. [multus.]

multum, adv., much, greatly, considerably. [multus.]

mūl̄us, a, um, adj., much; in plur., many.

mūlus, i, m., a mule.

mundus, i, m., the world, the universe. [mundus, clean, neat.]

mūnimentum, i, n., fortification, defence.

mūnio, ire, ivi, or ii, ëtum, to fortify; guard.

mūnitío, ōnis, f., a fortifying, fortification. [munio.]

mūnitus, a, um, part. munio, fortified, as adj.: munitissima (castra), very strongly protected. [moenia.]

mūnus, ėris, n., a duty.

mūrālis, e, adj., belonging to a wall, mural. [murus.]

mūrus, i, m., a wall.
VOCABULARY.

musculus, i, a little mouse; in military sense, a shed; built strongly of wood, used in sieges as a shelter for soldiers engaged in assailing the walls of a town. [dimin. of mūs.]

mutilus, a, um, adj., maimed, wanting.

N.

nactus, a, um, part. nanciscor.
nam, conj., for.
namque, conj., for.
nanciscor, i, nactus or nactus, to obtain, get.
nascor, nasci, natus, to be born, to arise, to be produced.
nātālis, e, adj., belonging to birth, birth. [nascor.]
nātīo, ōnis, f., a race of people, a nation. [nascor.]
nātivus, a, um, adj., natural.
nātūra, ae, f., nature. [nascor.]
nātus, a, um, part. nascor.
nātus, ūs, m., (used only in abl. sing., natu), birth; maiores natu, elderly men.
nauta, ae, m., a sailor. [navis.]
nāvālis, e, adj., naval. [navis.]
nāvīcula, ae, f., a small vessel, ship, boat. [dimin. of navis.]
nāvīgātio, ōnis, f., a voyage, sailing. [navis.]
nāvīgium, i, n., vessel, craft. [navis.]
nāvīgō, āre, āvi, ātum, to sail, make a voyage. [navis.]
nāvīs, is, f., a ship.
nāvo, āre, āvi, ātum, perform busily, do with zeal; navare operam, act vigorously, do one’s best. [= (g)navo fr. gnarus, busy.]
ne, adv. and conj., not, that not, lest: ne...quidem, not even.
-ne, an enclitic particle, interrog.; -ne...an, whether...or.
necessario, adv., perforce, of necessity. [necesse.]
necessarius, a, um, adj., urgent, necessary.
necessarius, i, m., an intimate friend, relative.
necessse, neut. adj., unavoidable.
necessitās, ātis, f., unavoidableness, necessity (in the sense of compulsion).
necessitudo, inis, f., friendship, intimacy.
necne, conj., or not.
nēco, āre, āvi, ātum, to kill, put to death.
necūbi, conj., in order that nowhere. lest anywhere.
nēfarius, a, um, adj., wicked. [nefas.]
nērās, indecl. noun, n., a crime against divine law, impious deed.
neglēgo, ĕre, exi, ctum, to disregard, make light of. [nec, ĝlego=not to gather up.]
nēgo, āre, āvi, ātum, to say no, to deny, to refuse. [ne, aio.]
negotior, iari, iatus sum, transact or carry on business.
nēgotium, i, n., a business, matter. [nec, otium.]
nēmo, acc. nēminem, (nullius and nullo in best Lat., used for gen. and abl.), no man, no one. [ne, homo.]
nēquāquam, adv., by no means, not at all.
nēquē, or nēc, conj., and not, nor; neque, neque, neither...nor.
nēquiquam, adv., in vain, to no purpose.
nervus, i, m., a sinew.
neu or nē-ve, conj., and not, nor.
neuītor, tra, trum, pron., neither; gen. -ius, dat. -i. [ne, uter.]
neve. See neu.
nex, nēcis, f. (violent) death.
nihil, n. indecl., nothing. [ne, hilum =not a bit.]
nihil, abl. of nihilum, n., by nothing; esp. as adv., nihil minus, none the less.
nimis, adv., too much, excessively.
nimus, a, um, adj., excessive, too great, too much.
nisi, conj., unless; except, save only
nitor, i, nius and nixus, to strive, endeavor.
nix, nivis, f., snow.
nobilis, e, adj., of high birth, noble; plur. nobiles, the nobles [nosco.]
nobilitas, atis, f., nobility. [nobilis].
nocens, pres. part. of noceo, as adj., guilty; as subs., an evil doer.
nocco, erre, üi, itum, to do hurt or harm to, injure.
noctu, adv., at night, by night. [nox.]
nocturnus, a, um, adj., belonging to night, (going on) by night. [nox.]
nodus, i, m., (a knot; hence) a joint of an animal's body.
nolo, nolle, nolüi, to wish...not, to be unwilling. [ne, volo.]
nomen, inis, n., a name.
nominatum, adv., by name. [nomen.]
non, adv., not.
nonaginta, num, adj., ninety.
nondum, adv., not yet.
nonnullus, a, um (usually plur.), adj., some, several.
nonnullus, a, um (usually plur.), adj., some, several.
non-numquam, adv., sometimes (not never).
nonus, a, um, num, adj., ord., the ninth. [=novenus, from novem.]
nos, nostrum, plur. of ego, we.
nosco, erre, növi, nöthum, to get, to know a thing; in perf. tenses, to know.
nosmet, emphatic form of nos. —
nöster, stra, strum, pron. adj. poss., our, our own; plur. nostri, örum, m., our men (i.e., Romans). [nos.]
nötitia, ae, f., knowledge. [nötus.]
nötus, a, um, part., known. [nosco.]
novem, card. num. adj., nine.
novi, see nosco.
novitas, atis, f., novelty, raredness, strangeness.
novus, a, um, adj., new; sup. novissimus, a, um, the last, latest, hindermost.
nox, noctis, f., night.
nox, ae, f., an injurious act; a crime, guilt. [noceo.]
nubo, erre, nupsii, nuptum, (of a woman) to marry, veil one's self for; gov's dat.
nudo, erre, avii, atum, to make naked or bare, to uncover; of military formation or position, to leave uncovered or exposed to the enemy. [nudus.]
nudus, a, um, adj., bare, naked, uncovered.
nullus, a, um, adj., (gen. nullus, dat. nulli), no, none. [ne, ullus.]
num, interrog. particle, expecting answer "No."
numen, inis, n., the divine will, will or power (of the gods).
numerus, i, m., a number; estimation, position: aliquo esse numero, to be of any account.
ummus, i, m., money, a piece of money, coin.
umquam. See nunquam.
nunc, adv., now.
nunquam, adv., never. [ne, unquam.]
nuntio, erre, avii, atum, to announce.
nuntius, i, m., a messenger, message.
nuper, adv., recently, lately.
nusquam, adv., nowhere.
nutus, üs, m., a nod, beckoning, making signs.
O.

ob, prep. w. acc., on account of: ob-eam causam, for that reason, consequently, therefore.

obae-ratus, a, um, adj., in debt; as noun, a debtor.

obdúco, če, duxi, ductum, lead towards, prolong.

ob-éo, ire, ivi or ii, itum, to go to.

ob-féro, (off) ob-ferre, ob-tuli, oblatum, to present, offer.

ob-íció, ēre, leci, iectum, to put in the way, hinder; part. obiectus, lying opposite, facing.

ob-jectus. See obicio.

obíitus, ūs, m., death. [ob, eo.]

oblátus, v. ob-féro.

oblíque, adv., obliquely, slantingly.

oblíquus, a, um, slanting, oblique.

obliviscor, ēri, obliviscor, suum, forget; gov's gen.

obsecro, are, avi, atum, beseech, implore, entreat. [sacer.]

obsequentia, ae, f., compliance.

ob-servo, āre, āvi, atum, to pay attention to, heed, observe, keep.

ob-sés, Īdis, m. or f., a hostage. [obsideo.]

obssécro, are, avi, atum, beseech, implore, entreat. [sacer.]

obsequiantia, ae, f., compliance.

ob-servo, āre, āvi, atum, to pay attention to, heed, observe, keep.

ob-sés, Īdis, m. or f., a hostage. [obsideo.]

obssécro, are, avi, atum, beseech, implore, entreat. [sacer.]

ob-servatio, onis, f., engagement, occupation.

ob-servó, āre, āvi, atum, to take possession of, seize upon, engage in. [ob. capio.]

ob-curro, ēre, curri, cursum, to rush up to, come up to, meet.

ob-tempero, are, avi, atum, submit to, yield to.

obtestor, ari, atus sum, implore, adjure.

ob-tíneó, ēre, tinui, tentum, to have, hold, possess. [ob, teneo.]

obvénio, ēre, vēni, ventum, meet, encounter; fall to the lot of.

obviam, adv., towards, in the way of;—obviam venire, to come to meet.

occásió, onis, f., an opportunity. [ob. cado.]

occásus, ūs, m., setting; occasus solis, setting of the Sun. [ob, cado.]

occidens (sol), entis, m., the west. [occido.]

occido, ēre, cidi, cīsum, to fall; of the sun, to set. [ob, cado.]

occido, ēre, cidi, cīsum, to kill, slay. [ob. caedo.]

occultátió, onis, f., concealment.

occulté, adv., secretly.

occulto, āre, āvi, atum, to conceal, hide, secrete. [occulo.]

occultus, a, um, part. occulto; as adj., concealed, hidden, secret.

occupatio, onis, f., engagement, occupation.

occúpo, āre, āvi, atum, to take possession of, seize upon, engage in. [ob. capio.]

oc-curro, ēre, curri, cursum, to rush up to, come up to, meet.

octávus, a, um, ord. num., eighth.

octingenti, ae, a, num, adj., eight hundred. [octo centum.]

octo, card. num., adj., eight.

octódécim, indecl. card. num., eighteen.

octóni, ae, a, distrib. num., eight apiece, eight at a time, in groups of eight.

óculus, i, m., eye.

ódí, ódisse, defec. v. (used only in pf. tenses) hate.
LeodiuM, i, n., hatred.
offendo, ere, fendī, fensum, to injure.
offensio, ōnis, f., a hurting, wounding.
offero, ferre, obtāli, oblātum, present, offer, expose.
officium, li, n., duty, service, allegiance.
omitto, erre, misi, missum, to neglect, disregard, drop, omit.
omnino, adv., altogether, at all.
omnis, e, adj., all, every.
ōnerārius, a, um, adj., pertaining to loads; of burden. [ōnus.]
ōnero, āre, āvi, ātum, to load, burden, freight. [ōnus.]
ōnus, ēris, n., a load, burden, cargo, weight.
ōpēra, ae, f., agency, means; aid, services. operam dare, take pains, exert one's self. [opus.]
ōpinio, ōnis, f., belief, expectation. [opinor.]
ōpis, (gen.; nom. not found), power; aid, assistance; opes, plur., resources.
opportet, ère, uit, imper. v., it behooves, it is necessary.
oppidānuS, a, um, adj., belonging to a town; as subst., a townsman.
oppidum, i, n., town.
oppōno, ēre, pōsūi, pōsītum, to confront, place opposite.
opportūnē, adv., seasonably, conveniently.
opportūnītās, ātis, f., opportunity, fitness.
opportūnūnus, a, um, adj., convenient, suitable. [ob, portus=at or before the harbour.]
opprimo, ēre, pressī, pressum, to crush, overwhelm, oppress; to fall upon, take by surprise. [ob, prēmo.]
oppugnātiō, ōnis, f., an attack, assault. [oppugno.]
oppugno, āre, āvi, ātum, to attack, assault, storm. [ob, pugno.]
optatus, a, um, pf. part. of opto, as adj., desired, agreeable.
optimē, adv., superl. of bene, best, in the best manner.
ōpus, ēris, n., work; work of fortification, "defences"; opus est, there is a necessity, it is needful.
ōra, ae, f., coast, shore.
ōrātiō, ōnis, f., a speech, harangue. [ora.]
ōrātor, āris, m., envoy, ambassador.
orbis, is, m., a circle, ring.
ordo, inis, m., a line, rank of soldiers; used by Caesar=centuria, century, company.
ōriens, entis, (pres. part. of orior), as adj., rising; as subst. oriens (sol), the rising sun, i.e., the east.
ōrior, īri, ortus, to arise.
orāmentum, i, n., decoration, adornment, honor.
orānītus, a, um, pf. part. of orno, equipped; ornatissimus, thoroughly equipped.
orno, are, avi, atum, adorn, equip, furnish.
ōro, are, avi, atum, to beg, beseech, entreat, implore.
ortus, āris, m., a rising.
ortus, a, um, part. of orior.
ōs, ēris, n., the mouth.
ostendo, ēre, di, sum and tum, to show; se, make one's appearance.
ostentatio, ōnis, f., display, show.
ostento, āre, āvi, atum, to display, show off, boast of, vaunt. [ostendo.]
ōtium, i, n., rest, quiet, peace.
ōvum, i, n., egg.
pārēo, ēre, ēi, pāritum, to obey, submit to.

pārio, ēre, pēpēri, partum, to bring forth (hence), to produce, bring about, secure.

pāro, ēre, āvi, ātum, to get or make ready, prepare.

pars, partis, f., a part, portion: in utramque partem, on both sides, either way, upon either view of the case.

partim, adv., in part, partly. [pars.]

partior, partiri, partitus sum, divide; pf. part. used in passive sense.

partus, a, um, part. pario.

pārum, adv., too little, not enough.

parvulus, a, um, adj., dim., little, petty, triling; of age, little, young. [parvus.]

parvus, a, um, adj., small; compar. minor, superl. minimus.

passim, adv., everywhere, in all directions.

passus, ūs, m., a step, pace; as a measure of length, about five of our feet, i.e., a double pace: mille passūs, a (Roman) mile=about 1,618 yards; V. note, B. v., chap. 2.

patēfācio, fācere, fēci, factum, to open; pass. patefiō, fieri, factus.

patens, entis, adj., open.

pāteō, ēre, ūi, to lie open; to stretch, extend.

pāter, tris, m., a father.

pāterfamiliae (or familias), m., the master of a household, head of a family.

pātientiā, ae, f., endurance. [patior.]

pātior, i., passus, to suffer, allow.

patrius, a, um, adj., ancestral, of one's forefathers.

patrōnus, i, m., protector, patron.

patruus, i, m., a father's brother; uncle.

paucītās, ātis, f., fewness, scarcity. [paucus.]
paucus, a, um, adj., few, little (very rare in sing.); as subst., pauci, orum, m., few, a few.

paulātim, adv., little by little, by degrees, gradually. [paulum.]

paulisper, adv., for a little while [paulum.]

paolo, adv. (with comparatives), by a little, a little, somewhat.

paulūnum, adv., a little, gradually.

paulum, adv., a little, somewhat.

paulus, a, um, adj., little.

pax, pācis, f., peace. [The root of the word is seen in paciscor, pango, whence our pact, compact.]

pecco, are, avi, atum, do wrong.

pectus, ēris, n., the breast.

pēcūnia, ae, f., money. [pecus, because, in early times, wealth was cattle.]

pēcūs, ēris, n., a flock, herd, cattle.

pedālis, e, adj., measuring a foot, a foot thick.

pedēs, peditēs, m., foot-soldier.

pedester, tris, tre, adj., on foot.—pedestres copiae, infantry forces; pedestre proelium, a battle on land.

pēditātus, us, m., foot-soldiers, infantry. [pedes, pes.]

peior, compar. of mālus, worse.

pellis, is, f., a hide, skin.

pello, pellēre, pepūli, puisum, drive off, defeat, conquer.

pendo, ēre, pependi, pensum, to weigh out; (in early times payments were made by weighing out metal; hence) to pay.

pēnēs, prep., with acc., in the power of, in possession of.

pēnitus, adv., entirely, completely.

per, prep. w. acc., through; showing the agent or means, by, by means of.

pēr-āgo, ēre, ēgī, actum, to go through with, complete, finish.

perangustus, a, um, adj., very narrow.

perceptus, v. percipio.

percipio, ēre, cepi, cep tum, to take note of, receive, learn.

percontātio, ōnis, t., question, inquiry. [percontor.]

percurro, currēre, cucerri or curri, cursum, run through; run along.

percussus, a, um., part., percutio.

per-cūtio, ēre, cussi, cussum, to pierce or strike through. [quatio.]

per-disco, ēre, didici, to learn thoroughly, get off by heart.

perditus, a, um, adj., abandoned, desperate (pf. part. of perdo).

per-duco, ēre, xi, ctum, to lead through; to prolong; to bring or win (any one) over to one's side; carry over.

pērendinus, a, um, adj., after tomorrow. [perendie.]

pēreo, ire, ivi or ii, itum, to perish.

perēquito, are, avi, atum, ride about or around, ride through. [per, equus.]

pēr-exigūus, a, um., adj., very small.

perfācilius, e, adj., very easy.

per-fēro, ferre, tūli, lā tum, to bear or carry through; to bring; to bear, put up with, submit to; in pass., of letters, news, etc., to arrive, come to hand.

per-ficio, ēre, fēci, fectum, to accomplish, complete, finish. [per-facio.]

perfidiā, ae, f., faithlessness, treachery.

perfringo, ēre, frēgi, fractum, break through. [frango.]

perfūga, ae, m., deserter, fugitive.

perfugium, i, n., a refuge.

pergo, ēre, per-rexi, per-rectum, go on, advance.

periclítor, ari, atus sum, to endanger.

pericūlōsus, a, um, full of danger, dangerous.

pēricūlum, i, n., danger.

peritus, a, um, skilled, practised experienced in, familiar with.
perlātus, a, um, part. perfero.
perlectus, a, um, part. perlego.
per-lēgo, ēre, lēgi, lectum, to read through.
perlūo, ēre, lūi, lūtum, to wash; in pass, to bathe.
permagnus, a, um, adj., very great.
per-mānēo, ēre, mansi, mansum, to abide, continue, remain.
permisceo, ēre, miscui, mixtum or mistum, mix, mingle.
permitto, mittēre, misi, missum, entrust, surrender, suffer, permit.
permixtus, pf. part. of permisceo.
permōtus, pf. part. of permoveo.
per-mōvēo, movēre, mōvi, mōtum, to move thoroughly; of the mind, to move deeply, influence, prevail on.
permulceo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, soothe, calm.
perniciēs, ēi, f., ruin, destruction.
perpauci, ae, a, adj., very few.
perpendiculum, i, n., plumb line.
perpetior, peti, pressus sum, bear, endure. [pator.]
perpetuo, adv., continually, constantly; always, forever.
per-pētūs, a, um, adj., continuing throughout, unbroken: in perpetuum, for all time, for ever. [per-peto.]
perquiro, ēre, quisivi, quisitum, inquire about. [quero.]
per-rumpo, ēre, rūpi, ruptum, to break through.
per-scribo, ēre, psi, ptum, to write in full, write a full account of.
per-sēquor, sēqui, sēcūtus, to follow up, pursue.
persēvēro, ēre, avi, ātum, to abide steadfastly, persist.
persolvo, ēre, solvi, solūtum, pay in full, pay.
perspicio, ēre, spexi, spectum, to look through; to see clearly, perceive.
persto, stāre, stīti, stātum, stand firmly, persist.
per-suādēo, ēre, si, sum, to persuade, prevail upon.
perterreo, ēre, ĕi, ētum, to terrify; thoroughly frighten.
per-territus, a, um, part. of perterreo, thoroughly frightened.
pertinācia. ae, f., obstinacy. [pertinax, tenax, teneo.]
per-tinēo, ēre, ĕi, to stretch out reach, extend; to belong to, concern, affect. [teneo.]
perturbatio, ōnis, i., confusion.
per-turbo, ēre, ĕvi, ētum, to throw into confusion; to discompose, confound.
pervāgor, ari, atus sum, roam about.
per-vēnīo, ēre, vēni -entum, to come to, arrive at.
pēs, pēdis, m., a foot.
pēto, ēre, ĕvi, and ĕi, ētum, to seek; ask.
phalangx, angis, f., solid column, phalanx; Greek acc. plur. phalanges.
piētās, ātis, i., dutiful conduct towards the gods, one's parents, country, etc. [pius.]
pilum, i, n., a javelin.
pilus, i, m., usually with primus, the division of the army occupied by the triarii; primi pili centurio. a centurion of the triarii; chief centurion.
pinna, ae, f., a battlement.
piscis, is, m., fish.
pix, picis, f., pitch.
placeo, ēre, ui, ētum, please, be agreeable or welcome to; placet mihi, I am agreed, I resolve.
plācidē, adv., calmly.
plāco, are, avi, ētum, to reconcile, appease.
plānē, adv., clearly.
plāntities. ēi, f., a plain; level ground.
plānus, a, um, adj., level, flat.
plebs, plēbis and plēbes, ē, f., the common people, "the masses" (opp. to the nobles).

plēnē, adv., fully, completely.

plēnus, a, um, adj., full, complete.

plērumque, adv., for the most part, mostly.

plērusque, raque, rumque, adj., (rare in sing.); plerique, plur., very many, the most part, the majority.

plumbum, i. m., lead; plumbum album, tin.

plurimum, adv., most, very much: ei debere, to be very greatly indebted to, under very great obligations to

plus, plūris (in plur., plūres, plūra,) more, and plurīmus, a, um, most, adj., comp. and sup. of multus. (N. B., the sing. plus is generally a neut. subst. or an adv.)

pluteus, i, m., a breastwork made of planks or wickerwork covered with hides, used as a protection for soldiers engaged in a siege.

pōcūlum, i. n., a cup, a drinking-vessel.

poena, ae, f., punishment, penalty.

pollex, pollicis, m., thumb, great toe.

pollicēor, ēri, ētus, to promise.

pollicītātio, ōnis, f., a promise.

pondus, ēris, n., a weight. [pendo.]

pōno, ēre, pōsūi, pōsītūm, to put, to place; in pass., to rest on, depend on anything.

pons, ntis, m., a bridge.

pōpulātio, ōnis, f., a laying waste, ravaging.

pōpulor, āri, ātus, to lay waste, ravage. [pōpūlus.]

pōpūlus, i, m., a people, the people; a district, with reference to its inhabitants; a community; Populus Romanus, the Roman people, never plur.

porrectus, a, um, (pf. part. of porrigo), adj., level.

porrigo, ēre, rexi, rectum, reach out, stretch forth, extend.

porro, adv., furthermore, now.

porta, ae, f., a gate.

porto, āre, āvi, ātum, to bear or carry along.

portūrium, i, n., toll, tax, customs duties. [porto, carry.]

portus, ūs, m., harbor, port.

posco, ēre, poposci, no supine, demand.

positus, v. pono.

possessio, ōnis, f., a possession, a property.

possideo, sidēre, sēdi, sessum, hold, occupy, possess.

possido, sidēre, sēdi, sessum, take possession of.

possum, posse, pōtūi, to be able; I (thou, etc.) can. [potis, sum.]

post, prep. w. acc. and adv., after.

postēa, adv., after this or that, afterwards.

postēaquam, conj., after (that).

postērus, a, um, adj., coming after, following, next. [post.]

post-pōno, ēre, pōsūi, pōsītum, to postpone, put off.

postquam, conj., after.

postremē, adv., at last, finally.

postremus, sup. of posterus.

postridiē, adv., on the following day, on the morrow.

postulātum, i, n., a demand.

postūlo, āre, āvi, ātum, to demand.

pōtens, tis, part of possum; as adj. powerful.

potentātus, ūs, m., power, headship, supremacy.

pōtentia, ae, f., power. (See note, vii. 12.) [potens.]

pōtestās, ātis, f., power; opportunity.
pótior, potius, potitus sum, to become: master of; gain possession of; governs abl.
pótius, adv., rather.
prae, prep. with abl., in comparison with; on account of.
prae-acutus, a, um, adj., sharpened in front, at the end, pointed.
praebeo, ere, sim, to show, present.
praeceedo, ere. cessi, cessum, to proceed.
praeceptum, i, n., instruction, command, injunction.
praeceptus, a, um, part. of praecipio.
prae-cipio, ere, cepi, ceptum, to bid, direct, order. [capio.]
praecipue, adv., especially.
praecipuus, a, um, adj., special.
praefectus, a, um, part. of praeficio.
praefellam, i, n., protection, help. [praecipio.]
praeficio, fice, feci, rectum, to place in front or at the head of, to appoint to the command of. [praecipio.]
praefigo, figere, fixi, fixum, fix or place in front.
praemétuo, ere, ui, no supine, fear for, be anxious.
prae-missus, a, um, part. of praemitter, send on beforehand.
praemittero, ere, misi, missum, to send before, send in advance.
praemium, i, n., a reward. [praecipio.]
prae-occupo, are, avi, atum, to occupy beforehand.
praeopto, are, avi, atum, choose in preference, prefer.
praepôno, ponere, posui, positum, to set anyone in command over.
praelumpo, ere, rupi, ruptum, break off.
praeruptus, a, um, adj., steep, precipitous. [rumpo.]
presaescribo, ere, scripsi, scriptum, order, direct, command.
prescriptum, i, n., an order; pl., instructions.
presens, iis, adj., that is before one, at hand, present. [praecipio.]
presentia, ae, i., presence, the present time: in praesentiā, at hand, on the spot; sometimes regarded as n. pl.
presensio, sentire, sensi, sensum, to perceive beforehand.
presépio, ire, sepsi, septum, fence in, block up.
presertim, adv., especially.
presidium, i, n., protection, help. [praecipio.]
presino, adv., at hand: praesto esse, to present oneself.
presaesto, are, stiti, stitum and sta-
tum, to discharge, fulfill. pr. fide, keep one's word.

praesum, esse, fui, to be at the head of, in command of.

praeter, prep. w. acc., except.

praetereat, adv., besides.

praeterero, ire, ivi or ii, itum, pass over, pass by.

praeteritus, part. of praetero.

praetermitto, ire, misi, missum, pass over, let slip, omit.

praterquam, adv., except, beyond, besides.

praetor, oris, m., (1) general or commander; (2) praetor, a magistrate who performed the duties of judge at Rome.

praetorius, a, um, of or belonging to the commander, pretorian; praetoria cohors, the general's body-guard; praetoria porta, the front gate of the camp, opposite the praetorium or general's tent.

praeuero, ére, ussi, ustum, to burn at the point.

praestus, a, um, part. praeuro.

praevento, vertère, verti, versum, outstrip, anticipate.

prævus, a, um, adj., bad, wicked.

precem, preci, prece, defective noun; pl. preces; prayer, entreaty.

prémo, ére, pressi, pressum, to press, press upon, oppress.

prendo, prendère, prendi, presum, take, grasp.

prétium, i, n., price, value.

(prex) precis, i., defect. prayer, entreaty, supplication; curse.

pridiei, adv., on the day before.

primipilus, i, m., chief centurion. See pilus.

primo, adv., in the first place.

primum, adv., in the first place; quam primum, as soon as possible.

primus, a, um, adj. sup., the first, foremost.

princeps, ipis, adj., first, chief; as subst., comm., a chief, chieftain. [primus, capio.]

principatus, us, m., the first place, supremacy, chieftainship. [princeps.]

prior, us, adj., former, previous, first; priores, those in advance.

pristinus, a, um, adj., former, old, old-fashioned.

prius, foll. by quam, and, as one word, priusquam, adv. comp., sooner than, before, before that.

privatim, adv., as an individual, privately.

privatus, a, um, part. privo, to deprive; as adj., belonging to an individual, private.

pro, prep. w. abl., before, in front of; on account of, in consideration of.

próbo, ãre, ávi, átum, to prove, demonstrate; to approve.

prócedo, ére, cessi, cessum, to go forth, to advance.

próclino, are, avi, atum, bend forward; pf. part. pass., tottering to a fall.

próconsul, usis, m., a proconsul, one assigned to the government of a province after having held the consulship.

prócûl, adv., in the distance, from afar. [procello, to drive away.]

prócumbo, ére, cûbûi, cûbitum, to sink down to the ground.

prócûro, ére, ávi, átum, to take care of, look after.

prócurro, ére, cûcurri and curri, cursum, to run forth, rush forward.

prôdeo, ire, ii, itum, to come or go forth. [pro, eo.]

prôdesse. See prôsum.

prôditio, ônis, t., a betraying, treachery.
prōditor, ĕris, m., a betrayer, traitor.

prōditus, a, um, part. prōdo.

prō-do, ĕre, didi, ditum, to give forth; to hand down (to memory), transmit, record.

prō-dūco, ĕre, xi, tētum, to lead out. prōductus, a, um, part. produco.

prōelior, ĕri ātus, to engage, fight a battle.

prō-ellium, ĕ, n., a battle, combat.

prōfectio, ōnis, f., a going away, setting out. [prōficisco.]

prōfectus. See prōificio.

prōfectus. See prōficisco.

prōfero, ferre, tēri, latum, to bring forward or forth.

prōflcio, fīcēre, fēci, fectum, to advance; effect, gain.

prōfiscisco, prōfiscisci prōfectus, to set out, start, depart.

prōfiteor, ĕri, fessus, to declare publicly awar; to offer freely, promise. [pro, fateor.]

prōflgio, are, avi, atum, put to flight, rout.

prōfluo, fluēre, fluxi, fluxum, to flow from, rise.

prō-fugio, ĕre, fugi, to flee, decamp.

prō-gnātus, a, um, part. [gnatus = natus, nascor], born, sprung, descended.

prō-grēdior, ĕ, ēressus, to go forward, advance. [gradior.]

prō-hibēo, ĕre, īti, ītum, to keep back, hinder, prevent; to defend, protect. [habēo.]

prō-icēo, ĕre, icēi, ictum, to throw forth, fling away. [prō-iacio.]

prōinde, adv., accordingly, therefore; (in like manner).

prōmineo, ēre, ui., no supine, bend forward.

prōmiscuē, adv. prōmiscuously, in common.

prō-missus, a, um, pf. part. of prōmitto; (of hair) long, flowing.

prōmōtus. See prōmoveo.

prōmōveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, move forward.

promptus, a, um, adj., ready.

prōmuntūrium, i, n., headland.

prōnē, adv., bending or leaning forward.

prō-nuntio, āre, āvi, ātum, to announce, proclaim.

prōpē, comp. prōpius, prep. w. acc. and adv., near, nigh.

prō-pello, ēre, puli, pulsum, to drive before oneself, to drive back.

prō-pēro, āre, āvi, ātum, to hasten.

prōpinquitās, ātis, f., nearness. [propinquus.]

prōpinquus, a, um, adj., near; as subst., prōpinquus, i, m., a kinsman, relation.

prōpior, nearer; proximus, next, last or next preceding; no positive adj., adv., prope.

prō-pōno, ēre, pōsi, pōsitum, to put or set forth, to point out, to offer, profer as a reward.

prōprīus, a, um, adj., one's own, special: as subst., proprium, i, m., a peculiar or characteristic mark, a sign.

propter, prep. w. acc., by reason of, on account of.

proptērēa, adv., on this account, for this reason: propterea quod, because.

prōpugnātor, ĕris, m., combatant, defender.

prō-pugno, ēre, āvi, ātum, to fight.

prō-pulso, ēre, āvi, ātum, pulsum, to drive back, repel. [propello.]

prōra, ae, f., prow of a ship.

prō-sequor, i, cūtus, to pursue, to continue the pursuit.
THE PEOPLE, STATE, OR COMMUNITY. [FOR POPULICUS, FROM POPULUS.]

PUDET, ēre, puduit or puditum est, impers. v., it shames; me pudet, I am ashamed.

PUDOR, ōris, m., shame, modesty.

PUER, ēri, m., a boy, child.

PÜRÉRILIS, e, adj., boyish, of boyhood. [puer.]

PUGNA, ae, f., a battle, combat, fight.

Pugno, āre, āvi, ātum, to fight.

PULCHER, chrha, chrum, adj., beautiful; noble.

PULSUS, a, um. See pello.

Pulsus, ūs, m., stroke. [pello.]

PULVIS, eris, m., dust.

PUPPIS, is, f., stern.

Purga, āre, āvi, ātum, to clear, expel, expunge.

PUTO, āre, āvi, ātum, to consider, judge, think.

Q. = Quintus.

QUA, adv., where, by which way. [abl. f. of qui.]

QUADRAGÉNI, ae, a, distrib. num., forty each.

QUADRINGENTI, ae, a, card. num. adj., four hundred. [quattuor, centum.]

QUAERO, ēre, quaesivi, quaesitum, to seek, ask, enquire.

QUAESTIO, ōnis, f., an examination or inquisition by torture. [quaero.]

QUAESTOR, ōris, m., a quaestor.

QUAESTUS, ūs, m, a gaining, acquiring. [quaero.]

QUALIS, e, interrog. adj., of what sort?

QUAM, adv. and conj.; (1) as; (2) than: with superl. adj. or adv., as...as possible.

QUAMOBREM, adv., wherefore.

QUAMVIS, adv., however much or many; as much as you will; although;

QUAMVIS PAUCI, no matter how few.
quando, adv., (interrog. when); after si, at any time.

quanto, rel. adv., by as much as, according to the (e.g. "the more the merrier"). [quantus.]

quantópere, adv., how much, how deeply or greatly.

quantum, adv., how much, as much as far as.

quantus, a, um, adj., how great, how much; as much as. [quam.]

quantus-vis, tāvis, tumvis, adj., as great as you will, ever so great, no matter how great. [vis, fr. volo, vis, vult, "you wish."

quārē, adv., wherefore, why. [quae, res.]

quartus, a, um, ord. num. adj., the fourth.

quāsi, conj., as if.

quattūor, card. num. adj., four.

-que, conj., (enclitic, i.e., appended to previous word), and.

quemadomum, adv., in what way, how.

quēror, quēri, questus sum, to complain.

questus. See quero.

qui, quae, quod, pron. rel. and (used adjectively) interrog., who, which, what, that.

quicquam. See quisquam.

quicumque, (or -cunque), quaecumque, quodcumque, pron. rel. whoever, whatever, all that, everything that.

quid, (neut. of quis), adv., why?

quidam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam, pron. indef., a certain, a certain one, one.

quidem, adv., indeed.

quīēs, éis, f., rest, repose.

quīētus, a, um, adj., at rest, quiet, peaceful. [quiesco, quies.]

quī, conj., but that, that not. [qui, how, ne.]

quinam, quaeam, quodnam, pron. interrog., who, which; what, pray? [In ch. 44, B. v. = uter.]

quinquēcunx, uncis, f., a quincunx, an arrangement of trees or other objects in fives, thus:: :: :: :

quindēcim, fifteen.

quingenti, ae, a, five hundred. [quincence, centum.]

quini, ae, a, num. distrib. adj., five each, five at a time.

quinquam, quaequam, quodquidam, pron. indef., any.

quisquam, quaequam, quidquam or quidquidam, pron. indef. any, anything (always in a negative connection).

quisque, quaeque, quodque or quodquidam, pron. indef., each, every.

quisquis, quaeque, quidquid or quodquidam, indef. pron., whoever, whatever.

quīvīs, quaevis, quidvis or quodvis, indef. pron., any one you wish, any one at all.

quō, adv., whither.

quó, conj., in order that (used with comparative degree instead of ut).

quō-ad, conj., till, until.

quod, conj., because; that.

quōmínus, conj., so that not, (lit. by which the less), used after verbs of hindering, and rendered by Eng. from.

quōn-iam, conj., since, seeing that, whereas. [quon= cum, iam.]

quō-que, conj., also, too.

quōque, abl. of quisque, each.
quòqueversum (quoquoversum), adv., in every direction.

quot, indecl. rel. adj., how many, as many, which number.

quótānnis, adv., every year, yearly.

quōtiens or quōties, adv., how often, as often as. [quot.]

quotidiē, adv., daily; day by day.

R.

rādix, icis, f., a root.

rādo, ĕre, rāsī, rāsum, shave.

rāmus, i, m., a bough, branch.

rāpiditās, ātis, f., swiftness. [rapi-
dus, rapio.]

rapīna, ae, f., pillage, plunder.

rārūs, a, um, adj., few, sparse, few and far between.

rāsus, a um, part. of rado, shaved.

rātio, ōnis, f., a reckoning, an account; a transaction, business; a care, consideration, regard for a thing; fashion, system, way.

rātis, is, f., a raft.

rē-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, to go back, fall back, retire.

rēcēns, tis, adj., fresh, recent.

recenseo, ĕre, censui, censum and censitum, review.

receptāculum, i, n., place of shelter, retreat.

receptus, a, um, pt. part. of recipio.

receptus, ūs, m., retreat, refuge.

rēcessus, ūs, m., a going back, retreat. [recedo.]

recido, ĕre, cūdi, cāsum, fall back, return.

recipero, are, avi, atum, get back, recover. See recupero.

rē-cipio, ĕre, cēpi, cepsum, to receive; se, to betake oneself anywhere, to retire, retreat. [capio.]

rē-cito, ĕre, āvi, ātum, to read out (a letter, etc.).

rē-clino, ĕre, āvi, ātum, to bend back, lean back.

rectē, adv., rightly, properly.

rectus, a, um, adj., straight, direct.

rē-cūpēro, ĕre, āvi, ātum, to get back, recover, regain.

rē-cūsō, ĕre, āvi, ātum, to object to, refuse. [causa.]

rēda. See rhēda.

redactus. See redigo.

redditus, see red-do.

red-do, ĕre, dūdi, dītum, to give back, restore; to render, grant.

rēd-ēo, ī, ātum, ēre, to come back; to be reduced to; to be referred to.

rēd-īgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, to bring or reduce to any condition. [ago.]

rēdimo, ĕre, ēmi, emptum, buy back, purchase ; farm (revenues).

rēdintegro, are, avi, atum, renew; revive.

rēditio, ōnis, f., a going back, returning.

rēditus, ūs, m., a returning, return.

rē-duco, ĕre, xi, ctum, to lead back, draw off troops.

rēfectus. V. reficio.

rēfēro, -fere, rettīli (rettuli), relātum, to carry back; report; refer. gratiam referre, to show gratitude, to repay, re-

rēficio, ĕre, fēci, fectum, to refit, re-
pair.

rēfractus. See refringo.

refringo, fringere, frēgi, fractum, break, break down. [frango.]

rē-fūgio, ĕre, fūgi, to flee back.

rēgio, ōnis, f., a district, territory. [rego.]

rēgius, a, um, adj., kingly, royal.

regno, ĕre, āvi, ātum, to be king, to reign. [regnum.]
regnum, i, n., kingly authority, sovereignty, chieftainship; a kingdom, the territory of a king or chief. [rex.]

régō, ēre, xi, ctum, to direct; to control, govern, rule.

ré-grédiō, i, pressus, to go back, retreat.

réiectus, a, um, part. reicio.

ré-icio, ēre, reiei, ictum, to cast back, drive back. [iacio.]

re-languesco, ēre, langui, no supine, become enfeebled.

ré-látus; a, um, part. refero.

ré-légátus, a, um, part. relègo.

ré-lego, ēre, āvi, ātum, to send away, remove out of the way.

rélictus, a, um, v. relinquo.

réligio, ōnis, f., reverence for the gods, religion; in plur., superstitious practices; matters of religion, scruples of conscience.

ré-linquo, ēre, liqui, ictum, to leave behind, to leave remaining; pass. to remain.

réliquus, a, um, adj., that is left, remaining; in plur. as subst. reliquii, ėrum, m., the others, the rest. [relinquo.]

rémāneo, ēre, mansi, mansum, to stay, remain behind.

rémex, īgis, m., rover.

rémigro, āre, no pf., no supine, move back, remove.

rémigo, āre, āvi, ātum, to row.

remíncisor, minisci, no pf., no supine, remember, recollect, gov's gen.

ré-missus, a, um, part of remitto; as adj., slack, less severe.

ré-mitto, ēre, misi, missum, to send back, to slacken, remit, abate.

remollesco, escēre, no perf. or supine, become weak.

remōtus, a, um, adj., far off, remote.

ré-movēo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, to move back, withdraw.

remūneror, ari, atus sum, recompense, repay. [munus.]

rēmus, i, m., an oar.

réno, (rhēno), ōnis, m., some take this to mean a rei:deer-skin; it is probably a fur pelisse or jacket, made from the skin of an animal dressed with the hair on.

rénovo, are, avi, ātum, renew.

renuntio, iare, iavi, iatum, bring back word, report; declare elected.

ré-pello, ēre, reppli, répulsus, to drive back.

ré-pente, adv., suddenly.

répentino, adv., suddenly, unexpectedly.

répentinus, a, um, adj., sudden, unlooked-for.

ré-pério, īre, repperi, répertum, to find, meet with. [pario.]

rēpertus, a, um, part. reperio.

ré-peto, ēre, ili or iivi, ātum, to ask or apply again for; demand as a right.

repleo, ēre, plēvi, plētum, fill up, supply amply.

ré-porto, āre, āvi, ātum, to bear back.

ré-posco, ēre, (no perf. or sup.), to exact, require.

repraesento, are, avi, atum, do at once or forthwith.

re-prēhendo, ēre, di, sum, to blame, find fault with.

répressus, p. part. of reprimo, to check.

répudio, iare, iavi, iatum, reject, scorn.

répugno, are, avi, atum, oppose, resist.

répulsus, a, um, part. repello.

réquiro, ēre, quisivi or ii, quisitum, to demand. [quaero.]

rés, réi, f., a thing, matter, fact, event, etc. The exact meaning depends on the context, e.g. res frumentaria, corn supply, provisions.
ré-sarcio, sarcire, sarsi, sartum, repair, make good.
rescídi, see rescindo.
rescindo, ére, scidi, scissum, to break up. [scindo, to cleave.]
rescisco, ére, setvi, scitum, discover, find out.
rescribo, ére, scripsi, scriptum, transfer from one branch of the army to another; re-enlist.
ré-servo, ãre, ávi, àtum, to save up, reserve; halt.
resideo, ére, sedi, no supine, remain behind, be left.
resido, ére, sedi, no supine, settle down, subside.
ré-sisto, ére, stiti, to oppose, withstand.
ré-spicio, ére, spexum, to look back or behind one.
ré-spondéo, ére, di, sum, to answer, reply.
ré-sponsum, i, n., an answer.
rés-publica, reipublicæ, f., a commonwealth, state; the public weal.
ré-spuo, spuere, spui, no supine, spuit out; reject.
ré-stinguo, ére, stinxi, stinctum, put out, extinguish.
ré-stitūo, ére, ûi, ûtum, to set up again; to replace, restore, revive. [statuo.]
ré-tineo, ére, ûi, tennent, to hold fast, keep, maintain, preserve.
re-traho, ére, traxi, tractum, bring back, drag back.
ré-vello, ére, velli, vulsum, pull back, tear away, tear down.
ré-versus. See revertor.
ré-vero, ére, verti, versum, return, found chiefly in perf. tenses; the other tenses usually deponent.
ré-vertor, i, versus, to turn back, return, retire.
re-vincio, ire, vinxi, vincetum, bind together, hold, fasten.
ré-voco, ãre, ávi, átum, to recall, summon to return, challenge.
rex, régis, m., a ruler of a territory, a king, chieftain. [rego.]
rhéda, ae, f., carriage, chariot.
ripa ae, f., a bank of a river.
rivus, i, m., a small stream of water, a brook.
róbur, oris, n., oak.
rógo, ãre, ávi, átum, to ask, beg, request.
róstrum, i, n., beak of a ship, sharp prow used as a ram in fighting.
róta, ae, f., wheel.
rúbus, i, m., bramble-bush.
rúmor, oris, m., hearsay, unauthenticated report, rumor.
rúpés, is, f., cliff, steep rock.
rurus, adv., back, back again, again. [contr. fr. revorsus from revertor.]

S.
sacerdos, dótis, c., priest. [sacer, do.]
sacrāmentum, i, n., oath, military oath, oath of allegiance.
sácriticium, li, n., a sacrifice. [sacrer, facio.]
saepe, adv., frequently, often.
saeperor, v. saepe.
saevio, ire, ii, itum, be furious, rage. [saevus.]
sagitta, ae, f., an arrow.
sagittarius, i, n., an archer, bowman.
ságūlum, i, n., dimin., a small military cloak. [sagum.]
saltus, ûs, m., (1) a woodland pasture; (2) a mountain pass.
sálus, útis, f., safety.
sancio, ire, xi, ctum, to make sacred
VOCABULARY.

or inviolable by a religious act; to decree, establish, ordain.

sanctus, a, um, part. sanctio: as adj., of persons, sacred, inviolable.

sanguis, inis, m., blood.

sanitās, ātis, f., soundness of mind, good sense.

sāno, are, avi, atum, make sound, cure, remedy.

sānus, a, um, adj., moderate, reasonable.

sāpio, ēre, ivi or li, to have sense or discernment.

sarcīna, ae, f., baggage, pack of an individual soldier; see Introduction.

sarcio, īre, sarsi, sartum, to mend, repair.

sarmēntum, i, n., a twig; in pl., faggot.

satisfactio, ōnis, f., apology, excuse.

sātisfācio, ēre, feci, factum, to give satisfaction, satisfy, content; to make excuse, apologize.

sātus. See sero.

sauciōs, a, um, adj., wounded.

saxum, i, n., stone, rock.

scāla, ae, f., a ladder, a scaling-ladder. [for scandula, from scando, to climb.]

scāpha, ae, f., skiff, light boat.

scelārātus, a, um, part. scelerō: as adj., bad, wicked, infamous: in masc., subst., a miscreant.

scelēro, āre, no perf., ātum, to pollute with crime. [scolnus.]

scelēus, ēris, n., sin, crime.

scienter, adv., cleverly, wisely. [scio.]

scientia, ae, f., knowledge, skill, cleverness.

scindo, ēre, scūdi, scissum, to cut, rend: vallum, to pull or tear down.

scīo, īre, ivi, ītum, to know.

scorpio, ōnis, m., scorpion, a military engine for throwing stones and darts in time of siege.

scribo, ēre, psi, ptum, to write.

scrōbis, is, m. and f., pit.

scūtum, i, n., a shield.

sē, sēsē, pron. reflex. of both numbers (gen. sui, dat. sibi, acc. and abl. sē or sōsē), himself, herself, itself, themselves: interse, with (from) each other.

sēcius, adv., comp. of sēcus, otherwise: nihilō sēcius, nevertheless.

sēco, are, secui, sectum, cut.

sēcrēto, adv., in secret, secretly.

sectio, ōnis, f., booty.

sector, āri, ātus sum, intensive, to pursue eagerly. [sequor.]

sectūra, ae, f., a cutting, diggings, excavation, mine.

sēcundum, prep. with acc., next to; according to; after.

sēcundus, a, um, adj., (1) the following or next to the first in time or order, the second; (2) favorable. [sequor.]

sēcūris, is, f., axe; figuratively power, authority, with reference to the lictor’s axe, carried as an emblem of a magistrate’s power.

sēcus, adv., otherwise; sēcius. compar., nihilō secius, none the less, nevertheless.

sed, conj., but.

sēdēcim, indecl. num., sixteen. [sex, decem.]

sēdēs, is, f., a seat, dwelling-place, settlement. [sedeo.]

sēditio, ōnis, f., mutiny, revolt, sedition.

sēditiosus, a, um, adj., seditious, mutinous.

sēgēs, ētis, f., corn-field, standing grain, corn in the field, crop.

semel, adv., once.

sēmentis, is, f., sowing, planting. [sēmen.]
servo, āre, āvi, ātum, to keep, lay up. preserve; beset, watch.

servus, i, m., a slave, serf.

sêsquipedalís, e, adj., a foot and a half wide, thick, &c. [sêsqui, one half more; pes, foot.]

seu. See sive.

sêvèritâs, tâtis, f., sternness, strictness, rigor, stringency.

sê-vôco, āre, āvi, ātum, to call apart, take aside.

sexâgintâ, sixty.

sexcenti, ae, a, num. adj., six hundred. [sex, centum.]

sexdécim. See sedécim.

si, conj., if.

sic, adv., so, thus.

siccítâs, âtis, f., dryness (of the weather), drought. [siccus.]

sic-ut, adv., as, just as.

sic-ùti = sicut.

sidus, ēris, n., a constellation, a group of stars.

significâtio, âonis, f., a making of a sign or token; tidings. [signum, facio.]

significo, are, avi, atum, show, indicate, intimate by signs.

signum, i, n., a military standard, ensign.

silentium, i, n., silence. [sileo.]

silva, ae, f., a wood, forest.

silvestris. e, adj., wooded, woodland. [silva.]

similis, e, adj., like, like unto.

similitudo, ìnis, f., resemblance, similarity.

simül, adv., at the same time, at once; sometimes = simul atque.

simulâcrum, ì, n., an image. [simulo = to make like, similis.]

simulâtio, âonis, f., pretence.

simul atque, conj. adv., as soon as.
VOCABULARY.

símultás, átis, f., deceit.

sín, conj., if however, but if.

síne, prep. w. abl., without.

singúlätim (singulatim), adv., one by one, singly. [singuli.]

singúläris, e, adj. (alone of its kind, hence) singular, remarkable. [singuli.]

singúli, ae, a, distrib. num adj., one to each, separate, singly.

sinister, tra, trum, adj., left hand, adverse.

sinistrá, ae, f., the left hand; sub sinistrá, on the left; (sinistra really an adj. qual. manus understood.)

sinistrorsus, adv., towards the left side, to the left. [sinistro versus.]

síno, sínère, sivi, sítum, permit, allow, let.

siquídem, conj., if only, in so far as.

sítus, ús, m., position. [síno.]

síve (seu), conj. whether (—either if), sive (seu)... sive (seu), whether... or.

sócér, ēri, m., father-in-law.

sociétás, átis, f., alliance, league.

sócúus, ī, m., an ally.

Sól, solís, m., the sun, the Sun-god.

sólátium, i, n., consolation. [sólor, console.]

soldúrius, i, m., retainer, follower.

sólēo, ēre, itus sum, semi-dep., to be accustomed, to be wont.

sólítúdo, ínis, f., a lonely place, a desert, wilderness. [sólus.]

sollertia, ae, f., skill, cleverness, versatility.

solicíto, áre, ávi, átum, to try to win over, incite, instigate for warlike purposes.

solicítūdo, ínis, f., anxiety,

sólum, i, n., the soil, ground; solum agri, the bare ground; solum fossae bottom of the trench.

sólum, adv., only.

 sólus, a, um, adj., alone, only.

solvo, ēre, solvi, sōlūtum, to loose; (naves), to weigh anchor, set sail.

sōnitus, ús, m., sound, noise.

sōnus, i, m., sound.

sōror, ōris, f., sister.—soror ex matre, half sister on mother's side.

sors, sortis, f., lot, chance.

spátium, ī, n., a space, distance, interval.

spécies, ēi, f., outward appearance, look, seeming: in speciem, for a show, seemingly. [specio].

specto, āre, āvi, átum, to look at, look to, bear in mind; to look for, i.e., await, expect. [specio.]

spéculātor, ōris, m., a scout, explorer.

spéculatórius, a, um, adj., for scouting, spying.—navigium speculatorium, a spy-boat.

spéculor, ari, atus sum, watch, reconnoitre.

spéro, āre, ávi, átum, to hope, expect.

spes, spēi, f., hope.

spíritus, ús, m., breath, air;—pl., airs, pride.

spólío, áre, ávi, átum, to rob, despoil, strip off.

sponte, abl. f, no other case found but a (rare) gen. spontis: in expressions, sponte meá, tuá, suá, of free will, of one's own accord. [spondo.]

státim, adv., on the spot, i.e., at once, forthwith, straight-way, immediately. [sto.]

státió, ónis, f., an outpost, a roadstead.

statuo, úcre, ui, útum, place, determine, judge; resolvo; take measures.

státus, ús, m., position, situation, condition.

stáitura, ae, f., height or size of the body, stature. [sto.]
VOCABULARY.

stātus, ūs, m., condition, position, circumstances. [sto.]

stimulus, i, n., a goal; a sharp stake set in the ground as an obstacle to an advancing enemy.

stipendiarius, a, um, adj., tributary, subject to tribute; pl., subst., stipendiarii, tributaries.

stipendium, i, n., a tax, tribute; soldier's pay. [stips, pendo.]

stipes, itis, m., log, trunk of a tree.

stipendium, a, m., adject., subject to tribut'; pl., subst., stipendiari, tributarics.

stipendium, tribumen, a, tax, tribute; soldier's pay. [stips, pendo.]

stipes, itis, m., log, trunk of a tree.

stirps, is, f., stem, stock, race.

sto, āre, stēti, stātum, to stand; to abide, adhere to.

stramentum, i, n., string: (casae) stramentis tectae, thatched. [stereno.]

strepitus, ūs, m., noise, din, clatter.

stūdeo, āre, ūi, to take pains about, devote oneself to.

stūdiosē, adv., eagerly, carefully, with much pains. [studium.]

stūdium, ūi, n., study, devotion to: studia rei militaris, military pursuits. [studeo.]

stultitia, ae, f., folly, lack of foresight.

sub, prep. w. acc. or abl., under.

subactus. See subigo.

subdolus, a, um, adj., crafty, cunning.

sub-duco, āre, xi, etum, to draw up.

subductio, ōnis, f., the hauling ashore of a ship. [sub, duco.]

subēo, āre, īvi or īi, lūtum, to enter, undergo.

subfōdio (suff.), āre, fōdi, fossum, stab underneath. [fodio, dig.]

sub-icio, āre, īeci, iectum, to place beneath.

sub-iectus, a, um, part. of subicio, lying beneath.

subigo, āre, ēgi, actum, subdue, conquer.

sūbito, adv., suddenly, unexpectedly [sub, eo.]

sūbitus, a, um, adj., sudden, unexpected.

sublātus, a, um, part. tollō.

sub-lēvo, āre, āvi, ātum, to raise up, support.

sublica, ae, f., a stake, pile.

sublūo, ēre, no perf., lūtum, wash.

subministro, āre, avi, atum, supply, provide.

sub-mitto, āre, misi, missum, to send up (reinforcements).

submōveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, move out of the way, move on, repulse.

subrūo, ēre, rūi, rūtum, to undermine.

sub-sēquor, i, cūtus, to follow close after.

subsidiōnum, ūi, n., aid, relief, reinforcement, support. [sub-sideo.]

subsido, āre, sēdi, sessum, stay, remain behind.

sub-sisto, āre, stīti, to stand still, to hold out, hold fast.

sub-sum, no perf., esse, to be close at hand.

subtrāho, ēre, traxi, tractum, carry off, withdraw.

subvectio, ōnis, f., transportation, conveyance. [subveho.]

subvēho, ēre, vexi, vectum, carry up.

sub-vēnio, īre, vēni, ventum, to come to one's aid, to succour.

suc-cedo, āre, cessi, cessum, to come into the place of, succeed. [sub.]

suc-cendo, āre, di, sum, to set on fire from below; in gen., to set alight, set on fire.

successus, ūs, m., an advance, rapid approach.

suc-cido, āre, cīdi, cīsum, to cut down.
suc-cisus. See succido.

suc-cumbo, ēre, cūbui, cūbitum, yield, submit.

suc-curro, ēre, curri, cursum, to run or hasten to the aid or help of.

sūdis (nom. sing. rare), is, f., a stake.

sūdor, ōris, m., sweat; toil, fatigue. [sūdo, sweat.]

sufficio, ēre, fēci, fectum, suffice; hold out.

suffrāgium, ii, n., a vote.

suggestus, ās, m., a raised place, mound, platform for speaking. [sub, gero.]

sūi, sibi, etc., reflex, pron. of 3rd person, of himself, herself, itself, themselves; lacks the nom.

summitto. See submitto.

sum, esse, fui, to be.

summa, ae, f., the whole; summa imperii, supreme command.

summum, i, n., neut. of summus as subst., highest point or part of, top, summit; ab summo, from the top, from above.

summus, a, um, (superl. adj., fr. superus), the top of.

sūmo, ēre, sumpsi, summptum, to take; poenas sumere, to take satisfaction, exact the penalty, inflict punishment.

sumptūōsus, a, um, adj., costly, expensive. [sumptus.]

sumptus, ūs, m., expense.

superbe, adv., proudly, haughtily.

sūpēriōr, īus, comp. adj. See superus.

sūpēro, āre, āvi, ātum, to overcome, conquer, prevail. [super.]

supersēdeo, ēre, sedi, sessum, refrain from, gov's abl. [super, sedeo.]

sūper-sum, esse, fui, to be over (as a remainder), to be left, remain, survive.

sūpērus, a, um, adj., that is above, upper: comp. sūpēriōr, īus, of time, former, past, previous; of strength in a battle or other contest, superior, stronger, victorious: sup. sūprēmus and summus, of rank, etc., highest, most distinguished: summae res, things of the highest importance. [super.]

suppēto, ēre, petivi or i, petitum, be at hand, hold out.

supplēmentum, i, n., re-enforcement. [a filling up, sub, pleo.]

supplex, īcis, c., a suppliant. [sub, plico, bend.]

supplicātiō, ōnis, f., thanksgiving.

suppliciter, adv., humbly, submissively.

supplicium, ii, n., punishment, (o' death), execution. [supplex, sup-plico = to bend the knees, kneel down (for execution, etc.).]

supporto, are, avi, atum, carry or bring up, convey.

sūprā, prep. w. acc. and adv., above; of time, before. [superus.]

suscipio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum, to undertake.

suspectus, a, um, part, suspicion.

suspicio, ēre, specxi, ctum, to mistrust, suspect. [sub specio.]

suspicio, ēnis, f., mistrust, suspicion.

suspicor, ari, atus sum, to suspect.

sustento, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., to bear, endure, support. [sustineo.]

sustinēo, ēre, tinnui, tentum, to hold up or out against, to withstand. [sub = subs, teneo.]

sustūli, v. tollō.

sūus, a, um, pron. poss. of 3rd person, his own, her own, its own, their own; his, her, its, their.

T.

T. = Titus.

tabernāculum, i, n., a tent.

tābūla, ae, f., writing-tablet; list.

tabulātum, i, n., a floor, storey (of a tower or house).
VOCABULARY.

tâceo, ēre, ui, itum, be silent; say nothing, pass over in silence.

tâcitus, a, um, adj., silent.

tâlēa, ae, bar, rod (of iron.)

tâlis, e, adj., of such a kind; such (re-ferring to quality always).

tâm, adv. of degree, so, so much.

tâmen, adv., however, nevertheless, yet.

tâmetsi, conj., notwithstanding that, although. [contr. fr. tamen etsi.]

tandem, adv., at last, finally; in questions, pray.

tango, ēre, tētigi, tactum, to touch.

tanto, see tautus.

tantōpère, adv., (=tanto opere), so greatly, so very; so vehemently.

tantūlus, a, um, adj., dim., so little, so small. [tautus.]

tantum, adv., so much; just so much and no more, only, merely.

| tautus, a, um, adj., so great in amount, size, etc.: subst. tantum, i, n., so much: abl. tanto (with comparatives), by so much, so much the, the, (cf. quantus). |
| tardo, āre, āvi, ātum, to impede, retard. |
| tardus, a, um, adj., slow; tardior, less active. |
| taurus, i, m., a bull. |
| taxus, i, f., a yew-tree. |
| tectum, i, n., roof; house. [tego, cover.] |
| tectus, a, um, part. tego. |
| tēgimentum, i, n., a covering. [tego.] |
| tégo, ēre, xi, ctum, to cover. |
| tēlum, i, n., a weapon for throwing missiles, a javelin, etc. |
| tēmērārius, a, um, adj., rash, inconsiderate. [temere.] |

tēmērē, adv., at random, rashly, heedlessly.

tēmēritās, ātis, f., rashness, indiscretion. [temere.]

tēmo, ōnis, m., the pole of a chariot.

temperantia, ae, f., moderation, self-control.

tempérātus, a, um, part. of temper. temperate.

tempero, are, avi, atum, refrain, control one's self, forbear.

tempestās, ātis, f., season of the year; storm; weather.

tempto, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., to try, tempt.

tempus, ōris, n., time.

tendo, ēre, tetendi, tensum or tentum, stretch, extend; pitch tent, encamp.|

tenēbrae, arum, pl. f., darkness.

tēnēo, ēre, ī, tentum, to hold, keep.

tēner, era, erum, adj., tender, young.

tento, āre, āvi, ātum, to try, test, tempt, try to influence, endeavor.

tēnūis, e, adj., (thin); feeble, weak.

tenuitās, ātis, f., thinness, weakness, poverty.

tenuiter, adv., thinly.

ter, num. adv., thrice, three times.

tērès, ētis, adj., well-turned, round, smooth, tapering. [tero, rub.]

tergum, i, n., back,—a tergo, post tergum, in the rear.

terni, ae, a, distrib. num., three each, three at a time, by threes.

terra, ae, f., the (dry) land; the earth; plur. terrae, the earth, the world.

terrēnus, a, um, adj., of earth, earthly.

terrō, ēre, ūi, ītum, to frighten.

territo, are (no perf. or sup.) freq., to put in terror, to frighten. [terreo.]

terrōr, ōris, in., fright, alarm.

tertius, a, um, num. ord. adj., the third. [ter.]
VOCABULARY.

tertius-décimus, a, um, num. ord. adj., the thirteenth.

testamentum, i, n., will, testament.
testimónium, ii, n., evidence, proof. [testor.]
testis, is, c., a witness.
testudo, inis, f., a tortoise. As a military term, the word means a covering or shed for the protection of soldiers attacking fortifications. [testa = a shell.]
tignum, i, n., a beam, log, pile.
timēo, ēre, īi, (no sup.) to dread, fear.
timidē, adv., faint-heartedly, timidly. [timidus, timeo.]
timidus, a, um, adj., fearful, afraid, alarmed, cowardly, timid.
timor, ōris, ni., dread, fear. [timeo.]
tōlēro, are, avi, atum, to bear, endure, sustain.
tollo, tolēre, sustūli, sublātum, to raise, lift, or set up; to take away, remove.
tormentum, i, n., torture. [torqueo, to twist.]
torrēo, ēre, torrūi, tostum, to scorch.
tōt, num. adj. indecl., so many.
tōtīdem, indecl. adj., the same number, just as many.
tōtus, a, um (gen. īus, dat. i), adj., the whole, entire, all.
trabs, is, f., beam, timber.
tractus, v. traho.
trādo, ēre, didī, ditum, to give or hand over; to deliver by teaching, to teach. [trans, do.]
trādūco, ēre, xi, ctum, to lead or bring across or over. [trans, duco.]
trāgūla, ae, f., a kind of javelin or lance used by the Gauls. [traho.]
trāho, ēre, traxī, tractum, to draw, drag along.
trāicīo, ēre, iēci, ictum, to pierce through, transfix. [trans, iacīo.]
trā-no, nare, navi, natum, swim across. [trans, no.]
tranquillītās, ātis, f., calm.
trans, prep. w. acc., across, over, on the far side of.
transcendo, ēre, scendi, scensum, climb over.—transcendere in naves, to board the ships.
transduco. See traduco.
trans-ēo, īre, īvi or īi, itum, to go across or over, to cross.
trans-feō, ferre, tūli, lātum, to bear across, to bring or carry over.
trans-fīgo, ēre, xi, xum, to pierce through, transfix.
transfōdo, ere, fūdi, fossum, pierce through, stab, transfix.
transgrēdior, grēdi, gressum sum, go or pass over, cross.
transitūs, īs, m., a going or passing over, a passage, crossing. [transeo.]
translātus, a, um, part. transferto.
trans-mārinus, a, um, adj., brought across or from beyond sea, imported.
transmissus, īs, m., crossing, interval, distance.
transmittō, ēre, mīsi, missum, send over.
transporto, āre, āvi, ātum, to convey across.
transstrum, i, n., thwart, cross-beam.
transversus, pf. part. of transvertō; as adj., crosswise, athwart, transverse.
trēcenti, ae, a, adj., three hundred.
trēdēcim, indecl. num., thirteen.
trēpīdo, āre, āvi, ātum, to bustle about anxiously, to hurry with alarm.
trēs, tría, card. num. adj., three.
tribūnus, i, m., a chieftain, commander, tribune; tribuni militum, military tribunes, officers of the army, six to each legion, who commanded in turn, each two months at a time.
tribuō, ēre, tribūi, tribūtum, to assign.

tribūtum, i, n., a stated payment, tribute.

triduum, i, n., space of three days, three days. [tres, dies.]

triennium, i, n., space of three years, three years. [tres, annus.]

trigintā, indecl. num., thirty.

triplex, plicis, adj., threefold, triple. [tres, plico.]

triquetrus, tra, trum, adj., triangular.

tristis, e, adj., sad, gloomy, sorrowful.

truncus, m., trunk of a tree.

tūba, ae, f., trumpet.

tueor, eir, ultus or tutus sum, look at, behold; see to, protect, defend, support.

tūli. See ferō.

tum, adv., then.

tumultuor, ari, atus sum, make a disturbance, be in confusion.

tumultuōsē, adv., with confusion.

tūmulus, ūs, m., commotion, disturbance.

tūnus, i, m., a mound. [tumeo = to swell.]

tunc, adv., then, at this juncture.

turma, ae, f., a squadron.

turpis, e, adj., base, shameful, dishonorable.

turpiter, adv., disgracefully, basely.

turpitudo, inis, f., baseness, dishonor.

turris, is (acc. turrim and turrem; abl. turri and turre), f., a tower.

· tūtē, adv., safely, securely.

tūtō, adv., in safety, safely, securely.

tūtus, a, um, part. tueor. As adj., safe.

tuus, a, um, poss. adj., thy, thine; your (if addressed to one person.)

U.

ūbī, adv., (of place), where; (of time), when.

ūbicumquē, adv., wherever.

ūbique, adv., anywhere, everywhere (disting. from ubique = ūbi-quē, "and where").

ulciscor, i, ultus, to take vengeance on, avenge oneself on.

ullus, a, um, adj., any, any at all. [for unulus, dimin. of unus.]

ulterior, ius, comp. adj., farther.

ultimus, a, um, sup. adj., farthest, most distant : ultimi, orum, m., the hindmost.

ultra, prep. with acc., beyond, on the far side of.

ultro, adv., unasked; unprovoked; of one's own accord.

ultus, v. ulciscor.

ūlūlātus, us, m., a yell, war-whoop.

umquam, adv., ever, at any time; (disting. fr. semper, ever = always).

ūnā, adv., together, in company. [unus.]

undē, adv., from which place, whence.

undēcim, card. num. indecl., eleven.

undēcimus, a, um, ord. num. eleventh.

undēquadragintā, card. num. indecl., thirty-nine. ['one from forty."

undique, adv., from all parts, from every quarter, on all sides.

universus, a, um, adj., all together, in a body, as a whole, whole.

ūnus, a, um, card. num. adj., one:
ad unum, to a man, i.e., without exception.

urbānus, a, um, adj., of the city, belonging to the city.

urbs, is, f., city.

urgeo, ēre, ursī, no supine, press, push; press hard upon, oppress.

ūrus, i, m., a wild-ox, aurochs.

ūsitatus, a, um, adj., usual, common, familiar.

usqūe, adv., all the way: usque ad, right up to.

ūsus, ēs, m., use, employment; need, occasion; usefulness, use: ex usu or usui esse, to be useful or advantageous. [utor.]

ūsus, a, um, part. utor.

ūt or ūtī, adv. and conj., with indic., as; when; with subjunctive, that, so that, in order that.

ūter, útra, útrum, pron. interrog., which of the two.

ūter-que, útrāque, útrumque, pron., each of two, both (separately; opp. to ambo, both together).

ūtī, conj. See ut.

ūtilis, e, adj., useful, advantageous.

ūtilitās, ātis, f., usefulness, advantage, benefit.

ūtor, i, ūsus sum, to use, accept, enjoy.

ūtrumque, adv., on both sides.

ūtrum, conj., whether.

uxor, ēris f., a wife.

V.

vācātiō, ēnis, f., freedom, exemption from a service, etc. [vaco.]

vāco, are, avi, atum, be unoccupied, lie waste.

vācuus, a, um, adj., empty, clear, vacant, unoccupied.

vādum, i, n., a ford.

vāgina, ae, f., a scabbard, sheath.

vāgor, āri, ātus, to go to and fro, roam, wander. [vagus.]

vālēo, ēre, āri, ātum, to be strong: to have power or influence, to avail.

valētūdo, īnis, f., state of health; health.

valles or vallis, is, f., a vale, valley.

vallum, i, n., an earthen wall or rampart set with palisades, a rampart.

vāriētās, ātis, f., diversity, variety.

vārius, a, um, adj., varying, different, changing.

vasto, āre, āvi, ātum, to empty of inhabitants, to lay waste. [vastus.]

vastus, a, um, adj., vast, wide-spreading, immense, enormous.

vāticinātiō, ēnis, f., divination, foretelling, predicting.

vectigal, ālis, n., tax. [veho.]

vectigālis, e, adj., tributary; as subst., a tributary, one who pays tribute.

vectōrius, a, um, adj., for transport. [veho.]

vehementer, adv., vigorously, violently; very, exceedingly.

vēho, ēre, vexi, vectum bear, carry, convey.

vel, conj., or; even.—vel. ... vel, either....or.

velim and vellem, see volo.

vēlocītās, ātis, f., speed, swiftness. [velox.]

vēlociāter, adv., speedily, swiftly; comp. velocius; sup. velocissime. [velox.]

vēlo, ėcis, adj., swift, active, rapid, quick.

vēlum, i, n., a sail.

vēlut, adv., just as.—velut si, just as if.

vēnātiō, ēnis, f., hunting, the chase. [venor.]

vēnātor, ēris, m., a hunter. [venor.]
VOCABULARY.

vendo, ēre, vendidi, venditum, sell, offer, for sale. [vēnum, do.]

vēnia, ae, f., pardon, favor, indulgence.

vēnīo, ire, vēni, ventum, to come.

ventito, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., to come often, to keep coming. [venio.]

ventus, i, m., wind.

vēr, vēris, n., spring.

verbum, i, n., a word.

vērēor, ēri, ētus, to fear or be afraid.

vergo, vergēre, to inelinc, turn, verge.

vergōbrētus, i, m., vergobret, title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui.

vērisimilis, e, adj., likely, probable.

vēritis, a, um, part. vereor.

vērō, adv., in truth, assuredly, however. [verus.]

verso, are, avi, atum, turn often; change.

versor, āri, ātus, (properly the mid. form of verso, are, freq. of ve- toro), dwell, be in a place, or mix among or with people.

versus, ūs, m., a line of poetry, a verse.

versus, adv. and prep., towards, in the direction of.

vertor, ēre, verti, versum, turn; change.

vērus, a, um, adj., true, real; right, just, reasonable.

vērūtum, i, n., a dart, javelin. [veru, a spirit.]

vesper, ēris, (locative vesperi, acc mostly vesperum), n., the evening

vester, tra, trum, adj.; your, yours (addressed to more than one.)

vestigium, ī, n., a footprint, track, trace.

vestio, īre, vestivi, vestitum, to clothe. [vestis.]

vestis, is, f., covering; garment, clothing.

vestitus. See vestio.

veterānus, a, um, adj., old, veteran; as subst., a veteran.

vēto, āre, vetūi, vētitum, to forbid.

vētus, cris, adj., old.

vexillium, i, n., a flag; a red flag placed upon the general's tent as a signal for battle or marching.

vexo, āre, āvi, ātum, to harass, ravage.

via, ae, f., a way, street, road.

viātor, āris, m., traveller.

vicēnum, ae, a, num., distrib. adj., twenty each. [viginti.]

viceēmus (vicissimūs and vigesimus), a, um, num. ord. adj., the twentieth. [viginti.]

vicēs, adv., twenty times. [viginti.]

vicinitās, ātis, f., neighborhood; people in a neighborhood, neighbors.

vicis, (gen. ; nom. wanting)ī, change, turn,— in vicem, in turn.

victima, ae, f., a sacrifice, victim.

victor, ōris, m., a conqueror; in opposition, victorious. [vinco.]

victōria, ae, f., victory.

victus, a, um, part. vinco.

victus, ūs, m. (that on which one lives), provisions, sustenance, victuals. [vivo.]

vicus, i, m., village.

vīdeo, ēre, vidi, visum, to see; pass.

videor, I seem or am seen; impers. pass. to seem fit or good.

vigilia, ae, f., a being awake, a watching; sleeplessness; a watch of the night. The Romans divided the night from sunset till sunrise into four equal "watches."

viginti, adj., indecl., twentieth.

vimen, ĩnis, n., a pliant twig, with, osier.

vincio, ēre, vinxi, vinctum, bind.

vinco, ēre, vici, victum, to conquer, be victorious: vincite = have your own way.
VOCABULARY.

vinculum, i., n., a chain, bond, fetters. [vincio.]

vindicó, are, avi, atum, claim, demand; set free, liberate; avenge, take vengeance on or for; punish.

vinea, ae, f., a vinea, mantlet, penthouse, shed, a shelter used during sieges to protect the men engaged in using the battering-ram and other engines. [vinum.]

vinum, i., n., wine.

viólo, äre, avi, atum, to do violence to, injure. [vis.]

vir, viri, m., a man, a husband.

vires, v. vis.

virgo, inis, f., a maiden.

virkultum, i, n., brushwood, underwood, thicket.

viritum, adv., man by man, individually. [vir.]

virtús, ätis, f., manliness; bravery, courage, valor; worth, virtue. [vir.]

vis, acc. vim, abl. vi. f., in sing., violence, force, power; plur. vires, virtum, etc., bodily strength.

visus. See video,

vita, ae, f., life. [vivo.]

vito, äre, avi, atum, to avoid, evade.

vitrum, i., n., wood.

vivo, äre, vivi, victum, to live.

vivus, a, um, adj., alive, living. [vivo.]

vix, adv., scarcely, with difficulty; barely.

vóbis, see vos.

vóco, äre, avi, atum, to call, invite, challenge.

vólo, velle, vóli, to wish, will, be willing.

vóluntárius, a, um, adj., willing, of one’s own free will: subst., voluntarii, örum, m., volunteers. [voluntas.]

vóluntás, ätis, f., will, free-will, inclination, disposition.

vóluptás, ätis, f., pleasure.

vós, plur. of tu, pron. pers., you.

vóvéo, äre, vóvi, votum, to vow, to promise solemnly.

vox, vocis, f., a voice, cry.

vulgo, adv., commonly, generally. [vulgus.]

vulgus, i., (usually n., occasionally m., but not in Caesar) the mass of the people, the people, the public.

vulnéro, äre, avi, atum, to wound, injure by a wound. [vulnus.]

vulnus, éris, n., a wound.

vultus, ús, m., countenance, expression of the face, look. [volo, lit. “the wish as expressed in the face.”]
ADDENDA.

ad-flgo, V. af-flgo.
ad-flngo, V. af-flngo.
ad-gredior, V. ag-gredior.
ad-licio, V. al-licio.
ad-paro, V. ap-paro.
ad-pello, V. ap-pello.
a-mens, ntis, adj., mad, senseless.
ap-porto, V. ad-porto.
caelum, i. n., heaven, sky.
caedo, ere, cecdi, caesium, cut, kill.
celer, eris, ere, adj., swift.
circumduco, ere, xi, ctum, lead around.
clemens, ntis, adj., gentle, kind.
colligo, are, avi, atum, bind together (ligo); distinguish fr. colligo, ere.
cominus, adv., in close combat [von, manus].
contego, ere, xi, ctum, cover up.
continencia, ae, t., self-restraint.
culmen, minis, n., summit, top, roof.
dens, ntis, m., tooth.
densus, a, um, adj., thick.
divulgo, are, avi, atum, spread abroad.
dorum, i. n., a back; ridge.
duplex, fecis, adj., two-fold [plico].
equidem, indeed.
ecido, ere, cidi, cisum, cut out.
ex-curro, ere, curri, cursum, make a sally.
fons, ntis, m., fountain, spring.
gaesum, i. n., a Celtic javelin.
glorior, ari, atus sum, glory in, boast of.
grandis, e, adj., large.
humanitas, atis, f., civilization; refinement.
ideo, adv., therefore.
includo, ere, clusi, clusum, shut in

incuso, are, avi, atum, upbraid, re-buke.
indulgentia, ae, t., indulgence.
intro, adv., inwards.
invicem, adv., in turn.
iussu, adv., by order.
 languidus, a, um, adj., feeble, spiritless.
 lignum, i. n., wood.
male, adv., badly.
mulus, onis, m., mule-driver.
muto, are, avi, atum, change.
nauticus, a, um, adj., naval.
ocurso, are, avi, atum, rush to meet.
ociter, adv. compar., ocius, swiftly.
paries, etis, m., a house wall.
patienter, adv., patiently, with endurance.
penna, V. pinna.
perfidus, a, um, adj., perfidious.
pertimesco, ere, timui, fear intensely.
proruo, ere, rui, rutum, dash down, overthrow.
quamdui, adv. and conj., how long, as long.
quotidianus, V. Cotidianus.
rebellio, onis, f., a renewal of war.
sapes, is, t., a hedge.
satis, adv., enough.
sicubi, conj., if anywhere.
signifer, standard-bearer.
simulo, are, avi, atum, pretend.
sincere, adv., honestly, truly.
stabilitas, -atis, steadiness [sto, stand].
suffodio, V. sub-fodio.
vallus, i. m., a stake.
APPENDIX A.

WORDS AND PHRASES FOR MEMORIZING.

Note.—The student should learn the principal parts of all verbs and the inflection of nouns and adjectives.

BOOK II.

Chapter 1.

creber, frequent, numerous.
certiorem facio, I inform.
certiior fio, I am informed.
coniuro, conspire; coniuratio, conspiracy.
obses, hostage.
inter se dare, exchange.
primum; in the first place.
deinde, in the second place; afterwards.
vereor, I fear.
nonnulli, some, several.
sollicito, stir up, instigate.
partim, partly—pars (f.), a part.
hiemo, I winter; hiems, winter; hiberna, winter quarters.
molestes or graviter firo, I am annoyed.
studeo (dat.) I am eager for—fond of.
imperium, rule, power, command.

Chapter 2.

nuntius, message or messenger.
litterae, letter or letters.
conscribo, enrol, enlist.
inita aestate, at the beginning of summer.
cum primum, as soon as, when first.
copia, plenty, supply; copiae, (1) stores, (2) forces.
finitimus, neighbouring.
apud (acc.), among, with, near.

[1]
ea geruntur, these things are going on.
cogno sco, I learn; cognovi, I know.
nuntio, report, announce.
manus (fem.), (1) hand, (2) band or force.
cego, (1) gather, collect, (2) compel.
existimo, arbitr or, think.
proficiscor, set out.
res frumentaria, frumentum, corn supply, corn.
castra moveo, move camp.
castra pon o, pitch camp.
circiter, about (with numerals), —de, about, concerning.

Learn the cardinal and ordinal numerals up to twenty.

Chapter 3.

Eo cum venisset, having arrived there, on his arrival there.
de improviso, unexpectedly.
subito, suddenly.
celexius opinione, sooner than expected.
proximus, next, nearest.
civis, citizen.
civitas, state.
mitto, send.
legatus, (1) envoy, ambassador, (2) deputy, lieutenant.
in fide m permitto, entrust to the care or honour of.
Belgae reliqui, the rest of the Belgae.
consentio, agree, join with (cum, expressed).
paratus dare, ready to give.
imperata facere, do one's bidding.
iuvo (acc.), aid.
ceteri, reliqui, the rest of, remaining, all other.
in ar mis esse, to be under arms.
neque, (1) neither, nor, (2) and not = et non, sometimes, (3) but not = sed non.
incolo, dwell.
ne—quidem, not even.
utor, (1) use, (2) observe (customs), (3) show or display (zeal, etc.).
magistratus, (1) magistrate, (2) office.

Chapter 4.

qua ero ab, or ex, enquire of.
peto ab, seek from.
rogo (acc), ask, ask for.
quuis, or qui (interrog.), which, what, or who?
quantus, how great?
quot, how many?
reperio, find out, discover (after searching or enquiring).
cognosco, find out, become aware, learn.
invenio, find, come upon (not implying search).
propter (acc), on account of.
consido, settle.
is locus, that place; ea loca, those places.
expello, expel.
solus, alone, only.
patrum memoria, within the memory of our fathers.
finis (m. or f.), end, limit; fines (m.) territories, boundaries.
res militaris, military matters.
concilium or consilium, a council, deliberative assembly.
consilium, counsel, plan, design, policy.
pollicor, promise.
plurimum navibus valère, to be strongest in ships.
conficio, (1) complete, (2) bring to an end.

Learn the cardinal tens to centum.
imperium or summam totius belli, chief command.
imperium obtinère, hold command.
apello, are, I call; appello, ère, bring a ship to port.

Chapter 5.

cohortor, exhort, encourage.
convenire, assemble.
líberi, children.
adduco, bring.
iubo (acc. and infin.), impero (dat. and ut), order, command; iubo
also means "to bid."
doceo, teach, tell, inform.
maçno opere, greatly; quanto opere, how greatly.
interest (gen.), it is important to, it is in the interest of.
poplóror, vasto, devastate, lay waste, ravage.
coepi, begin or began.
dimitto, dismiss.
postquam vénit, after he came.
cum venisset, when he had come.
ubi vénit, when he came.
postea, post, afterwards.
longe (or multum) abest, it is far distant.
explorator, scout.
látus, side; látus, wide.
munio, fortify, protect.
ripa, bank.
commenatus, supplies.
pons (m.), bridge.
presidium, guard, garrison, detachment.
relinquo, I leave behind.
discoed, excedo, I leave, depart.
vallum, rampart.
fossa, ditch.
pēs, foot; pēdes, foot-soldier.

Chapter 6.

impetus, (1) an attack, charge, (2) rush, impetuosity, force.
ex in itinere, on the march.
opposuo, assault; expugno, take by storm, capture.
sustineo, hold out, resist.
oppugnatio, siege.
murus, town wall; vallum, rampart; moenia, fortifications.
lapis (m.), stone.
munitiones, lines, works, fortifications.
testudo, (1) shelter of shields, (2) a shed.
teia conicera, hurl weapons.
praesum (dat.), I am at the head of, in charge of.
preficio, I appoint in charge of (acc. of person, dat. of thing).
de pace, concerning peace.

Chapter 7.

media not, mid-night.
dux (1) leader, (2) guide.
subsidiurn, support.
adventus, arrival.
studium, zeal.
eā de causā, for that reason.
spes, hope.
itaque, therefore, accordingly, consequently.
moror, ari, moratus, to delay; morior, mori, mortuus, to die.
vicus, village.
adeo, visit, go to.
contendo, hasten.

Chapter 8.

statuo, constiuto, resolve.
proelium, battle.
intellego, perceive.
aciem instruo, draw up line of battle.
idoneus, suitable.
collis, (m.) hill.
paulisper, a little while.
paululum, a little.
paulatim, gradually.
utrumque litus, both sides.
circumvenio, surround.
opus est, there is need of (abl. of thing needed).
pro castris, in front of the camp.
constiuto, (1) resolve, determine, (2) station.

Chapter 9.
palus, (f.) marsh.
inter, (acc.), between.
transeo, cross.
exspecto, (1) wait for, (2) wait to see.
impeditus, encumbered, embarrassed.
expeditus, light-armed, lightly equipped.
agredior, adorior, attack, assail.
proelium equestre, cavalry fight.
secundus, favourable, successful.
vadum, ford.
conor, attempt.
magno usui nobis est, it is of great advantage to us.
prohibeo, prevent.

Chapter 10.
ego, itis, horseman; equus, horse.
equites (pl.), equitatus (sing.), cavalry.
pedes, foot-soldier; pes, foot.
pedites (pl.), peditatus (sing.), infantry.
pugnatum est, they fought.
ocido, kill; occido, fall.
interficio, kill.
locus iniquus, unfavourable place.
progredior, advance.
intellego, perceive; video, see.
deficio, (1) fail, (2) revolt.
convoco, assemble, call together.
convenio, assemble, come together.
quisque, each.
revertor, redeo, return.
undique, from all parts.
auxilium fero (dat.), bring aid to.

Chapter 11.

castris egredior, leave camp.
ordo, rank, order.
pervenire ad, arrive at.
fuga, flight.
videor, seem.
statim, confessim, at once, immediately.
qua de causâ, for what reason.
primâ luce, at day-break.
confirmo, (1) confirm, strengthen, encourage, (2) declare, affirm.
novissimum agmen, rear of the column.
primum agmen, the van.
clamor, shout.
occasus solis, sun-set.
se recipere, (1) betake one's self, retire, (2) recover one's self.

Chapter 12.

magnum iter, a forced march.
pauci, few.
vinea, mantlet, small shed.
quae usui sunt, those things which are useful or necessary.
vineam ago, I bring up the mantlets.
aggerem, a mound or raised platform.
turris, tower.
deditio, a surrender; dedo, I surrender.
impeto, obtain a wish; impero, command.

Chapter 13.

arma, -orum, arms.
in deditionem accipere, receive the surrender of.
traio, hand over.
absum, am distant.
maior natu, older man.
egredior, go out.
in fide venire, place one's self under protection.
mulier, ēris, woman; vir, man; puer, boy or child.
mōs, mōris, custom; mōres (pl.), habits, manners, character.

Chapter 14.

princeps, (1) chieftain, (2) author, ring-leader, instigator.
deficio, revolt; fall away, fail.
bellum infero (dat.), make war upon.
bellum gero, carry on war.
non solūm—sed etiam, not only—but also.
auctoritas, influence.

Chapter 15.

honoris causā, out of respect to.
recipio, receive again; accipio, receive.
posco, demand.
confero, collect, bring together.
aditus, access, approach.
mercātor, trader.
patior, suffer, allow.
vīnum, wine.
infero, import.
virtus, courage.

Chapter 16.

iter facio, I march.
captivus, prisoner.
adventus, ēs, arrival.
uterque, both (individuals); utriquē, both (parties).
aetas, age; aēstas, summer; aēstus, tide.
palus, marsh.

Chapter 17.

explorator, scout.
idoneus, suitable (ad before gerund; dat. of a noun).
deligo, ēre, choose; deligo, are, bind.
complures, several.
sequor, follow.
unā, adv. together.
quidam, certain.
demonstro, ostendo, point out.
impedimenta, baggage (of an army).
sarcinae, baggage (of an individual soldier).
audio, dare; audio, hear.

Chapter 18.
loci natura, nature of the ground; natural position.
apertus, open.
altitudo, height; longitudo, length; latitudo, breadth.

Chapter 19.
subsequor, follow up.
augmen claudio, bring up the rear.
transgressior, transeo, cross.
proelium, pugna, battle; bellum, war.
cedo, retreat, fall back, retire.
abdo, hide; abdo me, hide myself.
in silvas se abdiderunt, they hid in the woods.
videor, seem.

Chapter 20.
signum, standard.
oportet, it behooves.
arcesso, send for.
cohortor, exhort, encourage.
superior, (1) upper, higher; (2) previous.

Chapter 21.
perturbo, disturb, confuse.
paratus, ready.
desum, I am lacking.
consipicio, behold, catch sight of.
consisto, halt.

Chapter 22.
subsidium, support; auxilia, allies, reinforcements.
impeito, hinder, obstruct.

Chapter 23.
sinister, left; dexter, right.
vulnus, wound.
loca superiores, higher ground, heights.
in fugam dare or conicere, put to flight.
cornu, wing (of an army).

Chapter 24.

circumvenio, surround.
rursus, again.
perterreo, frighten thoroughly.
compleo, fill.
pemo, press.
spero, vincere, conquer, defeat.

Chapter 25.

occido, interficio, kill.
neco, put to death.
conficio, (1) finish, (2) exhaust, disable.
inferior locus, lower ground.
angustus, (1) narrow, (2) tight, difficult.
novissimi, those in the rear.
sctum, shield; gladius, sword.

Chapter 26.

signa converto, face about.
potior (abl.), gain possession of.
eleritas, speed, quickness.
periculum, danger, risk.

Chapters 27—35.

commutatio, change.
salus, safety.
cando, ceccide, fall; caedo, cecedi, cut, kill.
iniriia, wrong-doing.
auxilio venire, come to the aid of.
creber, frequent.
vires, strength.
pierumque, generally; pierique, most (people).
onus, burden.
modus, manner, form.
respondeo, reply.
porta, gate; portus, harbour.
exeo, exceo, egredior, go out, leave.
subito, repentino, suddenly, unexpectedly.
iniquus locus, unfavourable place.
postridie eins diei; postero die; postridie, on the morrow.
maritimus, maritime.
atingo, border on, touch.
incolo, inhabit.
legatus, ambassador; legatio, embassy.

Miscellaneous:

Review all the meanings of the following words as used in Caesar:

acies, agmen, fuga, pax, remus, vadum, vallum, látus, portus, signum, oneraria, naves solvere, septentrio, vigilia, tempestas, aëstus, civis, civitas, finis, fines, consilium, concilium, conventus, legatus, eques, equitatus, tantus, quantus, quot, summus, ullus, agger, aëger, quisque, quisquam, quidam, aëquis, deligo (2 words), reperio, cognosco, ordo, eo (adv.) inde, unde, quo (adv.) item, audeo, itaque, ita, sic, autem, vero, tamen, priusquam, quam, at, atque, paro, pareo, confirmo, conor, cogo, genus, revertor, colloco, comparo, confero, constituo, expono, egregidior, fere, circiter, nox, pes, pedès, nam, iam, enim, sed, statim, rursus, ibi, ubi, spes, annus, alter, alius, uter, uterque, nullus, nemo, imperium, impetro, pugno, pugna, propter, apud, pro, prope, longus, longe, graviter fero, capio, existimo, arbitrò, puto, relinquo, excedo, arma, populus, accipio, aëtas, aditus, ora, litus, adire, interim, gero, satis, hoc accedebat, accidit, nactus, natus, conspicio, convoco, convenio, decem milia passuum, esseda, plerique, plerumque, manus, aqua, hoc genus pugnae, consuevi, consuesco, funda, sagitta, pedem referre, quae res magno usu est, decem, decimus, desilio, officium, magistratus, in officio esse, fides, subsequor, animadverto, ex navi egredior, proelio facto, quaero, quaeror, ignosco, quartus, inferior, pulvis, statio, paulo, occupo, adorior, incendo, diu, orbis, terga vertere, occido, discedo, praeficio, præesse, qua de causa, video, fio, conspectus, arbitratus, veritus, secutus, virtus, lenis, cursus, tertiâ vigiliâ, subduco, deduco.
TEST LIST—ENGLISH-LATIN.

to command.
to defeat.
general.
army.
forces.
column.
line of battle.
flight.
pitch camp.
join battle.
lieutenant.
sue for peace.
battle.
war.
scout.
learn.
inform.
fortify.
a surrender.
to surrender.
kill.
wound (noun).
wound (verb).
rout.
enemy.
inform.
hostage.
march.
messenger.
enlist.
letter.
wage war.
make an attack.
set out.
arrive at.
suddenly.
corn.
conspire.
find out.
heights.
plan.
promise.
hide in the woods.
assemble (intrans.).
assemble (trans.).
wall.
rampart.
ditch.
seal.
courage.
hope.
safety.
resolve.
perceive.
suitable.
surround.
marsh.
cross.
river.

attack.
infantry.
cavalry.
advance.
each.
rank.
leave (go out).
leave (behind).
mound.
tower.
shed.
arms.
hand over.
courage.
baggage.
seem.
to be distant.
aid.
protection.
the van.
the rear.
side.
standard.
gate.
harbour.
unfavourable.
ship.
aor.
war-ship.
ship of burden.
set sail.
weather.
wave.

north.
south.
est.
west.
sea.
ocean.
wind.
mid-day.
mid-night.
hour.
watch (of the night).
shore.
storm.
to land (intrans.).
to land (trans.).
tide.
make a sally.
hill.
fortification.
fear.
can.
wish.
places.
work.
remaining.
think.

ask.
enquire.
say.
point out.
road.
at the same time.
hurl javelins.
do.
make.
come.
go.
halt.
burn.
ravage.
safe.
about.
on account of.
for the purpose of.
however.
after.
afterwards.
appoint over.
be in charge of.
begin.

injure.

flee.

mast.

yard-arm.

rope.

high.

wide.

compel.

encamp.

fear.

lose.

easy.

a storm.
to storm (a town).
because.

retreat.

far.
too far.

promise.

ask.

demand.

seek.

approach.

four.

fourth.

daily.
to sail.

attack.

besiege.

noon.

10 a.m.

5 p.m.
to launch.
to beach.
APPENDIX B.

SIGHT READING,

DE BELLO GALLICO,

BOOK VII. (Adapted).

(For hints and vocabulary on each passage, see pages 18 and 19. Passages specially adapted for Honor students begin with No. 27.)

THE WAR WITH VERCINGETORIX.

1. Quietā Galliā, Caesar, ut constituerat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos proficiscitur. Ibi cognoscit de Clodii caede, de senatusque consulo certior factus, delectum tota provinciā habere instituit. Eae res in Galliam Transalpinam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsi rumoribus Galli, retineri urbano motu Caesarem neque in tantis dissensionibus ad exercitum venire posse. Hac impulsi occasione, qui iam ante se subiectos dolerent, liberius atque audacius de bello consilia inire incipient.

2. Inter se principes Galliae queruntur de Acconis morte; miserantur communem Galliæ fortunam; omnibus pollicitationibus ac praemiis deposcunt, qui belli initium faciant et Galliam in libertatem vindicent. Imprimis rationem esse habendam dicunt, ut Caesar ab exercitu intercludatur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiones audeant absente imperatore ex hibernis egredi, neque imperator sine praesidio ad legiones pervenire possit. Postremo in acie praestare interfici, quam non veterem belli gloriam libertatemque recuperare.

3. His rebus agitatis profitentur Carnutes, se nullum periculum communis salutis causā recusare, principesque ex omnibus bellum
facturos pollicentur et ut iureiuando ac fide sanciator petunt, ne facto initio belli ab reliquis deserantur. Tum collaudatis Carnutibus, dato iureiuando ab omnibus qui aderant, tempore eius rei constituto, ab concilio disciditur.


5. Simili ratione Vercingetorix, Arvernus, summæ potentiae adulescens, cuinis pater principatum Galliae totius obtinuerat, convocatis suis clientibus facile incendit. Cognito eius consilio ad arma concurririt. Prohibetur ab Gobannitione, patruo suo, reliquisque principibus, qui hanc temptandam fortunam non existimabant; expellitur ex oppido Gergovia; non destitit tamen atque in agris habet delectum. Hac coacta manu, quoscumque adit ex civitate, ad suam sententiam perducit; hortatur, ut communis libertatis causä arma capiant, magnisque coactis copiis adversarios suos, a quibus paulo ante erat eictus, expellit ex civitate.


7. His suppliciiis celeriter coacto exercitu, Lucterium Cadurcum, summæ hominem audaciae, cum parte copiarum in Rutenos mittit; ipse in Bituriges profisciscitur. Eius adventu Bituriges ad Aeduos, quorum erant in fide, legatos mittunt subsidium rogatum, quo

8. His rebus in Italiam Caesari nuntiatis, cum iam ille urbanas res virtute Gnei Pompei commodiore in statum pervenisse intellegebat, in Transalpinam Galliam profectus est. Eo cum venisset, magna difficultate afficiebatur, qua ratione ad exercitum pervenire posset. Nam si legiones arcesseret, se absente in itinere proelio diminuatur inter se; ipse ad exercitum contenderet, ne iis quidem eo tempore, qui quieti viderentur, suam salutem recte committi videbat.

9. Interim Lucterius Cadurcus in Rutenos missus eam civitatem Arvernis conciliat. Progressus in Nitiobroges et Gabalos ab utrisque obsides accipit et magna coacta manu in provinciam eruptionem facere contendit. Qua re nuntiata Caesar omnibus consiliis antevertendum existimavit, ut Narbonem proficisceretur. Eo cum venisset, timentes confirmat, praesidia in Rutenis provincialibus, Volcis, Areomicis, Tolosatibus circumque Narbonem, quae loca hostibus erant finitima, constituit, partem copiarum ex provincia supplementumque, quod ex Italia adduxerat, in Helvios, qui fines Arvernorum contingunt, convenire iubet.

10. His rebus comparatis, represso iam Lucterio et remoto, in Helvios proficiscitur. Etsi mons Cevenna, qui Arvernos ab Helviis discludit, altissimâ nive iter impediebat, tamen discussâ nive atque ita viis patefactis summo militum sudore ad fines Arvernorum pervenit. Quibus oppressis inopinantibus, quod se Cevenna ut muro munitos existimabant, equitibus imperat, ut, quam latissime possint vagentur et quam maximum hostibus terrem inferant. Celeriter haec fama ac nuntiis ad Vercingetorigem perferentur; quem perterrit omnes Arverni circumsistunt atque obsecran, uti suis fortunis consulat neu se ab hostibus diripi patiatur. Quorum ille precibus permotus castra ex Biturigibus movet in Arvernos.

11. At Caesar biduum in his locis moratus, ab exercitu discedit, Brutum adolescentem his copiis praeficit; hunc monet, ut in omnes
partes equites quam latissime pervagentur: daturum se operam, ne longius triduo ab castris absit. His constitutis rebus, suis inopinitibus, quam maximis potest itineribus, Viennam pervenit. Ibi nancus recentem equitatum, quem multis ante diebus eo praemiserat, neque diurno neque nocturno itinere intermisso per fines Aeduorum in Lingones contendit, ubi duae legiones hiemabant, ut, si quid etiam de sua salute ab Aeduis iniretur consilii, celeritate praecurreret. Eo cum pervenisset, ad reliquas legiones mittit, priusque omnes in unum locum cogit; quam de eius adventu Arvernisi nuntiari posset. Hac re cognita Vercingetorix rursus in Bituriges exercitum reducit atque inde profectus Gorgoblanam, Boiorum oppidum, quos ibi Helveticum proelium victos Caesar collocaverat, oppugnare instituit.

12. Magnam haec res Caesari difficultatem ad consilium capiendum afferebat, ne stipendiariis Aeduorum expugnatis cuncta Gallia deficeret, quod nullum amicus in eo praesidium videret positum esse. Praestare visum est omnes difficilatates perpeti, quam omnium suorum voluntates alienare. Itaque cohortatus Aeduos de supportando commenatu praemittit ad Boios, qui de suo adventu doceant hortenturque, ut in fide maneant atque hostium impetum sustineant. Duabus Agedinci legionibus atque impedimentis totius exercitus relictis ad Boios proficiscitur.

13. Altero die cum ad oppidum Senonum Vellaunodunum venisset, ne quem post se hostem relinqueret, oppugnare instituit idque biduo circumvallavit; tertia die missis ex oppido legatis de deditione, arma conferri, iumenta produci, sexcentos obsides dari iubet. Ea qui conficeret, Gaium Trebonium legatum relinquit, ipse ut quam primum iter faceret. Cenabum Carnutum proficiscitur; qui, tum primum allato nuntio de oppugnatione Vellaunoduni, praesidium Cenabi tuendi causa, comparabat. Huc biduo pervenit.

14. Castris ante oppidum positis, diei tempore exclusus in posterum oppugnationem differt, quaque ad eam rem usui sint militibus, imperat et, quod oppidum Cenabum pons fluminis Ligeris contingebat, veritus, ne nocte ex oppido profugeren, duas legiones in armis excubare iubet. Cenabenses Paulo ante medium noctem silentio ex oppido egressi flumen transire coeperunt. Qua re per exploratores nuntiata, Caesar legiones, quas expeditas esse iussaret,
portis incensis intromittit atque oppido potitur. Oppidum, diripit atque incendit, praedam militibus donat, exercitum Ligerem, traducit atque in Biturigum fines pervenit.


16. Caesar ex castris equitatum educi iubet, proelium equestre committit; laborantibus iam suis Germanos equites circiter quadrincentos submittit, quos ab initio habere secum instituerat. Eorum impetum Galli sustinere non potuerunt atque in fugam coniecti multis amissis se ad agmen receperunt. Quibus profligatis rursus oppidani perterriti comprehensos eos, quorum operâ plebem concitatam existimabant ad Caesarem perduxerunt seseque ei dediderunt. Quibus rebus effectis Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quem erat maximum munitissimumque in finibus Biturigum, profectus est, quod eo oppido recepto civitatem Biturigum se in potestatem redacturum confidebat.


18. Harum ipsis rerum copiam suppetere, quod, quorum in fini-
bus bellum geratur, eorum opibus subleventur; Romanos aut inopiam non latus aut magno periculo longius ab castris processuros; neque interesse, ipsosne interficiant impedimentisne exuant. Praeterea oppida incendi oportere, quae non munitione et loci natura ab omni sint periculo tuta. Haec si gravia aut acerba videantur, multo illa gravius aestimare, liberos, coniuges in servitutem abstrahi, ipsos interfici.


21. Castris ad eam partem oppidi positis Caesar quae aditum, ut supra diximus, angustum habebat, aggerem apparare, vineas agere, turres duas constituere coepit; nam circumvallare loci natura prohibebat. De re frumentariae Boios atque Aeduos adhortari non destitit; quorum alteri non multum adiuvabant, alteri celeriter, quod habuerunt, consumpserunt. Summa difficulitate rei frumentariae affecto exercitu, nulla tamen vox est ab iis audità populi Romani maiestate et superioribus victoriis indigna. Quin etiam Caesar cum in opere singulas legiones appellaret et, se dimissurum oppugnationem diceret, universi ab eo, ne id faceret, petebant.
22. Cum iam muro turres appropinquassent, ex captivis Caesar cogxovit, Vercingetorigem consumpto pabulo castra movisse propius Avaricum atque ipsum cum equitatu insidiarum causa eo profectum, quo nostros postero die pabulum venturos arbitraretur. Quibus rebus cognitis media nocte silentio profectus, ad hostium castra mane pervenit. Illi celeriter per exploratores adventu Caesaris cognito carros impedimentaque sua in artiores silvas abdiderunt, copias omnes in loco edito atque aperto instruxerunt. Qua re nuntiata Caesar celeriter sarcinas conferri, arma expediri iussit.

23. Collis erat leniter ab infimo acclivis. Hunc ex omnibus fere partibus palus diffilis atque impedita cingebat non latior pedibus quinquaginta. Hoc se colle, interruptis pontibus, Galli continebant omniaque vada ac saltus obtinebant, sic animo parati, ut, si eam paludem Romani perrumpere conarentur, haesitantes premerent ex loco superiore. Indignantes milites Caesar, quod conspectum suum hostes perferre possent tantulo spatio interiecto, et signum proelii exposcentes edocet, quanto detrimento necesse sit constare victoriam. Sic milites consolatus eodem die reducit in castra reliquaque, quae ad oppugnationem pertinebant oppidi, administrare instituit.

24. Vercingetorix, cum ad suos redisset, proditionis insimulatus, quod, castra propius Romanos movisset, quod cum omni equitatu discessisset, quod sine imperio tantas copias reliquisset, quod eius discessu Romani tanta celeritate venissent; non haec omnia fortuito aut sine consilio accidere potuisse; regnum illum Galliae malle Caesaris concessu quam ipsorum habere beneficio: tali modo accusatus ad haec respondit:—Quod castra movisset, factum inopia pabuli etiam ipsis hortantibus: quod propius Romanos accessisset, persuasum loci opportunitate, equitum vero operam illicuisse utilem, quo sint profecti. Summam imperii se consulto nulli discendentem tradidisse, ne is multitudinis studio ad dimicandum impelleretur. Romani si casu intervenerint, fortunae habendam gratiam, quod paucitatem eorum cognoscere potuerint.

SIGHT READING.

ante edocti, quae interrogati pronuntiarent, milites se esse legionarios dicunt; fame et inopia adductos clam ex castris exisse, si quid frumenti aut procoris in agris reperire possent; simili omnem exercitum inopia premi, nec iam ferre operis laborem posse; itaque statuisset imperatorem, si nihil in oppugnatione oppidi profecissent, triduo exercitum ducere. "Haec," inquit, "a me," Vercingetorix, "beneficia habetis, quem proditionis insimulatis; cuius opera sine vostro sanguine tantum exercitum victorem fanem consumptum videtis."

26. Conclamat omnis multitudo et suo more armis concrepat: summum esse Vercingetorigem ducem, nec de eius fide dubitandum, nec maiore ratione bellum administrari posse. Statuunt, ut decem milia hominum selecta ex omnibus copiis in oppidum mittantur, nec solis Biturigibus communem salutem committendam censent.

PASSAGES SUITABLE FOR HONOR STUDENTS.

27. Singulari militum nostrorum virtuti consilia cujusque modi Gallorum occurrebant. Nam et laqueis falces avertebant, et aggerem cuniculis subtrahebant, eo scientius, quod apud eos magnae sunt ferrariae atque omne genus cuniculorum notum atque usitatun est. Totum autem murum ex omni parte turribus contabulaverant atque has coriis intexerant. Tum crebris diurnis nocturnisque eruptionibus aut aggeri ignem inferebant aut milites occupatos in opere adoriebant. Apertos cuniculos praestā et præacutā materiā et pice fervefacta et maximī ponderis saxis morabantur moenibusque propinquare prohibebant.

28. Muri autem omnes Gallici hac fere forma sunt. Trabes directae perpetuae in longitudinem, paribus intervallis distantis inter se binos pedes, in solo collocantur. Hae revincentur introrsus et multo aggere vestiuntur; ea autem, quae diximus, intervalla grandiibus in fronte saxis effarciuntur. His collocatis et coagentatis alius insuper ordo additur, ut idem illud intervallum servetur neque inter se contingant trabes, sed paribus intermissae spatiis arte contineantur. Sic deinceps omne opus contexitur, dum iusta muri altitudo expleatur. Hoc cum in speciem variatatemque opus deforme non est alternis trabibus ac saxis, quae rectis lineis suos ordines servant, tum ad utilitatem et defensionem urbiōm summam habet opportunitatem.
BELLUM GALLICUM, VII.

29. His tot rebus impedita oppugnatione, milites, cum frigore et imbribus tardarentur, tamen labore omnia haec superaverunt et diebus viginti quinque aggerem latum pedes trecentos triginta altum pedes quinquaginta tres exstruxerunt. Cum is murum hostium paene contingeret et Caesar milites hortaretur, ne quod omnino tempus ab opere intermitteretur, paulo ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum, fumare aggerem, quem cuniculo hostes succenderant, eodemque tempore toto muro clamore sublato duabus portis ab utroque latere eruption fiebat.

30. Omnia experti Galli, quod res nulla successerat, postero die consilium ceperunt ex oppido profugere, hortante et iubente Vercingetorige. Id non magnā iactūra suorum sese effecturos sperabant, propterea quod neque longe ab oppido castra Vercingetorigis aberant, et palus Romanos ad insequendum tardabat. Iamque hoc facere noctu apparabat, cum matresfamiliae repente in publicum procurrerunt flentesque proiectae ad pedes suorum omnibus precibus petierunt, ne se et communes liberos hostibus dederent. Ubi eos in sententia perstare viderunt, quod plerumque in summo periculo timor misericordiam non recipit, conclamare et significare de fuga Romanis coeperunt. Quo timore perterriti Galli, ne ab equitatu Romanorum viae praecoccuparentur, consilio destiterunt.

31. Postero die Caesar promota turri, magno coorto imbre, non inutilem hanc ad capiendum consilium tempestatem arbitratus est, quod paulo incautius custodias in muro dispositas videbat, suosque languidius in opere versari iussit et, quid fieri vellet, ostendit. Legionibusque inter castra vineasque in occulto expeditis, cohortatus, ut aliquando pro tantis laboribus fructum victoriae perciperent, iis qui primi murum ascendissent, praemia proposuit militibusque signum dedit. Illi subito ex omnibus partibus evolaverunt murumque celeriter compleverunt.

32. Hostes re nova perterriti, muro turribusque deieicti, in foro ac locis patentioribus cuneatim constiterunt, hoc animo, ut, si qua ex parte obviam veniretur, acie instructa depugnarent. Ubi neminem in aequum locum sese demittere, sed toto undique muro circumfundi viderunt, veriti, ne omnino spes fugae tolleretur, abiectis armis ultimas oppidi partes petiverunt, parsiue ibi, cum angusto exitu portarum se ipsi premerent, a militibus, pars iam egressa
portis ab equitibus est interfecta. Nec fuit quisquam, qui praedae studeret. Sic et Cenabi caede et labore operis incitati non acetate confectis, non mulieribus, non infantibus pepercerunt. Denique ex omni numero, qui fuit circiter milium quadragina vix octingenti, qui primo clamore audito se ex oppido eiecerunt, incolumes ad Vercingetorigem pervenerunt.

33. Postero die concilio convocato consolatus cohortatusque est, ne se animo demitterent, ne perturbarentur incommodo. Non virtute neque in acie viciisse Romanos, sed artificio quodam et scientia oppugnationis, cuius rei fuerint ipsi imperiti. Errare, si qui in bello omnes secundos rerum proventus exspectent. Sibi numquam placuisse Avaricum defendi, cuius rei testes ipsos haberet, sed factum imprudentia Biturigum, uti hoc incommodum acciperetur. Id tamen se celeriter sanaturum. Nam quae ab reliquis Gallis civitates dissentirent, has sua diligentia adiuncturum atque unum consilium totius Galliae effecturum, cuius consensui ne orbis quidem terrarum possit obsistere; idque se prope iam effectum habere. Interea aequum esse ab iis communis salutis causa impetrari, ut castra munire instituerent, quo facilius repentininos hostium impetus sustinerent.

34. Fuit haec oratio non ingrata Gallis, et maxime, quod ipse animo non defecerat tanto accepto incommodo neque se in occultum abdiderat et conspectum multitudinis fugerat; plusque animo providere et praesentire existimabatur, quod re integra primo incendendum Avaricum, post deserendum censuerat. Itaque ut reliquorum imperatorum res adversae auctoritatem minuunt, sic huius ex contrario dignitas incommodo accepto in dies augebatur. Simul in spem veniebant eius affirmatione de reliquis adiungendis civitatibus; primumque eo tempore Galli castra munire instituerunt, et sic sunt animo confirmati homines insueti laboris, ut omnia, quae imperarentur, sibi patienda existimarent.

35. Nec minus, quam est pollicitus, Vercingetorix animo laborabat, ut reliquas civitates adiungeret, atque eas donis pollicitationibusque alliciebat. Huic rei idoneos homines deligebat, quorum quisque facillime capere posset. Qui Avarico expugnato refugerant, armandos vestiendosque curat; simul, ut deminutae copiae redintegrarentur, imperat certum numerum militum civitatibus, sagittariosque
omnes, quorum erat permagnus numerus in Gallia, conquiri et ad se mitti iubet. His rebus celeriter id, quod Avarici deperierat, expletur. Interim Teutomatus, rex Nitiobrogum, cuius pater ab senatu nostro amicus erat appellatus, cum magno equitum suorum numero et quos ex Aquitania conduxerat ad eum pervenit.

36. Caesar Avarici complures dies commoratus summamque ibi copiam frumenti et reliqui commenatus nactus, exercitum ex labore atque inopia refecit. Iam prope hieme confecta, cum ipso anni tempore ad gerendum bellum vocaretur et ad hostem proficisci constituisset, sive eum ex paludibus silvisque elicere sive obsidione premere posset, legati ad eum principes Aeduorum veniunt oratum, ut maxime necessario tempore civitati subveniat: summo esse in periculo rem, quod, cum singuli magistratus antiquitus creari atque regiam potestatem annum obtinere consuessent, duo magistratum gerant et se uterque eorum legibus creatum esse dicit. Civitatem esse omnem in armis; divisum senatum, divisum populum. Quod si diutius alatur controversia, fore, uti, pars cum parte civitatis conflaget; id ne accidat, positum in eius diligentia atque auctoritate.

37. Caesar, etsi a bello atque hoste discedere detrimentosum esse existimabat, tamen non ignorans, quanta ex dissensionibus incommoda oriri consuessent, ne tanta et tam coniuncta populo Romano civitas, quam ipse semper aluisset ad vim atque arma descendere, atque ea pars, quae minus consideret, auxilia a Vercingetorige arcesseret, huic rei praeventum existimavit et, quod legibus Aeduorum iis, qui summum magistratum obtinerent, excedere ex finibus non liceret, ipse in Aeduos proficisci statuit senatumque omnem et quos inter controversia esset ad se Decetiam evocavit. Cum prope omnis civitas eo convenisset, Cotum imperium deponere coegit, Convictolitavem, qui per sacerdotes more civitatis esset creatus, potestatem obtinere iussit.

38. Hoc decreto interposito cohortatus Aeduos, ut controversiarum ac dissensionis obliuiscerentur atque omnibus omissis rebus huic bello servirent equitatumque omnem et peditum milia decem sibi celeriter mitterent, quae in praeidis rei frumentariae causa disponeret, exercitum in duas partes divisit: quattuor legiones in Senones Parisiosque Labieno ducendas dedit, sex ipse in Arvernos ad oppidum Geëgoviam duxit; equitatus partem illi attribuit, partem sibi
reliquit. Qua re cognita Vercingetorix omnibus interruptis pontibus ab altera fluminis parte iter facere coepit.

39. Cum uterque utrique esset exercitus in conspectu, dispositis exploratoribus, necubi effecto ponte Romani copias traducerent, erat in magnis Caesaris difficultatibus res, ne maiorem aestatis partem flumine impediretur, quod non fere ante autumnum Elaver vado transiri solet. Itaque, ne id accideret, silvestri loco castris positis e regione unius eorum pontium, quos Vercingetorix rescindendos curaverat, postero die cum duabus legionibus in occulto restitit; reliquas copias cum omnibus impedimentis, ut consueverat, misit. His, quam longissime possent, egredi iussis, cum iam ex diei tempore coniecturam ceperat, in castra perventum, pontem reficere coepit. Celeriter effecto opere legionibusque traductis et loco castris idoneo delecto reliquas copias revocavit. Vercingetorix re cognita, ne contra suam voluntatem dimicare cogeretur, magnis itineribus antecessit.

40. Caesar ex eo loco quintis castris Gergoviam pervenit equestrique eo die proelio facto, perspecto urbis situ, quae posita in altissimo monte omnes adit s difficiles habebat, de expugnatione desperavit, de obsessione non prius agendum constituit, quam rem frumentarium expedisset. At Vercingetorix castris prope oppidum positis mediocribus circum se intervallis separatim singularum civitatem copias collocaverat, atque omnibus eius iugi collibus occupatis, horribilem speciem praebebat, neque ulla diem diem intermittebat, quin equestri proelio interiectis sagittariis, quid in quoque esset animi ac virtutis suorum, perspiceretur. Erat e regione oppidi collis sub ipsis radicibus montis egregie munitis atque ex omni parte circumcisus; quem si tenerent nostri, et aquae magna parte et pabulatione prohibituri hostes videbantur. Sed is locus praesidio ab his non mmis firmo tamen tenebatur. Silentio noctis Caesar ex castris egressus, priusquam subsidio ex oppido veniri posset, deiecto praesidio potitus loco, duas ibi legiones collocavit fossamque duplicem a maioribus castris ad minora perduxit, ut tuto etiam singuli commeare possent.

41. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitavis Aeduus, cui magistratum adiudicatum a Caesare demonstravimus, sollicitatus ab Arvernis pecuniâ cum quibusdam adolescentibus colloquitur,
quorum erat princeps Litaviccus. Unam esse Aeduorum civitatem, quae certissimam Galliae victoriam detineat; eius auctoritate reliquas contineri; quâ traductâ locum consistendi Romanis in Gallia non fore. Esse nonnullo se Caesaris beneficio affectum, sed plus communi libertati tribuere. Cur enim potius Aedui de suo iure et de legibus ad Caesarem quam Romani ad Aeduos veniant? Placuit, ut Litaviccus decem illis milibus, quae Caesari ad bellum mitteretur, praeficeretur atque ea ducenda curaret, fratresque eius ad Caesarem praecurrerent.


43. Eporedorix cognito Litavicci consilio media fere noctem ad Caesarem defert; orat, ne patiatur civitatem pravis adulescentium consiliis ab amicitia populi Romani deficere. Magna affectus sollicitudine hoc nuntio Caesar, quod semper Aeduorum civitati praecepue indulserat, nulla interposita dubitatione legiones expeditas quattuor equitatumque omnem ex castris educit. Gaium Fabium legatum cum legionibus duabus castris praesidio relinquit. Progressus milia passuum viginti quinque, agmen Aedu-
orum conspicatus, immisso equitatu iter eorum moratur interdicitque omnibus, ne quemquam interficiant. Eporedorigem et Viridomarum, quos illi interfecros existimabant, inter equites versari suosque appellare iubet. His cognitis et Litavicci fraude perspecta Aedui manus tendere, deditionem significare et proiectis armis mortem deprecarí incipiunt. Litaviccus cum suis clientibus Gergoviam profugit.

44. Caesar, nuntiis ad civitatem Aeduorum missis, qui suo beneficio conservatos docerent, quos iure belli interficere potuisset, tribusque horis exercitiúi ad quietem datis, castra ad Gergoviam movit. Medio fere itinere equites a Fabio missi, quanto res in periculo fuerit, exponunt. Summis copiis castra oppugnata demonstrant, cum integri defessis succederent. Multitudine sagittarum atque omnis generis telorum multos vulneratos; ad haec sustinenda magno usui fuisset tormenta. His rebus cognitis Caesar summo studio militum ante ortum solis in castra pervenit.

45. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Aedui primis nuntiis ab Litavico acceptis nullum sibi ad cognoscendum spatium relinquent. Impellit alios avaritia, alios iracundia et temeritas, quae maxime illi hominum generi est innata, ut auditionem habeant pro re comperta. Bona civium Romanorum diripiunt, caedes faciunt, in servitutem abstrahunt. Adiuvat rem Convictolitavis plebemque ad furorem impellit, ut facinore admisso ad sanitatem reverti pudeat. Marcum Aristium tribunum militum iter ad legionem facientem fide data ex oppido Cabillonu educunt; idem facere cogunt eos, qui negotiandi causa ibi constiterant. Hos continuo in itinere adorti omnibus impedimentis exuunt; repugnantes diem noctemque obsident; multís utrimque interfecístis maiorem multitúdinem armátorum concitánt.

46. Interim nuntio allato, omnes eorum milites in potestate Caesaris teneri, concurrunt ad Aristium, nihil publico factum consilio demonstrant; quaestionem be bonis direptis decernunt, Litavicci fra tromque bona publicant, iegatos ad Caesarem sui purgandi gratia mittunt. Haec faciunt recipérandorum suorum causa; sed contaminati facinore, quod ea res ad multos pertinebat, et timore poenae exterriti consilia clam de bello inire incipiunt civitatesque reliquas legationibus sollicitant. Quae tametsi Caesar intellegébat,
tamen, quam mitissime potest, legatos appellat; nihil se propter inscientiam levitatemque vulgi gravius de civitate iudicare neque de sua in Aeduos benevolentia deminuere. Ipse maiorem Galliae motum exspectans, ne ab omnibus civitatibus circumsisteretur, consilia inibat, quemadmodum a Gergovia discederet ac rursus omnem exercitum contraheret, ne profectio nata ab timore defectionis similis fugae videretur.

47. Haec cogitanti accidere visa est facultas bene rei gerendae. Nam cum in minora castra operis perspiciendi causa venisset, animadvertit collem, qui ab hostibus tenebatur, nudatum hominibus, qui superioribus diebus vix prae multitudine cerni poterat. Miratus quaerit ex perfugis causam, quorum magnus ad eum cotidie numerus confluebat. Constabat inter omnes, quod iam ipse Caesar per exploratores cognoverat, dorsum esse eius iugi prope aequum, sed hunc silvestrem et angustum, qua esset aditus ad alteram partem oppidi; vehementer huic illos loco timere, nec iam aliter sentire, uno colle ab Romanis occupato, si alteram amisissent, quin paene circumvallati atque omni exitu et pabulatione interclusi viderentur: ad hunc muniendum omnes a Vercingetorige evocatos.

48. Hac re cognita Caesar mittit complures equitum turmas; eis de media nocte imperat, ut paulo tumultuosius omnibus locis vagentur. Prima luce magnum numerum impedimentorum ex castris mulorumque produci deque his stramenta detrahi mulionesque cum cassidibus equitum specie ac simulatione collibus circumvehi iubet. His paucos addit equites, qui latius ostentationis causa vagarentur. Longo circuitu easdem omnes ibet petere regiones. Haec procul ex oppido videbantur, ut erat a Gergovia despectus in castra. Legionem unam eodem iugo mittit et paulum progressam inferiore constitut loco silvisque occultat. Augetur Gallis suspicio atque omnes illo ad munitionem copiae traducuntur. Vacua castra hostium Caesar conspicatus tectis insignibus suorum occultatisque signis militariibus raros milites, ne ex oppido animadverterentur, ex maioribus castris in minora traducit legatisque, quos singulis legionibus praefecerat, quid fieri velit, ostendit; imprimis monet, ut contineant milites, ne studio pugnandi aut spe praedae longius progradiantur; quid iniquitas loci habeat incommodi, proponit; hoc una celeritate posse mutari; occasionis esse rem, non proelii. His
rebus expositis signum dat et ab dextra parte alio ascensu eodem tempore Aeduos mittit.

Milites dato signo celeriter ad munitionem perveniunt eamque transgressi trinis castris potiuntur; ac tanta fuit in castris capiendis celeritas, ut Teutomatus, rex Nitiobrogum, subito in tabernaculo oppressus, ut meridie conquieverat, superiore corporis parte nudata, vulnerato equo vix se ex manibus militum eriperet.

49. Consecutus id quod animo proposuerat, Caesar receptui caniusse, legionisque decimae, quacum erat, continuo signa constituit. At reliquarum legionum milites non exaudito sono tubae, quod satis magna vallis intercedebat, tamen ab tribunis militiae legatisque, ut erat a Caesare praeceptum, retinebantur; sed elati spe celeris victoriae et hostium fuga et superiorum temporum secundis proeliis nihil adeo arduum sibi esse existimaverunt, quod non virtute consequi possent, nèque finem prius sequendi fecerunt, quam muro oppidi portisque appropinquarunt. Tum vero ex omnibus urbis partibus orto clamore, qui longius aberant, repente tumultu perterriti, cum hostem intra portas esse existimarent, sese ex oppido eiecerunt. Matresfamiliae de muro vestem argentumque iactabant et pectore nudo prominentes passis manibus obtestabantur Romanos, ut sibi parcerent neu, sicut Avarici fecissent, ne a mulieribus quidem atque infantibus abstinerent; nonnullae de muris per manus demissae sese militibus tradebant. L. Fabius, centurio legionis VIII., quem inter suos eo die dixisse constabat, excitar avaricibus praemiis neque commissurum, ut prius quisquam murum ascenderet, tres suos nactus manipulares atque ab iis sublevatus murum ascendit; hos ipse rursus singulos exceptans in murum extulit.

50. Interim ii, qui ad alteram partem oppidi, ut cupra demonstravimus, munitionis causa convenerant, primo exaudito clamore, inde etiam crebris nuntiis incitati, oppidum a Romanis teneri, praemissis equitibus magno concursu eo contenderunt. Eorum ut quisque primus venerat, sub muro consistebat suorumque pugnantium numerum augebat. Quorum cum magna multitudine convenisset, matresfamiliae, quae paulo ante Romanis de muro manus tendebant, suos obtestari et more Gallico passum capillum ostentare liberosque in conspectum proferre coeperunt. Erat Romanis nec
loco nec numero aequa contentio; simul et cursu et spatio pugnae
fatigati non facile recentes atque integros sustinebant.

Caesar cum iniquo loco pugnari hostiumque augeri copias videret,
praemetiuenus suis ad Titum Sextium legatum, quem minoribus ca-
tris praesidio reliquerat, misit, ut cohortes ex castris celeriter
duceret et sub infimo colle ab dextra latere hostium constitueret,
ut, si nostros loco depulsos vidisset, quo minus libere hostes inse-
quenterunt, terreret. Ipse paulum ex eo loco cum legione progres-
sus, ubi constiterat, eventum pugnae exspectabat.

51. Cum acerrime comminus pugnaretur, hostes loco et numero,
nostri virtute confiderent, subito sunt Aedui visi ab latere nostris
aperto, quos Caesar ab dextra parte alio ascensu manus distin-
endae causa miserat. Hi similitudine armorum vehementer nostros
perterruerunt, ac tametsi dextris umeris exsertis animadvetebantur,
quod insigne pacatorum esse consuerat, tamen id ipsum sui fallendi
causa milites ab hostibus factum existimabant. Eodem tempore
Lucius Fabius centurio, quique una murum ascenderant, circum-
venti atque interfecit muro praecipitabantur. Marcus Petronius,
eiusdem legions centurio, cum portas excidere conatus esset, a
multitudine oppressus ac sibi desperans, multis iam vulneribus
acceptis, manipularibus suis, qui illum securi erant, "Quoniam,"
inquit, "me una vobiscum servare non possum, vestrae quidem
certe vitae prospecciam, quos cupiditate gloriae adductus in pericu-
lem deduxi. Vos data faculate vobis consulite." Simul in medios
hostes irrupit duobusque interfecit reliquos a porta paulum sum-
movit. Conantibus auxiliari suis "Frustra," inquit, "meae vitae
subvenire conamini, quem iam sanguis viresque deficiunt. Proin
abite, dum est facultas, vosque ad legionem recipite." Ita pugnans
post paulum concidit ac suis saluti fuit.
HINTS AND VOCABULARY:

1. caedes, murder; senatus consultum, decree of the senate; delectus, levy; motus, disturbance; doleo, grieve.

2. quoror, complain; miseror, lament; in libertatem vindicare, assert the liberty of; imprimis, especially; rationem habere, to take into consideration; praestat, it is better.

3. profiteor, declare; sancio, ratify.

4. negotior, I trade; honestus, respected; diripio, plunder.

5. incendo, inflame; patruus, uncle; quicumque, whoever.

6. dimitto, send out; defero, offer; studio, I am eager for; supplicium, punishment; delictum, offence; neco, kill; auris, an ear; deseco, from de and seco, I cut; eff odio, I dig out; documentum, warning.

7. moror, I delay; audo, ausus sum, I dare.

8. commodus, convenient, satisfactory; afficio, I affect with; ratio, method, manner; dimico, fight; committo, entrust.

9. anteverto, place before (dative); ut proficisceretur is subject of antevertendum (esse); confirmo, encourage, reassure.

10. impedio, block, obstruct; discutio, clear away; sudor, sweat, toil; opprimo, surprise; inopinans, unexpecting; vagor, roam about; consulo (with dat.), I look out for, consult the interest of.

11. biduum, space of two days; operam dare, exert one’s self, take care; recens, fresh; intermitto, interrupt; praecurro, anticipate.

12. consilium capere, form a plan, decide on measures; stipendiarius, tributary; deficio, revolt; praesidium, protection; praestat, see 2; perpetior, endure; sustineo, withstand, resist.

13. alter, second; produco, lead forth; ea qui conficeret read qui ea conficeret, note the mood; tueor, protect.

14. excludo, prevent; posterus (dies), following; differo, put off, postpone; excubo, watch at night; expeditus, unencumbered by baggage, in light marching order.

15. desisto, desist from; oro, I pray; ignosco, pardon; administro, carry
HINTS AND VOCABULARY.

out, perform; *iumentum*, beast of burden; *conquiro*, seek out; *simul atque*, as soon as; *sublato*, from *tollo*, to raise; *destringo*, unsheathe.

16. *laboro*, to be in distress or difficulty; *profligo*, to rout; *opera*, agency, instrumentality; *concito*, excite; *redigo in potestatem*, subdue.

17. *incommodum*, disaster, reverse; *alis atque*, different from; *studeo*, strive for; *pabulatio*, foraging; *abundo*, abound in, be plentifully supplied with; *sublevo*, aid; *pabulum*, fodder; *rei familiaris commoda*, private interests.

18. *suppeto*, be on hand, be available; *non interest*, it makes no difference; — *ne*, — *ne*, whether, or; *exuo*, deprive of; *acerbus*, distasteful.

19. *prove*, approve; *solatium*, consolation; *recipero*, recover; *procumbo*, fall prostrate; *succendo*, set fire to; *perangustus*, very narrow; *venia*, indulgence.


21. *indignus*, unworthy of, gov's abl.; *quin etiam*, moreover; *appello*, address; *dimitto*, abandon.

22. *insidiae*, ambuscade; *pabulatum*, supine; *mane*, early in the morning; *carrus*, cart; *artus*, close, dense.


24. *fortuito*, by chance; *quod—movisset*, “as to his having, etc.”; *opera*, help; *consulto*, purposely; *casus*, chance.

Author: Caesar, C. Julius
Title: Bellum Gallicum, books II, III and IV, ed. by Henderson and Hagarty.

University of Toronto Library

DO NOT REMOVE THE CARD FROM THIS POCKET

Acme Library Card Pocket
LOWE-MARTIN CO. LIMITED